



**US Army Corps  
of Engineers  
Savannah District**

## **POPE AIR FORCE BASE NORTH CAROLINA**

---

**Invitation for Bid  
DACA21-98-B-0036  
ADAL Family Service Center  
FY-98, LI 003001  
Volume III of III - Technical Provisions  
Division 15 and 16  
June 1998**

**THIS CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENT IS SUBJECT TO LOCAL  
BUY RESTRICTIONS. ONLY 8(A) COMPANIES MEETING LOCAL BUY  
CRITERIA FOR CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS IN NORTH CAROLINA WILL BE  
ELIGIBLE TO COMPETE**

**U.S. ARMY ENGINEER DISTRICT, SAVANNAH  
CORPS OF ENGINEERS  
100 WEST OGLETHORPE AVENUE  
SAVANNAH, GEORGIA 31401-3640**

## PROJECT TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01320 PROJECT SCHEDULE  
01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  
01410 ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION  
01451 CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL  
01500 TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION FACILITIES

## DIVISION 02 - SITE WORK

02013 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION DURING CONSTRUCTION  
02050 DEMOLITION  
02080 ASBESTOS ABATEMENT  
02090 LEAD-BASED PAINT (LBP) ABATEMENT AND DISPOSAL  
02225 EARTHWORK  
02511 CONCRETE SIDEWALKS AND CURBS AND GUTTERS  
02547 BITUMINOUS PAVEMENT WITH BASE COURSE  
02660 WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM  
02720 STORM-DRAINAGE SYSTEM  
02811 UNDERGROUND SPRINKLER SYSTEMS  
02935 TURF  
02950 TREES, SHRUBS, GROUND COVERS, AND VINES

## DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

03100 STRUCTURAL CONCRETE FORMWORK  
03200 CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT  
03300 CAST-IN-PLACE STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

## DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

04200 MASONRY  
04435 ARCHITECTURAL CAST STONE

## DIVISION 05 - METALS

05120 STRUCTURAL STEEL  
05500 MISCELLANEOUS METAL

## DIVISION 06 - WOODS &amp; PLASTICS

06100 ROUGH CARPENTRY  
06200 FINISH CARPENTRY

## DIVISION 07 - THERMAL &amp; MOISTURE PROTECTION

07240 EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM  
07270 FIRESTOPPING  
07415 METAL ROOF FRAMING  
07416 STRUCTURAL STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF (SSSMR) SYSTEM  
07530 ELASTOMERIC ROOFING (EPDM)  
07600 SHEET METALWORK, GENERAL  
07900 JOINT SEALING

## DIVISION 08 - DOORS &amp; WINDOWS

08110 STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

08120 ALUMINUM DOORS AND FRAMES  
08210 WOOD DOORS  
08520 ALUMINUM WINDOWS  
08700 BUILDERS' HARDWARE  
08810 GLASS AND GLAZING

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

09250 GYPSUM WALLBOARD  
09310 CERAMIC TILE  
09510 ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS  
09520 ACOUSTICAL WALL TREATMENT  
09650 RESILIENT FLOORING  
09680 CARPET  
09900 PAINTING, GENERAL  
09950 WALLCOVERINGS

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

10160 TOILET PARTITIONS  
10440 INTERIOR SIGNAGE  
10522 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, CABINETS, AND ACCESSORIES  
10800 TOILET ACCESSORIES  
10999 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

12390 CABINETS AND COUNTERTOPS  
12520 WINDOW TREATMENT

DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS  
15330 WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM, FIRE PROTECTION  
15400 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE  
15488 GAS PIPING SYSTEMS  
15565 HEATING SYSTEM; GAS-FIRED HEATERS  
15569 WATER HEATING; GAS; UP TO 20 MBTUH  
15650 CENTRAL REFRIGERATED AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM  
15895 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM  
15951 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC  
15990 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS

DIVISION 16 - ELECTRICAL

16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR  
16721 FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM  
16722 FIRE ALARM REPORTING SYSTEM, RADIO TYPE

-- End of Project Table of Contents --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15250

## THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

11/96

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION
- 1.3 GENERAL QUALITY CONTROL
  - 1.3.1 Standard Products
  - 1.3.2 Installer's Qualifications
  - 1.3.3 Surface Burning Characteristics
  - 1.3.4 Identification of Materials
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- 1.5 STORAGE

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL MATERIALS
  - 2.1.1 Adhesives
    - 2.1.1.2 Mineral Fiber Insulation Cement
    - 2.1.1.3 Lagging Adhesive
  - 2.1.2 Contact Adhesive
  - 2.1.3 Caulking
  - 2.1.4 Corner Angles
  - 2.1.5 Finishing Cement
  - 2.1.6 Fibrous Glass Cloth and Glass Tape
  - 2.1.7 Staples
  - 2.1.8 Jackets
    - 2.1.8.1 White Vapor Retarder ASJ (All Service Jacket)
    - 2.1.8.2 Aluminum Jackets
    - 2.1.8.3 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Jackets
  - 2.1.9 Vapor Retarder Coating
  - 2.1.10 Wire
- 2.2 PIPE INSULATION MATERIALS
  - 2.2.1 Aboveground Cold Pipeline
    - 2.2.1.1 Cellular Glass
    - 2.2.1.2 Flexible Cellular Insulation
    - 2.2.1.3 Phenolic Insulation
  - 2.2.2 Aboveground Hot Pipeline
    - 2.2.2.1 Mineral Fiber
    - 2.2.2.2 Calcium Silicate
    - 2.2.2.3 Cellular Glass
    - 2.2.2.4 Flexible Cellular Insulation
    - 2.2.2.5 Phenolic Insulation
  - 2.2.3 Below ground Pipeline Insulation
- 2.3 DUCT INSULATION MATERIALS
  - 2.3.1 Rigid Mineral Fiber
  - 2.3.2 Flexible Mineral Fiber
  - 2.3.3 Cellular Glass

- 2.3.4 Phenolic Foam
- 2.3.5 Flexible Cellular
- 2.4 EQUIPMENT INSULATION MATERIALS
  - 2.4.1 Cold Equipment Insulation
    - 2.4.1.1 Cellular Glass
    - 2.4.1.2 Flexible Cellular Insulation
    - 2.4.1.3 Phenolic Foam
  - 2.4.2 Hot Equipment Insulation
    - 2.4.2.1 Rigid Mineral Fiber
    - 2.4.2.2 Flexible Mineral Fiber
    - 2.4.2.3 Calcium Silicate
    - 2.4.2.4 Cellular Glass
    - 2.4.2.5 Flexible Cellular Insulation
    - 2.4.2.6 Phenolic Foam

### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 APPLICATION - GENERAL
  - 3.1.1 Installation
  - 3.1.2 Fire stopping
  - 3.1.3 Painting and Finishing
  - 3.1.4 Flexible Cellular Insulation
  - 3.1.5 Welding
  - 3.1.6 Pipes/Ducts/Equipment which Require Insulation
- 3.2 PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION
  - 3.2.1 Pipe Insulation
    - 3.2.1.1 General
    - 3.2.1.2 Pipes Passing Through Sleeves
    - 3.2.1.3 Pipes Passing Through Hangers
    - 3.2.1.4 Pipes Passing Through Walls
    - 3.2.1.5 Flexible Cellular Pipe Insulation
  - 3.2.2 Aboveground Cold Pipelines
    - 3.2.2.1 Insulation Thickness
    - 3.2.2.2 Jacket for Fibrous, Cellular Glass, and Phenolic Foam Insulated Pipe
    - 3.2.2.3 Insulation for Straight Runs (Fibrous, Cellular Glass and Phenolic Foam)
    - 3.2.2.4 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories
    - 3.2.2.5 Optional PVC Fitting Covers
  - 3.2.3 Aboveground Hot Pipelines
    - 3.2.3.1 Insulation Thickness
    - 3.2.3.2 Jacket for Insulated Pipe
    - 3.2.3.3 Insulation for Straight Runs
    - 3.2.3.4 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories
  - 3.2.4 Piping Exposed to Weather
    - 3.2.4.1 Aluminum Jacket
    - 3.2.4.2 Insulation for Fittings
    - 3.2.4.3 PVC Lagging
  - 3.2.5 Below ground Pipe Insulation
    - 3.2.5.1 Type of Insulation
    - 3.2.5.2 Installation of Below ground Pipe Insulation
- 3.3 DUCT INSULATION INSTALLATION
  - 3.3.1 Duct Insulation Thickness
  - 3.3.2 Insulation and Vapor Retarder for Cold Air Duct
    - 3.3.2.1 Installation on Concealed Duct
  - 3.3.6 Duct Test Holes
- 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSULATION INSTALLATION
  - 3.4.1 General
  - 3.4.2 Insulation for Cold Equipment

- 3.4.2.1 Insulation Type
  - 3.4.2.2 Pump Insulation
  - 3.4.2.3 Other Equipment
  - 3.4.2.4 Vapor Retarder
  - 3.4.3 Insulation for Hot Equipment
    - 3.4.3.1 Insulation
    - 3.4.3.2 Insulation of Pumps
    - 3.4.3.3 Other Equipment
  - 3.4.4 Equipment Handling Dual Temperature Media
- End of Section Table of Contents --

SECTION 15250  
THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS  
**11/96**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only. At the discretion of the government, the manufacturer of any material supplied will be required to furnish test reports pertaining to any of the tests necessary to assure compliance with the standard or standards referenced in this specification.

AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

ASTM A 167	(1996) Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
ASTM A 580	(1995a) Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Wire
ASTM B 209	(1996) Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate
ASTM C 195	(1990) Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement
ASTM C 449	(1995) Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement
ASTM C 533	(1985; R 1990) Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation
ASTM C 534	(1994) Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form
ASTM C 547	(1995) Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation
ASTM C 552	(1991) Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation
ASTM C 553	(1992) Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications
ASTM C 612	(1993) Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation
ASTM C 647	(1995) Properties and Tests of Mastics and Coating Finishes for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C 795	(1992) Thermal Insulation for Use in

## Contact With Austenitic Stainless Steel

ASTM C 871	(1995) Test Methods for Chemical Analysis of Thermal Insulation Materials for Leachable Chloride, Fluoride, Silicate, and Sodium Ions
ASTM C 920	(1994) Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM C 921	(1989 R; 1996) Determining the Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation
ASTM C 1126	(1989; R 1994) Specification for faced or Unfaced Rigid Cellular Phenolic Thermal Insulation
ASTM D 3278	(1989) Test Methods for Flash Point of Liquids by Setaflash Closed-Cup Apparatus
ASTM E 84	(1996a) Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
ASTM E 96	(1995) Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS  
INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-69	(1996) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application
-----------	--

## MIDWEST INSULATION CONTRACTORS ASSOCIATION (MICA)

MICA-01	(1993) National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards
---------	--

## 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Field-applied insulation and accessories on mechanical systems shall be as specified herein; factory-applied insulation is specified under the piping, duct or equipment to be insulated.

## 1.3 GENERAL QUALITY CONTROL

## 1.3.1 Standard Products

Materials shall be the standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and shall essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening.

## 1.3.2 Installer's Qualifications

Qualified installers shall have successfully completed three or more similar type jobs within the last 5 years.

## 1.3.3 Surface Burning Characteristics



Unless otherwise specified, insulation not covered with a jacket shall have a flame spread rating no higher than 75 and a smoke developed rating no higher than 150. The outside surface of insulation systems which are located in air plenums, in ceiling spaces, and in attic spaces shall have a flame spread rating no higher than 25 and a smoke developed rating no higher than 50. Insulation materials located exterior to the building perimeter are not required to be fire-rated. Flame spread and smoke developed ratings shall be determined by ASTM E 84. Insulation shall be tested in the same density and installed thickness as the material that shall be used in the actual construction. Jackets shall comply with the flame spread and smoke developed ratings of 25/50 as determined by ASTM E 84.

#### 1.3.4 Identification of Materials

Packages or standard containers of insulation, jacket material, cements, adhesives, and coatings delivered for use, and samples required for approval shall have manufacturer's stamp or label attached giving the name of the manufacturer and brand, and a description of the material.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01300 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-14 Samples

Thermal Insulation Materials; FIO.

A complete list of materials, including manufacturer's descriptive technical literature, performance data, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. The product number, k-value, thickness and furnished accessories for each mechanical system requiring insulation shall be included. Materials furnished under this section of the specification shall be submitted at one time.

After approval of materials and prior to applying insulation a booklet shall be prepared and submitted for approval. The booklet shall contain marked-up MICA-01 plates (or detail drawings showing the insulation material and insulating system) for each pipe, duct, or piece of equipment which is/are required to be insulated per this specification. The MICA plates shall be marked-up showing the materials to be installed in accordance with the requirements of this specification for the specific insulation application. The Contractor shall submit all MICA Plates required to show the entire insulating system, including Plates required to show insulation penetrations, vessel bottom and top heads, legs, and skirt insulation as applicable. If the Contractor elects to submit detailed drawings instead of marked-up MICA Plates, the detail drawings shall show cut-away, section views, and details indicating each component of the insulation system and showing provisions for insulating jacketing, and sealing portions of the equipment. For each type of insulation installation on the drawings, provide a label which identifies each component in the installation (i.e., the duct, insulation, adhesive, vapor retarder, jacketing, tape, mechanical fasteners, etc.) Indicate insulation by type and manufacturer. Three copies of the booklet shall be submitted at the jobsite to the Contracting Officer. One copy of the approved booklet shall remain with the insulation Contractor's display sample and two copies shall be provided for Government use.

After approval of materials actual sections of installed systems properly insulated in accordance with the specification requirements shall be displayed. Such actual sections must remain accessible to inspection throughout the job and will be reviewed from time to time for controlling the quality of the work throughout the construction site. Each material used shall be identified, by indicating on an attached sheet the specification requirement for the material and the material by each manufacturer intended to meet the requirement. Display sample sections will be inspected at the jobsite by the Contracting Officer. Approved display sample sections shall remain on display at the jobsite during the construction period. Upon completion of construction, the display sample sections will be closed and sealed.

Pipe Insulation Display Sections: Display sample sections shall include as a minimum an elbow or tee, a valve, dielectric unions and flanges, a hanger with protection shield and insulation insert, or dowel as required, at support point, method of fastening and sealing insulation at longitudinal lap, circumferential lap, butt joints at fittings and on pipe runs, and terminating points for each type of pipe insulation used on the job, and for hot pipelines and cold pipelines, both interior and exterior, even when the same type of insulation is used for these services.

Duct Insulation Display Sections: Display sample sections for rigid and flexible duct insulation used on the job. A display section for duct insulation exposed to weather shall be protected by enclosing with a temporary covering.

## 1.5 STORAGE

Materials shall be delivered in the manufacturer's unopened containers. Materials delivered and placed in storage shall be provided with protection from weather, humidity, dirt, dust and other contaminants by the Contractor. Insulation material and supplies that become dirty, dusty, wet, or otherwise contaminated may be rejected by the Contracting Officer.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL MATERIALS

Materials shall be compatible and shall not contribute to corrosion, soften, or otherwise attack surfaces to which applied in either the wet or dry state. Materials to be used on stainless steel surfaces shall meet ASTM C 795 requirements. Materials shall be asbestos free and conform to the following:

#### 2.1.1 Adhesives

##### 2.1.1.2 Mineral Fiber Insulation Cement

Cement shall be in accordance with ASTM C 195.

##### 2.1.1.3 Lagging Adhesive

Lagging adhesives shall be nonflammable and fire-resistant and shall have flame spread and smoke developed ratings of 25/50 when measured in accordance with ASTM E 84. Adhesives shall be either the Class 1 or Class 2 type as defined here. Class 1 adhesive shall be pigmented [white] [red] and be suitable for bonding fibrous glass cloth to faced and unfaced

fibrous glass insulation board; for bonding cotton brattice cloth to faced and unfaced fibrous glass insulation board; for sealing edges of and bounding fibrous glass tape to joints of fibrous glass board; or for bonding lagging cloth to thermal insulation. Class 2 adhesive shall be pigmented white and be suitable for attaching fibrous glass insulation to metal surfaces. Lagging adhesives shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 2.1.2 Contact Adhesive

Adhesive may be dispersed in a nonhalogenated organic solvent with a low flash point (flash point less than minus 25 degrees F when tested in accordance with ASTM D 3278) or, dispersed in a nonflammable organic solvent which shall not have a fire point below 200 degrees F. The adhesive shall not adversely affect, initially or in service, the insulation to which it is applied, nor shall it cause any corrosive effect on metal to which it is applied. Any solvent dispersing medium or volatile component of the adhesive shall have no objectionable odor and shall not contain any benzene or carbon tetrachloride. The dried adhesive shall not omit nauseous, irritating, or toxic volatile matters or aerosols when the adhesive is heated to any temperature up to 212 degrees F. The adhesive shall be nonflammable and fire resistant.

#### 2.1.3 Caulking

ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use A.

#### 2.1.4 Corner Angles

Nominal 0.016 inch aluminum 1 x 1 inch with factory applied kraft backing. Aluminum shall be ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3105, or 5005.

#### 2.1.5 Finishing Cement

Mineral fiber hydraulic-setting thermal insulating cement ASTM C 449.

#### 2.1.6 Fibrous Glass Cloth and Glass Tape

Fibrous glass cloth and glass tape shall have flame spread and smoke developed ratings of no greater than 25/50 when measured in accordance with ASTM E 84. Fibrous glass cloth and tape; 20 x 20 maximum size mesh. Tape shall be 4 inch wide rolls. Class 3 tape shall be 4.5 ounces per square yard.

#### 2.1.7 Staples

Outward clinching type monel ASTM A 167, Type 304 or 316 stainless steel.

#### 2.1.8 Jackets

ASTM C 921, Type I, maximum moisture vapor transmission 0.02 perms, minimum puncture resistance 50 Beach units on all surfaces except concealed ductwork, where a minimum puncture resistance of 25 Beach units is acceptable. Minimum tensile strength, 35 pound/inch width. ASTM C 921, Type II, minimum puncture resistance 25 Beach units, tensile strength minimum 20 pound/inch width. Jackets used on insulation exposed in finished areas shall have white finish suitable for painting without sizing.

##### 2.1.8.1 White Vapor Retarder ASJ (All Service Jacket)

For use on hot/cold pipes, ducts, or equipment. Vapor retarder jackets used on insulation exposed in finished areas shall have white finish suitable for painting without sizing.

#### 2.1.8.2 Aluminum Jackets

Aluminum jackets shall be corrugated, embossed or smooth sheet, 0.016 inch nominal thickness; ASTM B 209, Temper H14, Temper H16, Alloy 3003, 5005, or 3105 with factory applied moisture retarder. Corrugated aluminum jacket shall not be used outdoors. Aluminum jacket securing bands shall be Type 304 stainless steel, 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide for pipe under 12 inch diameter and 3/4 inch wide for pipe over 12 inch diameter. Aluminum jacket circumferential seam bands shall be 2 x 0.016 inch aluminum matching jacket material. Bands for insulation below ground shall be 3/4 x 0.020 inch thick stainless steel, or fiberglass reinforced tape. The jacket may, at the option of the Contractor, be provided with a factory fabricated Pittsburgh or "Z" type longitudinal joint. When the "Z" joint is used, the bands at the circumferential joints shall be designed by the manufacturer to seal the joints and hold the jacket in place.

#### 2.1.8.3 Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Jackets

Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacket and fitting covers shall have high impact strength, UV resistant rating or treatment and moderate chemical resistance with minimum thickness 0.030 inch. Insulation under PVC jacket shall meet jacket manufacturer's written recommendations.

#### 2.1.9 Vapor Retarder Coating

The vapor retarder coating shall be fire and water resistant and appropriately selected for either outdoor or indoor service. Color shall be white. The water vapor permeance of the compound shall not exceed 0.05 perm and shall be determined according to procedure B of ASTM E 96 utilizing apparatus described in ASTM E 96. The coating shall be a nonflammable, fire resistant type. The flash point of the compound shall not be less than 80 degrees F and shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 3278. All other application and service properties shall be in accordance with ASTM C 647.

#### 2.1.10 Wire

Soft annealed ASTM A 580 Type 302, 304 or 316 stainless steel, 16 or 18 gauge.

### 2.2 PIPE INSULATION MATERIALS

Pipe insulation materials shall be as follows:

#### 2.2.1 Aboveground Cold Pipeline

Insulation for minus 30 degrees to Plus 60 degrees F shall be as follows:

##### 2.2.1.1 Cellular Glass

ASTM C 552, Type II, and Type III.

##### 2.2.1.2 Flexible Cellular Insulation

ASTM C 534, Type I or II. Type II shall have vapor retarder skin on both sides of the insulation.

#### 2.2.1.3 Phenolic Insulation

ASTM C 1126, Type III. A maximum allowable leachable chloride content shall comply with ASTM C 795 when tested in accordance with ASTM C 871.

#### 2.2.2 Aboveground Hot Pipeline

For aboveground hot pipeline above 60 degrees F insulation the following requirements shall be met.

##### 2.2.2.1 Mineral Fiber

ASTM C 547, Class 1 or Class 2 as required for the operating temperature range.

##### 2.2.2.2 Calcium Silicate

ASTM C 533, Type I indoor only, or outdoors above 250 degrees F pipe temperature.

##### 2.2.2.3 Cellular Glass

ASTM C 552, Type II and Type III.

##### 2.2.2.4 Flexible Cellular Insulation

ASTM C 534, Type I or II to 200 degrees F service.

##### 2.2.2.5 Phenolic Insulation

ASTM C 1126 Type III to 250 F service. A maximum allowable leachable chloride content shall comply with ASTM C 795 when tested in accordance with ASTM C 871.

#### 2.2.3 Below ground Pipeline Insulation

ASTM C 552, Type II.

#### 2.3 DUCT INSULATION MATERIALS

Duct insulation materials shall be as follows:

##### 2.3.1 Rigid Mineral Fiber

ASTM C 612, Class 1.

##### 2.3.2 Flexible Mineral Fiber

ASTM C 553, Type I, Class B-2.

##### 2.3.3 Cellular Glass

ASTM C 552, Type I.

##### 2.3.4 Phenolic Foam

ASTM C 1126 Type II. A maximum allowable leachable chloride content shall comply with ASTM C 795 when tested in accordance with ASTM C 871.

#### 2.3.5 Flexible Cellular

ASTM C 534 Type II.

### 2.4 EQUIPMENT INSULATION MATERIALS

Equipment insulation materials shall be as follows:

#### 2.4.1 Cold Equipment Insulation

For temperatures below 60 degrees F.

##### 2.4.1.1 Cellular Glass

ASTM C 552, Type I, Type III, or Type IV as required.

##### 2.4.1.2 Flexible Cellular Insulation

ASTM C 534, Type II.

##### 2.4.1.3 Phenolic Foam

ASTM C 1126 Type II. A maximum allowable leachable chloride content shall comply with ASTM C 795 when tested in accordance with ASTM C 871.

#### 2.4.2 Hot Equipment Insulation

For temperatures above 60 degrees F.

##### 2.4.2.1 Rigid Mineral Fiber

ASTM C 612, Type 2, 3, 4 or 5 as required for temperature encountered to 1800 degrees F.

##### 2.4.2.2 Flexible Mineral Fiber

ASTM C 553, Type 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, or 7 as required for temperature encountered to 1200 degrees F.

##### 2.4.2.3 Calcium Silicate

ASTM C 533, Type I, indoors only, or outdoors above 250 degrees F. Pipe shape may be used on diesel engine exhaust piping and mufflers to 1200 degrees F.

##### 2.4.2.4 Cellular Glass

ASTM C 552, Type I, Type III, or Type IV as required.

##### 2.4.2.5 Flexible Cellular Insulation

ASTM C 534, Type II, to 200 degrees F.

##### 2.4.2.6 Phenolic Foam

ASTM C 1126 Type II to 250 degrees F. A maximum allowable leachable

chloride content shall comply with ASTM C 795 when tested in accordance with ASTM C 871.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATION - GENERAL

##### 3.1.1 Installation

Except as otherwise specified, material shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions. Insulation materials shall not be applied until tests and heat tracing specified in other sections of this specification are completed. Material such as rust, scale, dirt and moisture shall be removed from surfaces to receive insulation. Insulation shall be kept clean and dry. Insulation shall not be removed from its shipping containers until the day it is ready to use and shall be returned to like containers or equally protected from dirt and moisture at the end of each workday. Insulation that becomes dirty shall be thoroughly cleaned prior to use. If insulation becomes wet or if aforementioned cleaning does not restore the surfaces to like new condition, the insulation will be rejected, and shall be immediately removed from the jobsite. Joints shall be staggered on multi layer insulation. Mineral fiber thermal insulating cement shall be mixed with demineralized water when used on stainless steel surfaces. Insulation, jacketing and accessories shall be installed in accordance with MICA-01 standard plates except where modified herein or on the drawings.

##### 3.1.2 Fire stopping

Where pipes and ducts pass through fire walls, fire partitions, above grade floors, and fire rated chase walls, the penetration shall be sealed with Fire stopping materials as specified in Section 07270 FIRE STOPPING.

##### 3.1.3 Painting and Finishing

Painting shall be as specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL.

##### 3.1.4 Flexible Cellular Insulation

Flexible cellular insulation shall be installed with seams and joints sealed with a contact adhesive. Flexible cellular insulation shall not be used on surfaces greater than 200 degrees F. Seams shall be staggered when applying multiple layers of insulation. Insulation exposed to weather and not shown to have jacketing shall be protected with two coats of UV resistant finish as recommended by the manufacturer after the adhesive is dry.

##### 3.1.5 Welding

No welding shall be done on piping, duct or equipment without written approval of the Contracting Officer. The capacitor discharge welding process may be used for securing metal fasteners to duct.

##### 3.1.6 Pipes/Ducts/Equipment which Require Insulation

Insulation is required, unless stated otherwise, on all pipes, ducts, or equipment, which operate at or below 60 F and at or above 80 F.

#### 3.2 PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

### 3.2.1 Pipe Insulation

#### 3.2.1.1 General

Pipe insulation shall be installed on aboveground hot and cold pipeline systems as specified below to form a continuous thermal retarder, including straight runs, fittings and appurtenances unless specified otherwise. Installation shall be with full length units of insulation and using a single cut piece to complete a run. Cut pieces or scraps abutting each other shall not be used. Pipe insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Pipe used solely for fire protection.
- b. Chromium plated pipe to plumbing fixtures. However, fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall have the hot water supply and drain, including the trap, insulated where exposed.
- c. Sanitary drain lines.
- d. Unions in pipe above 60 degrees F.
- e. Strainers in pipe above 60 degrees F.
- f. Check valves in pipe above 60 degrees F.
- g. Air chambers.

#### 3.2.1.2 Pipes Passing Through Sleeves

- a. Pipe insulation shall be continuous through the sleeve.
- b. An aluminum jacket with factory applied moisture retarder shall be provided over the insulation wherever penetrations require sealing.
- c. Where penetrating interior walls, the aluminum jacket shall extend 2 inches beyond either side of the wall and shall be secured on each end with a band.
- d. Where penetrating floors, the aluminum jacket shall extend from a point below the backup material to a point 10 inches above the floor with one band at the floor and one not more than 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.
- e. Where penetrating waterproofed floors, the aluminum jacket shall extend from below the backup material to a point 2 inches above the flashing with a band 1 inch from the end of the aluminum jacket.
- f. Where penetrating exterior walls, the aluminum jacket required for pipe exposed to weather shall continue through the sleeve to a point 2 inches beyond the interior surface of the wall.
- g. Where penetrating roofs, pipe shall be insulated as required for interior service to a point flush with the top of the flashing and sealed with vapor retarder coating. The insulations for exterior application shall butt tightly to the top of flashing and interior insulation. The exterior aluminum jacket shall extend 2 inches down beyond the end of the insulation to form a counter flashing.



The flashing and counter flashing shall be sealed underneath with caulking.

### 3.2.1.3 Pipes Passing Through Hangers

- a. Insulation, whether hot or cold application, shall be continuous through hangers. All horizontal pipes 2 inches and smaller shall be supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield to protect the insulation in accordance with MSS SP-69. Whenever insulation shows signs of being compressed, or when the insulation or jacket shows visible signs of distortion at or near the support shield, insulation inserts as specified below for piping larger than 2 inches shall be installed.
- b. Horizontal pipes larger than 2 inches at 60 degrees F and above shall be supported on hangers in accordance with MSS SP-69, and Section 15400 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.
- c. Horizontal pipes larger than 2 inches below 60 degrees F shall be supported on hangers with the addition of a Type 40 protection shield in accordance with MSS SP-69. An insulation insert of cellular glass or calcium silicate shall be installed above each shield. The insert shall cover not less than the bottom 180 degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required per the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the weight of the pipe from crushing the insulation as an option to installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert.
- d. Vertical pipes shall be supported with either Type 8 or Type 42 riser clamps with the addition of two Type 40 protection shields in accordance with MSS SP-69 covering the 360 degree arc of the insulation. An insulation insert of cellular glass or calcium silicate shall be installed between each shield and the pipe. The insert shall cover the 360 degree arc of the pipe. Inserts shall be the same thickness as the insulation, and shall extend 2 inches on each end beyond the protection shield. When insulation inserts are required per the above, and the insulation thickness is less than 1 inch, wooden or cork dowels or blocks may be installed between the pipe and the shield to prevent the hanger from crushing the insulation as an option instead of installing insulation inserts. The insulation jacket shall be continuous over the wooden dowel, wooden block, or insulation insert. The vertical weight of the pipe shall be supported with hangers located in a horizontal section of the pipe. When the pipe riser is longer than 30 feet, the weight of the pipe shall be additionally supported with hangers in the vertical run of the pipe which are directly clamped to the pipe, penetrating the pipe insulation. These hangers shall be insulated and the insulation jacket sealed as indicated herein for anchors in a similar service.
- e. Inserts shall be covered with a jacket material of the same appearance and quality as the adjoining pipe insulation jacket, shall overlap the adjoining pipe jacket 1-1/2 inches, and shall be sealed as required for the pipe jacket. The jacket material

used to cover inserts in flexible cellular insulation shall conform to ASTM C 921, Type 1, and is allowed to be of a different material than the adjoining insulation material.

#### 3.2.1.4 Pipes Passing Through Walls

- a. For hot water pipes supplying lavatories or other similar heated service which requires insulation, the insulation shall be terminated on the backside of the finished wall. The insulation termination shall be protected with two coats of vapor barrier coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch applied with glass tape embedded between coats (if applicable). The coating shall extend out onto the insulation 2 inches and shall seal the end of the insulation. Glass tape seams shall overlap 1 inch. Caulk the annular space between the pipe and wall penetration. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration at least 3/8 inch.
- b. For domestic cold water pipes requiring insulation, the insulation shall be terminated on the finished side of the wall (i.e. insulation must cover the pipe throughout the wall penetration). The insulation shall be protected with two coats of vapor barrier coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch. The coating shall extend out onto the insulation 2 inches and shall seal the end of the insulation. Caulk the annular space between the pipe and wall penetration. Cover the pipe and wall penetration with a properly sized (well fitting) escutcheon plate. The escutcheon plate shall overlap the wall penetration by at least 3/8 inch.

#### 3.2.1.5 Flexible Cellular Pipe Insulation

Flexible cellular pipe insulation shall be tubular form for pipe sizes 6 inches and less. Type II sheet insulation used on pipes larger than 6 inches shall not be stretched around the pipe. On pipes larger than 12 inches, adhere insulation directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe. Seams shall be staggered when applying multiple layers of insulation. Sweat fittings shall be insulated with miter-cut pieces the same size as on adjacent piping. Screwed fittings shall be insulated with sleeved fitting covers fabricated from miter-cut pieces and shall be overlapped and sealed to the adjacent pipe insulation.

#### 3.2.2 Aboveground Cold Pipelines

The following shall be included for aboveground cold pipelines minus 30 degrees to plus 60 degrees F:

- a. Domestic cold and chilled drinking water.
- b. Make-up water.
- c. Chilled water.
- d. Air conditioner condensate drains.

##### 3.2.2.1 Insulation Thickness

Insulation thickness for cold pipelines shall be determined using Table I.

Table I - Cold Piping Insulation Thickness  
Pipe Size (inches)

Type of Service	Material	Runouts up to 2 in*	1 in & less	1.25 - 2 in	2.5 - 4 in	5 - 6 in	8 in & larger
Chilled water supply & return piping	CG	1.5	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
	FC	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
	PF	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Cold domestic water, above and below ceilings	CG	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
	FC	3/8	3/8	3/8	3/8	3/8	3/8
	PF	3/8	3/8	3/8	3/8	3/8	3/8
Exposed lavatory drains exposed domestic water piping & drains to areas for handicap personnel	FC	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	3/4	3/4
	MF	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
Air conditioning condensate drain located inside building	FC		3/8	0.5	0.5	N/A	N/A
	PF		3/8	3/8	3/8	N/A	N/A

\*When runouts to terminal units exceed 12 feet, the entire length of runout shall be insulated like main feed pipe.

LEGEND:

PF - Phenolic Foam  
CG - Cellular Glass  
CS - Calcium Silicate  
MF - Mineral Fiber  
FC - Flexible Cellular

### 3.2.2.2 Jacket for Fibrous, Cellular Glass, and Phenolic Foam Insulated Pipe

Insulation shall be covered with a factory applied vapor retarder jacket or field applied seal welded PVC jacket. The aluminum jacket shall be installed as specified for piping exposed to weather, except sealing of the laps of the aluminum jacket is not required.

### 3.2.2.3 Insulation for Straight Runs (Fibrous, Cellular Glass and Phenolic Foam)

- a. Insulation shall be applied to the pipe with joints tightly butted. The ends of fibrous insulation shall be sealed off with vapor retarder coating at intervals not to exceed 15 feet.
- b. Longitudinal laps of the jacket material shall overlap not less

than 1-1/2 inches. Butt strips 3 inches wide shall be provided for circumferential joints.

- c. Laps and butt strips shall be secured with adhesive and stapled on 4 inch centers if not factory self-sealing.
- d. Factory self-sealing lap systems may be used when the ambient temperature is between 40 degrees and 120 degrees F during installation. The lap system shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Stapler shall be used only if specifically recommended by the manufacturer. Where gaps occur, the section shall be replaced or the gap repaired by applying adhesive under the lap and then stapling.
- e. All Staples, including those used to repair factory self-seal lap systems, shall be coated with a vapor retarder coating. All seams, except those on factory self-seal systems shall be coated with vapor retarder coating.
- f. Breaks and punctures in the jacket material shall be patched by wrapping a strip of jacket material around the pipe and securing it with adhesive, stapling, and coating with vapor retarder coating. The patch shall extend not less than 1-1/2 inches past the break.
- g. At penetrations such as thermometers, the voids in the insulation shall be filled and sealed with vapor retarder coating.

#### 3.2.2.4 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

- a. Pipe insulation shall have ends thoroughly coated with a vapor retarder coating not less than 6 inches from each flange, union, valve, anchor, or fitting in all directions.
- b. Precut, preformed insulation for placement over fittings, flanges, unions, valves, anchors, and mechanical couplings shall be used. Precut, preformed insulation shall exhibit the same properties as the adjoining pipe insulation. Where precut/preformed is unavailable, rigid preformed pipe insulation sections may be segmented into the shape required. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation shall be used. If nesting size insulation is used, the insulation should be overlapped 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Loose fill mineral fiber or insulating cement shall be used to fill the voids. Elbows insulated using segments shall not have less than 3 segments per elbow.
- c. Upon completion of installation of insulation on flanges, unions, valves, anchors, fittings and accessories, terminations and insulation not protected by factory vapor retarder jackets or PVC fitting covers shall be protected with two coats of vapor retarder coating with a minimum total thickness of 1/16 inch, applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape seams shall overlap 1 inch. The coating shall extend out onto the adjoining pipe insulation 2 inches.
- d. Anchors attached directly to the pipe shall be insulated for a sufficient distance to prevent condensation but not less than 6 inches from the insulation surface.

- e. Flexible connections at pumps and other equipment shall be insulated with « inch flexible cellular insulation, unless otherwise indicated.
- f. Insulation shall be marked showing the location of unions, strainers, and check valves.

### 3.2.2.5 Optional PVC Fitting Covers

At the option of the Contractor, premolded, one or two piece PVC fitting covers may be used in lieu of the vapor retarder and embedded glass tape. Factory premolded insulation segments shall be used under the fitting covers for elbows. Insulation segments shall be the same thickness as adjoining pipe insulation and the insulation shall be protected with one coat of vapor retarder coating under the PVC cover. The covers shall be secured by PVC vapor retarder tape, adhesive, seal-welding or with tacks made for securing PVC covers. Seams in the cover, and tacks and laps to adjoining pipe insulation jacket, shall be sealed with vapor retarder tape to ensure that the assembly has a continuous vapor seal.

### 3.2.3 Aboveground Hot Pipelines

For hot pipelines above 60 degrees F the following shall be included:

- a. Domestic hot water.
- b. Hot water heating.

#### 3.2.3.1 Insulation Thickness

Insulation thickness for hot pipelines shall be determined using Table II.

#### LEGEND:

PF - Phenolic Foam  
 CG - Cellular Glass  
 CS - Calcium Silicate  
 MF - Mineral Fiber  
 FC - Flexible Cellular

Table II - Hot Piping Insulation Thickness  
 Pipe Size (inches)

Type of Service (degrees F)	Material	Runouts up to 2 in	1 in & less	1.25 - 2 in	2.5 - 4 in	5 - 6 in	8 in & larger
Hot domestic water supply	CG	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
	FC	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
	PF	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
	MF	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
Heating hot water, supply & return (250 F max)	CG	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.5
	PF	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5
	MF	0.5	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.5	3.0
	CS	1.0	1.5	2.0	2.5	2.5	2.5

Table II - Hot Piping Insulation Thickness  
Pipe Size (inches)

Type of Service (degrees F)	Material	Runouts up to 2 in	1 in & less	1.25 - 2 in	2.5 - 4 in	5 - 6 in	8 in & larger
-----------------------------	----------	--------------------	-------------	-------------	------------	----------	---------------

---

\*When runouts to terminal units exceed 12 feet, the entire length of runout shall be insulated like the main feed pipe.

### 3.2.3.2 Jacket for Insulated Pipe

Insulation shall be covered, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, with a factory applied Type II jacket or field applied aluminum where required or seal welded PVC.

### 3.2.3.3 Insulation for Straight Runs

- a. Insulation shall be applied to the pipe with joints tightly butted.
- b. Longitudinal laps of the jacket material shall overlap not less than 1-1/2 inches, and butt strips 3 inches wide shall be provided for circumferential joints.
- c. Laps and butt strips shall be secured with adhesive and stapled on 4 inch centers if not factory self-sealing. Adhesive may be omitted where pipe is concealed.
- d. Factory self-sealing lap systems may be used when the ambient temperature is between 40 degrees and 120 degrees F and shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Laps and butt strips shall be stapled whenever there is nonadhesion of the system. Where gaps occur, the section shall be replaced or the gap repaired by applying adhesive under the lap and then stapling.
- e. Breaks and punctures in the jacket material shall be patched by wrapping a strip of jacket material around the pipe and be secured with adhesive and stapled on 4 inch centers if not factory self-sealing. Adhesive may be omitted where pipe is concealed. Patch shall extend not less than 1-1/2 inches past the break.
- f. Install flexible cellular pipe insulation by slitting tubular sections and applying onto piping or tubing. Alternately, whenever possible, slide unsplit sections over the open ends of piping or tubing. All seams and butt joints shall be secured and sealed with adhesive. When using self seal products only the butt joints shall be secured with adhesive. Insulation shall be pushed on the pipe, never pulled. Stretching of insulation may result in open seams and joints. All edges shall be clean cut. Rough or jagged edges of the insulation shall not be permitted. Proper tools such as sharp knives must be used. Type II sheet insulation when used on pipe larger than 6 inches shall not be stretched around the pipe. On pipes larger than 12 inches, adhere sheet insulation directly to the pipe on the lower 1/3 of the pipe.

#### 3.2.3.4 Insulation for Fittings and Accessories

- a. The run of the line pipe insulation shall have the ends brought up to the item.
- b. Insulation of the same thickness and conductivity as the adjoining pipe insulation, either premolded or segmented, shall be placed around the item abutting the adjoining pipe insulation, or if nesting size insulation is used, overlapping 2 inches or one pipe diameter. Loose fill mineral fiber or insulating cement shall be used to fill the voids. Insulation for elbows less than 3 inch size shall be premolded. Insulation for elbows 3 inch size and larger shall be either premolded or segmented. Elbows insulated using segments shall have not less than 3 segments per elbow. Insulation may be wired or taped on until finish is applied.
- c. Upon completion of installation of insulation on flanges, unions, valves, anchors, fittings and accessories, terminations and insulation not protected by factory vapor retarder jackets or PVC fitting covers shall be protected with two coats of Class 1 adhesive applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape seams shall overlap 1 inch. Adhesive shall extend onto the adjoining insulation not less than 2 inches. The total dry film thickness shall be not less than 1/16 inch.
- d. Insulation terminations shall be tapered to unions at a 45-degree angle.
- e. At the option of the Contractor, factory premolded one- or two-piece PVC fitting covers may be used in lieu of the adhesive and embedded glass tape. Factory premolded segments or factory or field cut blanket insert insulation segments shall be used under the cover and shall be the same thickness as adjoining pipe insulation. The covers shall be secured by PVC vapor retarder tape, adhesive, seal-welding or with tacks made for securing PVC covers.

#### 3.2.4 Piping Exposed to Weather

Piping exposed to weather shall be insulated and jacketed as specified for the applicable service inside the building. After this procedure, an aluminum jacket shall be applied. PVC jacketing requires no factory applied jacket beneath it. Flexible cellular insulation exposed to weather shall be treated in accordance with paragraph FLEXIBLE CELLULAR INSULATION.

##### 3.2.4.1 Aluminum Jacket

The jacket for hot piping may be factory applied. The jacket shall overlap not less than 2 inches at longitudinal and circumferential joints and shall be secured with bands at not more than 12 inch centers. Longitudinal joints shall be overlapped down to shed water and located at 4 or 8 o'clock positions. Joints on piping 60 degrees F and below shall be sealed with caulking while overlapping to prevent moisture penetration. Where jacketing on piping 60 degrees F and below abuts an uninsulated surface, joints shall be caulked to prevent moisture penetration. Joints on piping above 60 degrees F shall be sealed with a moisture retarder.

##### 3.2.4.2 Insulation for Fittings

Flanges, unions, valves, fittings, and accessories shall be insulated and finished as specified for the applicable service. Two coats of an emulsion type weatherproof mastic recommended by the insulation manufacturer shall be applied with glass tape embedded between coats. Tape overlaps shall be not less than 1 inch and the adjoining aluminum jacket not less than 2 inches. Factory preformed aluminum jackets may be used in lieu of the above. Molded PVC fitting covers shall be used with PVC lagging and adhesive welded moisture tight.

#### 3.2.4.3 PVC Lagging

PVC lagging shall be ultraviolet resistant and adhesive welded vapor tight with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Installation shall include provision for thermal expansion.

#### 3.2.5 Below ground Pipe Insulation

The following shall be included:

- a. Heated oil.
- b. Domestic hot water.
- c. Heating hot water.
- d. Dual temperature water.
- e. Steam.
- f. Condensate.

##### 3.2.5.1 Type of Insulation

Below ground pipe shall be insulated with 3 inch cellular glass insulation set in a coat of bedding compound as recommended by the manufacturer.

##### 3.2.5.2 Installation of Below ground Pipe Insulation

- a. Bore surface of the insulation shall be coated with a thin coat of gypsum cement of a type recommended by the insulation manufacturer. Coating thickness shall be sufficient to fill surface cells of insulation. Mastic type materials shall not be permitted for this coating.
- b. Insulation applied to the pipe shall have joints tightly butted and bedded together with bedding compound as recommended by the manufacture. Butt joints shall be staggered.
- c. Stainless steel bands, 3/4 inch wide by 0.020 inch thick shall be used to secure insulation in place. A minimum of two bands per section of insulation shall be applied. As an alternate, fiberglass reinforced tape may be used to secure insulation on piping up to 12 inches in diameter. A minimum of two bands per section of insulation shall be applied.
- d. Insulation shall terminate at anchor blocks but shall be continuous through sleeves and manholes.
- e. At point of entry to buildings, underground insulation shall be



terminated 2 inches inside the wall or floor, shall butt tightly against the aboveground insulation and the butt joint shall be sealed with vapor retarded coating.

- f. Provision for expansion and contraction shall be made in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's recommendations.
- g. Flanges, couplings, valves, and fittings shall be insulated with factory premolded, prefabricated, or field-fabricated sections of insulation of the same material and thickness as the adjoining pipe insulation. Insulation sections shall be secured in place with wire, bore surfaces coated, and joints sealed as specified.
- h. Insulation, including fittings, shall be finished with three coats of asphaltic mastic, with 10 by 10 glass mesh reinforcing fabric embedded between coats. Fabric shall be overlapped a minimum of 2 inches at joints. Total film thickness shall be a minimum of 3/16 inch. As an alternate, a prefabricated bituminous laminated jacket, reinforced with 10 by 10 glass fiber mesh, shall be applied to the insulation. Jacketing material and application procedures shall match manufacturer's written instructions.
- i. At termination points, other than building entrances, the mastic and cloth or tape shall cover the ends of insulation and extend 2 inches along the bare pipe.

### 3.3 DUCT INSULATION INSTALLATION

#### 3.3.1 Duct Insulation Thickness

Duct insulation thickness shall be in accordance with Table III.

Table III - Minimum Duct Insulation (mm)

Cold Air Ducts	50
Relief Ducts	38
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	38
Warm Air Ducts	50
Relief Ducts	38
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	38

Table III - Minimum Duct Insulation (inches)

Cold Air Ducts	2.0
Relief Ducts	1.5
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	1.5
Warm Air Ducts	2.0
Relief Ducts	1.5
Fresh Air Intake Ducts	1.5

#### 3.3.2 Insulation and Vapor Retarder for Cold Air Duct

Insulation and vapor retarder for cold air duct below 60 degrees F: Ducts and associated equipment shall be insulated to a thickness which is in accordance with Table III. The following shall be insulated:

- a. Supply ducts.
- b. Return air ducts.
- c. Fresh air intake ducts.
- d. Mixing boxes (field-insulated).

Insulation for rectangular ducts shall be flexible type where concealed, minimum density 3/4 pcf and rigid type where exposed, minimum density 3 pcf. Insulation for round/oval ducts shall be flexible type, minimum density 3/4 pcf with a factory Type I jacket; or, a semi rigid board, minimum density 3 pcf, formed or fabricated to a tight fit, edges beveled and joints tightly butted and staggered, with a factory applied Type I all service jacket. Insulation for exposed ducts shall be provided with either a white, paintable, factory-applied Type I jacket or a vapor retarder jacket coating finish as specified. Fibrous and cellular glass insulation on concealed duct shall be provided with a factory-applied Type I vapor retarder jacket. The total dry film thickness shall be approximately 1/16 inch. Duct insulation shall be continuous through sleeves and prepared openings except fire wall penetrations. Duct insulation terminating at fire dampers, shall be continuous over the damper collar and retaining angle of fire dampers, which are exposed to unconditioned air and which may be prone to condensate formation. Duct insulation and vapor retarder shall cover the collar, neck, and any uninsulated surfaces of diffusers, registers and grills. Vapor retarder materials shall be applied to form a complete unbroken vapor seal over the insulation.

#### 3.3.2.1 Installation on Concealed Duct

- a. For rectangular, oval or round ducts, insulation shall be attached by applying Class 2 adhesive around the entire perimeter of the duct in 6 inch wide strips on 12 inch centers.
- b. For rectangular and oval ducts, 24 inches and larger insulation shall be additionally secured to bottom of ducts by the use of mechanical fasteners. Fasteners shall be spaced on 18 inch centers and not more than 18 inches from duct corners.
- c. For rectangular, oval and round ducts, mechanical fasteners shall be provided on sides of duct risers for all duct sizes. Fasteners shall be spaced on 18 inch centers and not more than 18 inches from duct corners.
- d. Insulation shall be impaled on the mechanical fasteners where used and shall be pressed thoroughly into the adhesive. Care shall be taken to ensure vapor retarder jacket joints overlap 2 inches. The insulation shall not be compressed to a thickness less than that specified. Insulation shall be carried over standing seams and trapeze-type duct hangers.
- e. Self-locking washers shall be installed where mechanical fasteners are used. The pin shall be trimmed back and bent over.
- f. Jacket overlaps shall be secured under the overlap with Class 2 adhesive and stapled on 4 inch centers. Staples and seams shall be coated with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.

- g. Breaks in the jacket material shall be covered with patches of the same material as the vapor retarder. The patches shall extend not less than 2 inches beyond the break or penetration in all directions and shall be secured with Class 2 adhesive and staples. Staples and joints shall be sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- h. At jacket penetrations such as hangers thermometers and damper operating rods, voids in the insulation shall be filled and the penetration sealed with a brush coat of vapor retarder coating.
- i. Insulation terminations and pin punctures shall be sealed and flashed with a reinforced vapor retarder coating finish. The coating shall overlap the adjoining insulation and uninsulated surface 2 inches. Pin puncture coatings shall extend 2 inches from the puncture in all directions.
- j. Where insulation standoff brackets occur, insulation shall be extended under the bracket and the jacket terminated at the bracket.

#### 3.3.6 Duct Test Holes

After duct systems have been tested, adjusted, and balanced, breaks in the insulation and jacket shall be repaired in accordance with the applicable section of this specification for the type of duct insulation to be repaired.

### 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSULATION INSTALLATION

#### 3.4.1 General

Removable insulation sections shall be provided to cover parts of equipment which must be opened periodically for maintenance including vessel covers, fasteners, flanges and accessories. Equipment insulation shall be omitted on the following:

- a. Handholes.
- b. Cleanouts.
- c. ASME stamps.
- d. Manufacturer's nameplates.

#### 3.4.2 Insulation for Cold Equipment

Cold equipment below 60 degrees F: Insulation shall be furnished on equipment handling media below 60 degrees F including the following:

- a. Pumps.
- b. Water softeners.
- c. Water pumps.
- d. Air handling equipment parts that are not factory insulated.
- e. Expansion and air separation tanks.

### 3.4.2.1 Insulation Type

Insulation shall be suitable for the temperature encountered. Thicknesses shall be as follows:

- a. Equipment Handling Media Between 35 and 60 degrees F: 2 inch thick cellular glass, 1-1/2 inch thick flexible cellular, or 1 inch thick phenolic foam.
- b. Equipment Handling Media Between 0 degree F and 34 degrees F: 3-1/2 inch thick cellular glass, 2-1/2 inch flexible cellular, or 1-1/2 inch thick phenolic foam.

### 3.4.2.2 Pump Insulation

- a. Pumps shall be insulated by forming a box around the pump housing. The box shall be constructed by forming the bottom and sides using joints which do not leave raw ends of insulation exposed. Joints between sides and between sides and bottom shall be joined by adhesive with lap strips for rigid mineral fiber and contact adhesive for flexible cellular insulation. The box shall conform to the requirements of MICA-01 plate No. 49 when using flexible cellular insulation. Joints between top cover and sides shall fit tightly forming a female shiplap joint on the side pieces and a male joint on the top cover, thus making the top cover removable.
- b. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- c. Upon completion of installation of the insulation, including removable sections, two coats of vapor retarder coating shall be applied with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. A parting line shall be provided between the box and the removable sections allowing the removable sections to be removed without disturbing the insulation coating. Caulking shall be applied to parting line, between equipment and removable section insulation, and at all penetrations.

### 3.4.2.3 Other Equipment

- a. Insulation shall be formed or fabricated to fit the equipment. To ensure a tight fit on round equipment, edges shall be beveled and joints shall be tightly butted and staggered.
- b. Insulation shall be secured in place with bands or wires at intervals as recommended by the manufacturer but not more than 12 inch centers except flexible cellular which shall be adhered. Insulation corners shall be protected under wires and bands with suitable corner angles.
- c. Cellular glass and phenolic foam insulation shall be set in a coating of bedding compound, and joints shall be sealed with bedding compound as recommended by the manufacturer. Mineral fiber insulation joints shall be filled with finishing cement.
- d. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.

### 3.4.2.4 Vapor Retarder

Upon completion of installation of insulation, penetrations shall be caulked. Two coats of vapor retarder coating shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Caulking shall be applied to parting line between equipment and removable section insulation.

### 3.4.3 Insulation for Hot Equipment

Hot equipment above 60 degrees F: Insulation shall be furnished on equipment handling media above 60 degrees F including the following:

- a. Pumps handling media above 130 degrees F.
- b. Air separation tanks.

#### 3.4.3.1 Insulation

Insulation shall be suitable for the temperature encountered. Shell and tube-type heat exchangers shall be insulated for the temperature of the shell medium. Insulation thicknesses shall be as follows:

- a. Equipment handling media to 250 degrees F: 2 inch thick rigid mineral fiber, 2 inch thick flexible mineral fiber, 2 inch thick calcium silicate, 1.5 inch cellular glass, 1.5 inch thick phenolic foam, to 200 degrees F 1.0 inch Flexible Cellular.

#### 3.4.3.2 Insulation of Pumps

Pumps shall be insulated by forming a box around the pump housing. The box shall be constructed by forming the bottom and sides using joints which do not leave raw ends of insulation exposed. Bottom and sides shall be banded to form a rigid housing which does not rest on the pump. Joints between top cover and sides shall fit tightly. The top cover shall have a joint forming a female shiplap joint on the side pieces and a male joint on the top cover, thus making the top cover removable. Two coats of Class I adhesive shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. A parting line shall be provided between the box and the removable sections allowing the removable sections to be removed without disturbing the insulation coating.

The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Caulking shall be applied to parting line of the removable sections and penetrations.

#### 3.4.3.3 Other Equipment

- a. Insulation shall be formed or fabricated to fit the equipment. To ensure a tight fit on round equipment, edges shall be beveled and joints shall be tightly butted and staggered.
- b. Insulation shall be secured in place with bands or wires at intervals as recommended by the manufacturer but not greater than 12 inch centers except flexible cellular which shall be adhered. Insulation corners shall be protected under wires and bands with suitable corner angles.
- c. On high vibration equipment, cellular glass insulation shall be set in a coating of bedding compound as recommended by the manufacturer, and joints shall be sealed with bedding compound.

Mineral fiber joints shall be filled with finishing cement.

- d. Exposed insulation corners shall be protected with corner angles.
- e. Upon completion of installation of insulation, penetrations shall be caulked. Two coats of Class I adhesive shall be applied over insulation, including removable sections, with a layer of glass cloth embedded between the coats. The total dry thickness of the finish shall be 1/16 inch. Caulking shall be applied to parting line between equipment and removable section insulation.

#### 3.4.4 Equipment Handling Dual Temperature Media

Below and above 60 degrees F: Equipment handling dual temperature media shall be insulated as specified for cold equipment.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15330

## WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM, FIRE PROTECTION

06/94

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.2.1 Hydraulic Design
    - 1.2.1.1 Hose Demand
    - 1.2.1.2 Basis for Calculations
  - 1.2.2 Sprinkler Spacing
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS Submit six sets of all submittals required herein to the Contracting Officer representative. Submit an additional two copies of all submittals to Technical Services 14 days prior to final test.
- 1.4 HYDRAULIC CALCULATIONS
- 1.5 SUBMITTAL PREPARER'S QUALIFICATIONS
- 1.6 INSTALLER QUALIFICATIONS
- 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS
- 1.8 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS
  - 2.1.1 Standard Products
  - 2.1.2 Requirements for Fire Protection Service
  - 2.1.3 Nameplates
- 2.2 ABOVEGROUND PIPING SYSTEMS
  - 2.2.1 Steel Piping System
    - 2.2.1.1 Steel Pipe
    - 2.2.1.2 Fittings for Non-Grooved Steel Pipe
    - 2.2.1.3 Grooved Mechanical Joints and Fittings
    - 2.2.1.4 Flanges
  - 2.2.2 Pipe Hangers
  - 2.2.3 Valves
    - 2.2.3.1 Control Valve and Gate Valve
    - 2.2.3.2 Check Valve
- 2.3 ALARM INITIATING AND SUPERVISORY DEVICES
  - 2.3.1 Sprinkler Waterflow Indicator Switch, Vane Type
  - 2.3.2 Sprinkler Pressure (Waterflow) Alarm Switch
  - 2.3.3 Valve Supervisory (Tamper) Switch
- 2.4 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION
- 2.5 SPRINKLERS
  - 2.5.1 Upright Sprinkler
  - 2.5.2 Pendent Sprinkler
  - 2.5.3 Sidewall Sprinkler
- 2.6 DISINFECTING MATERIALS
  - 2.6.1 Liquid Chlorine
  - 2.6.2 Hypochlorites

- 2.7 ACCESSORIES
  - 2.7.1 Sprinkler Cabinet
  - 2.7.2 Pendent Sprinkler Escutcheon
  - 2.7.3 Pipe Escutcheon
  - 2.7.4 Identification Sign
- 2.8 DOUBLE-CHECK VALVE BACKFLOW PREVENTION ASSEMBLY

## PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS
- 3.2 ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSTALLATION
  - 3.2.1 Protection of Piping Against Earthquake Damage
  - 3.2.2 Piping in Exposed Areas
  - 3.2.3 Piping in Finished Areas
  - 3.2.4 Pendent Sprinklers
    - 3.2.4.1 Pendent Sprinkler Locations
  - 3.2.5 Upright Sprinklers
  - 3.2.6 Pipe Joints
  - 3.2.7 Reducers
  - 3.2.8 Pipe Penetrations
  - 3.2.9 Escutcheons
  - 3.2.10 Inspector's Test Connection
  - 3.2.11 Drains
  - 3.2.12 Installation of Fire Department Connection
  - 3.2.13 Identification Signs
- 3.3 ELECTRICAL WORK
- 3.4 STERILIZATION
- 3.5 FIELD PAINTING AND FINISHING
- 3.6 PRELIMINARY TESTS
  - 3.6.1 Underground Piping
    - 3.6.1.1 Flushing
    - 3.6.1.2 Hydrostatic Testing
  - 3.6.2 Aboveground Piping
    - 3.6.2.1 Hydrostatic Testing
  - 3.6.3 Testing of Alarm Devices
  - 3.6.4 Main Drain Flow Test
- 3.7 FINAL ACCEPTANCE TEST

-- End of Section Table of Contents --



## SECTION 15330

WET PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEM, FIRE PROTECTION  
**06/94**

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

ASTM A 47	(1990) Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A 53	(1995a) Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless
ASTM A 135	(1993) Electric-Resistance-Welded Steel Pipe
ASTM A 183	(1983; R 1990) Carbon Steel Tract Bolts and Nuts
ASTM A 536	(1984; R 1993) Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM A 795	(1995) Black and Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe for Fire Protection Use

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B16.1	(1989) Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
ASME B16.3	(1992) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings
ASME B16.4	(1992) Cast Iron Threaded Fittings
ASME B16.9	(1993) Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
ASME B16.11	(1991) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.21	(1992) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges
ASME B18.2.1	(1981; Supple 1991; R 1992) Square and Hex Bolts and Screws (Inch Series)
ASME B18.2.2	(1987; R 1993) Square and Hex Nuts (Inch Series)

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SANITARY ENGINEERING (ASSE)

ASSE 1015 (1993) Double Check Backflow Prevention Assembly

## AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA-10062JU (1992) Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater

AWWA B300 (1992) Hypochlorites

AWWA B301 (1992) Liquid Chlorine

AWWA M20 (1973) Manual: Water Chlorination Principles and Practices

## FACTORY MUTUAL ENGINEERING AND RESEARCH (FM)

FM P7825 (1995; Supple I; Supple II; Supple III) Approval Guide

## MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-71 (1990) Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanges and Threaded Ends

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 13 (1994) Installation of Sprinkler Systems

NFPA 24 (1995) Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances

NFPA 231C (1995) Rack Storage of Materials

NFPA 1963 (1993) Fire Hose Connections

## NATIONAL INSTITUTE FOR CERTIFICATION IN ENGINEERING TECHNOLOGIES (NICET)

NICET 1014 (1995) Program Detail Manual for Certification in the Field of Fire Protection Engineering Technology (Field Code 003) Automatic Sprinkler System Layout

## UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL-01 (1996) Building Materials Directory

UL-04 (1996; Supple) Fire Protection Equipment Directory

## 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Wet pipe sprinkler system shall be provided in all areas of the building. The sprinkler system shall provide fire sprinkler protection for the entire area. Except as modified herein, the system shall be designed and

installed in accordance with NFPA 13. Pipe sizes which are not indicated on drawings shall be determined by hydraulic calculation.

#### 1.2.1 Hydraulic Design

The system shall be hydraulically designed to discharge a minimum density of .1 gpm per square foot over the hydraulically most demanding 3,000 square feet of floor area. The minimum pipe size for branch lines in gridded systems shall be 1-1/4 inch. Hydraulic calculations shall be in accordance with the Area/Density Method of NFPA 13.

##### 1.2.1.1 Hose Demand

An allowance for exterior hose streams of 250 gpm shall be added to the sprinkler system demand at the base of the riser.

##### 1.2.1.2 Basis for Calculations

The design of the system shall be based upon a water supply with a static pressure of 96 psi, and a flow of 1241 gpm at a residual pressure of 68 psi. Water supply shall be presumed available at the base of the riser. Hydraulic calculations shall be based upon the Hazen-Williams formula with a "C" value of 120 for steel piping, 150 for copper tubing, 140 for new cement-lined ductile-iron piping, and 100 for existing underground piping.

#### 1.2.2 Sprinkler Spacing

Sprinklers shall be uniformly spaced on branch lines. Maximum spacing per sprinkler shall not exceed limits specified in NFPA 13 for light and ordinary hazard occupancy.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Submit six sets of all submittals required herein to the Contracting Officer representative. Submit an additional two copies of all submittals to Technical Services 14 days prior to final test.

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. Submittals related to system configuration, hydraulic calculations, and equipment selection, including manufacturer's catalog data, working drawings, connection drawings, control diagrams and certificates shall be submitted concurrently as a complete package. The package will be reviewed by the U.S. Army Engineer District Fire Protection Engineer. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Data

Load Calculations for Sizing Sway Bracing

For systems that are required to be protected against damage from earthquakes, load calculations shall be provided for sizing of sway bracing.

Sprinkler System Equipment; GA.

Manufacturer's Catalog Data for each separate piece of equipment proposed for use in the system. Data shall indicate the name of the manufacturer of each item of equipment, with data highlighted to indicate model, size, options, etc. proposed for installation. In addition, a complete equipment

list which includes equipment description, model number and quantity shall be provided.

Hydraulic Calculations; GA.

Hydraulic calculations, including a drawing showing hydraulic reference points and pipe segments.

Spare Parts; FIO.

Spare parts data shall be included for each different item of material and equipment specified. The data shall include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, and a list of parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced after 1 year and 3 years of service. A list of special tools and test equipment required for maintenance and testing of the products supplied by the Contractor shall be included.

#### SD-04 Drawings

Sprinkler System Shop Drawings; GA.

Detail drawings conforming to the requirements established for working plans as prescribed in NFPA 13. Drawings shall include plan and elevation views which establish that the equipment will fit the allotted spaces with clearance for installation and maintenance. Each set of drawings shall include the following:

- a. Descriptive index of drawings in the submittal with drawings listed in sequence by drawing number. A legend identifying device symbols, nomenclature, and conventions used.
- b. Floor plans drawn to a scale not less than  $1/8" = 1'-0"$  which clearly show locations of sprinklers, risers, pipe hangers, seismic separation assemblies, sway bracing, inspector's test connections, drains, and other applicable details necessary to clearly describe the proposed arrangement. Each type of fitting used and the locations of bushings, reducing couplings, and welded joints shall be indicated.
- c. Actual center-to-center dimensions between sprinklers on branch lines and between branch lines; from end sprinklers to adjacent walls; from walls to branch lines; from sprinkler feed mains, cross-mains and branch lines to finished floor and roof or ceiling. A detail shall show the dimension from the sprinkler and sprinkler deflector to the ceiling in finished areas.
- d. Longitudinal and transverse building sections showing typical branch line and cross-main pipe routing as well as elevation of each typical sprinkler above finished floor.
- e. Details of each type of riser assembly; pipe hanger; sway bracing for earthquake protection, and restraint of underground water main at point-of-entry into the building, and electrical devices and interconnecting wiring.

As-Built Drawings; FIO.

As-built drawings, no later than 14 working days after completion of the

Final Tests. The sprinkler system shop drawings shall be updated to reflect as-built conditions after work is completed and shall be on reproducible full-size mylar film. Submit TWO additional copy of As-Built drawings to Technical Services.

#### SD-06 Instructions

Test Procedures; GA.

Proposed test procedures for piping hydrostatic test, testing of alarms, at least 14 days prior to the start of related testing.

#### SD-07 Schedules

Preliminary Tests; GA.

A schedule of preliminary tests, at least 14 days prior to the proposed start of the tests.

Final Test; GA.

Upon successful completion of tests specified under PRELIMINARY TESTS, written notification shall be given to the Contracting Officer of the date for the final acceptance test. Notification shall be provided at least 14 days prior to the proposed start of the test. Notification shall include a copy of the Contractor's Material & Test Certificates.

#### SD-08 Statements

Installer Qualifications; GA.

Qualifications of the sprinkler installer.

Submittal Preparer's Qualifications; GA.

The name and documentation of certification of the individual who will prepare the submittals, prior to the submittal of the drawings and hydraulic calculations.

#### SD-13 Certificates

Contractor's Material & Test Certificates; FIO.

Certificates, as specified in NFPA 13, shall be completed and signed by the Contractor's Representative performing required tests for both underground and aboveground piping.

#### SD-19 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Sprinkler System; FIO.

Manuals shall be in loose-leaf binder format and grouped by technical sections consisting of manufacturer's standard brochures, schematics, printed instructions, general operating procedures, and safety precautions. The manuals shall list routine maintenance procedures possible breakdowns, and repairs, and troubleshooting guide. This shall include procedures and instructions pertaining to frequency of preventive maintenance, inspection, adjustment, lubrication and cleaning necessary to minimize corrective maintenance and repair.

#### 1.4 HYDRAULIC CALCULATIONS

Hydraulic calculations shall be as outlined in NFPA 13 except that calculations shall be performed by computer using software specifically designed for fire protection system design. Software which uses k-factors for typical branch lines is not acceptable. Calculations shall be taken back to the water supply source unless water supply data is otherwise indicated. Calculations shall substantiate that the design area indicated is the hydraulically most demanding. Water supply curves and system requirements shall be plotted on semi-logarithmic graph paper so as to present a summary of the complete hydraulic calculation. A summary sheet listing sprinklers in the design area and their respective hydraulic reference points, elevations, actual discharge pressures and actual flows shall be provided. Elevations of hydraulic reference points (nodes) shall be indicated. Documentation shall identify each pipe individually and the nodes connected thereto. The diameter, length, flow, velocity, friction loss, number and type fittings, total friction loss in the pipe, equivalent pipe length and Hazen-Williams coefficient shall be indicated for each pipe. For gridded systems, calculations shall show peaking of demand area friction loss to verify that the hydraulically most demanding area is being used. Also for gridded systems, a flow diagram indicating the quantity and direction of flows shall be included. A drawing showing hydraulic reference points (nodes) and pipe designations used in the calculations shall be included and shall be independent of shop drawings.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL PREPARER'S QUALIFICATIONS

The sprinkler system submittals, including as-built drawings, shall be prepared by an individual who is either a registered professional engineer or who is certified as a Level III Technician by National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) in the Automatic Sprinkler System Layout subfield of Fire Protection Engineering Technology in accordance with NICET 1014.

#### 1.6 INSTALLER QUALIFICATIONS

The installer shall be experienced and regularly engaged in the installation of the type and complexity of system included in this project. A statement prior to submittal of any other data or drawings, that the proposed sprinkler system installer is regularly engaged in the installation of the type and complexity of system included in this project shall be provided. In addition, data identifying the location of at least three systems recently installed by the proposed installer which are comparable to the system specified shall be submitted. Contractor shall certify that each system has performed satisfactorily, in the manner intended, for a period of not less than 6 months.

#### 1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

Compliance with referenced NFPA standards is mandatory. This includes advisory provisions listed in the appendices of such standards, as though the word "shall" had been substituted for the word "should" wherever it appears. Applicable material and installation standards referenced in Appendix A of NFPA 13 and NFPA 24 shall be considered mandatory the same as if such referenced standards were specifically listed in this specification. In the event of a conflict between specific provisions of this specification and applicable NFPA standards, this specification shall govern. All requirements that exceed the minimum requirements of NFPA 13

shall be incorporated into the design. Reference to "authority having jurisdiction" shall be interpreted to mean the Contracting Officer.

## 1.8 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Equipment placed in storage shall be stored with protection from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust or other contaminants.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

#### 2.1.1 Standard Products

Materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products and shall essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening.

#### 2.1.2 Requirements for Fire Protection Service

Equipment and materials shall have been tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. and listed in UL-04 or approved by Factory Mutual and listed in FM P7825. Where the terms "listed" or "approved" appear in this specification, such shall mean listed in UL-04 or FM P7825.

#### 2.1.3 Nameplates

Major components of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number on a plate permanently affixed to the item of equipment.

### 2.2 ABOVEGROUND PIPING SYSTEMS

Aboveground piping shall be steel.

#### 2.2.1 Steel Piping System

##### 2.2.1.1 Steel Pipe

Except as modified herein, steel pipe shall be black or galvanized as permitted by NFPA 13 and shall conform to applicable provisions of ASTM A 795, ASTM A 53, or ASTM A 135. Pipe in which threads or grooves are cut shall be Schedule 40 or shall be listed by Underwriters' Laboratories to have a corrosion resistance ratio (CRR) of 1.0 or greater after threads or grooves are cut. Pipe shall be marked with the name of the manufacturer, kind of pipe, and ASTM designation. ALL SPRINKLER PIPING SHALL BE PAINTED RED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION 09900 "PAINTING, GENERAL".

##### 2.2.1.2 Fittings for Non-Grooved Steel Pipe

Fittings shall be cast iron conforming to ASME B16.4, steel conforming to ASME B16.9 or ASME B16.11, or malleable iron conforming to ASME B16.3. Steel press fittings shall be approved for fire protection systems. Galvanized fittings shall be used for piping systems or portions of piping systems utilizing galvanized piping. Fittings into which sprinklers, drop nipples or riser nipples (sprigs) are screwed shall be threaded type. Plain-end fittings with mechanical couplings, fittings which use steel

gripping devices to bite into the pipe and segmented welded fittings shall not be used.

#### 2.2.1.3 Grooved Mechanical Joints and Fittings

Joints and fittings shall be designed for not less than 175 psi service and shall be the product of the same manufacturer. Fitting and coupling houses shall be malleable iron conforming to ASTM A 47, Grade 32510; ductile iron conforming to ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12. Gasket shall be the flush type that fills the entire cavity between the fitting and the pipe. Nuts and bolts shall be heat-treated steel conforming to ASTM A 183 and shall be cadmium plated or zinc electroplated.

#### 2.2.1.4 Flanges

Flanges shall conform to NFPA 13 and ASME B16.1. Gaskets shall be non-asbestos compressed material in accordance with ASME B16.21, 1/16 inch thick, and full face or self-centering flat ring type. Bolts shall be squarehead conforming to ASME B18.2.1 and nuts shall be hexagon type conforming to ASME B18.2.2.

#### 2.2.2 Pipe Hangers

Hangers shall be listed in UL-04 or FM P7825 and of the type suitable for the application, construction, and pipe type and sized involved.

#### 2.2.3 Valves

##### 2.2.3.1 Control Valve and Gate Valve

Manually operated sprinkler control valve and gate valve shall be outside stem and yoke (OS&Y) type and shall be listed in UL-01 or FM P7825.

##### 2.2.3.2 Check Valve

Check valve 2 inches and larger shall be listed in UL-01 or FM P7825. Check valves 4 inches and larger shall be of the swing type with flanged cast iron body and flanged inspection plates, shall have a clear waterway and shall meet the requirements of MSS SP-71, for Type 3 or 4.

#### 2.3 ALARM INITIATING AND SUPERVISORY DEVICES

##### 2.3.1 Sprinkler Waterflow Indicator Switch, Vane Type

Switch shall be vane type with a pipe saddle and cast aluminum housing. The electro-mechanical device shall include a flexible, low-density polyethylene paddle conforming to the inside diameter of the fire protection pipe. The device shall sense water movements and be capable of detecting a sustained flow of 10 gpm or greater. The device shall contain a retard device adjustable from 0 to 90 seconds to reduce the possibility of false alarms caused by transient flow surges. The switch shall include two SPDT (Form C) contacts, and shall be equipped with a silicone rubber gasket to assure positive water seal and a dustproof cover and gasket to seal the mechanism from dirt and moisture.

##### 2.3.2 Sprinkler Pressure (Waterflow) Alarm Switch

Pressure switch shall include a metal housing with a neoprene diaphragm, SPDT snap action switches and a 1/2 inch NPT male pipe thread. The switch



shall have a maximum service pressure rating of 175 psi. There shall be two SPDT (Form C) contacts factory adjusted to operate at 4 to 8 psi. The switch shall be capable of being mounted in any position in the alarm line trim piping of the alarm check valve. THE FLOW SWITCH SHALL BE WIRED SO THAT THE ELECTRIC GONG IS ALARMED AND THE FIRE DEPARTMENT IS NOTIFIED WHEN WATER FLOW OCCURS.

### 2.3.3 Valve Supervisory (Tamper) Switch

Switch shall be suitable for mounting to the type of control valve to be supervised open. The switch shall be tamper resistant and contain one set of SPDT (Form C) contacts arranged to transfer upon removal of the housing cover or closure of the valve of more than two rotations of the valve stem.

## 2.4 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

Fire department connection shall be flush type with cast brass body, matching wall escutcheon lettered "Auto Spkr" with a polished brass finish. The connection shall have two inlets with individual self-closing clappers, caps with drip drains and chains. Female inlets shall have 2-1/2 inch diameter American National Fire Hose Connection Screw Threads (NH) per NFPA 1963.

## 2.5 SPRINKLERS

Sprinklers shall be used in accordance with their listed spacing limitations. Temperature classification shall be ordinary. Sprinklers in high heat areas including attic spaces or in close proximity to unit heaters shall have temperature classification in accordance with NFPA 13.

### 2.5.1 Upright Sprinkler

Upright sprinkler shall be brass and shall have a nominal 1/2 inch or 17/32 inch orifice.

### 2.5.2 Pendent Sprinkler

Pendent sprinkler shall be of the fusible strut or glass bulb type, with nominal 1/2 inch or 17/32 inch orifice. Pendent sprinklers shall have a white enamel finish.

### 2.5.3 Sidewall Sprinkler

Sidewall sprinkler shall have a nominal 1/2 inch orifice. Sidewall sprinkler shall have a polished chrome finish. Sidewall sprinkler shall be the quick-response type.

## 2.6 DISINFECTING MATERIALS

### 2.6.1 Liquid Chlorine

Liquid chlorine shall conform to AWWA B301.

### 2.6.2 Hypochlorites

Calcium hypochlorite and sodium hypochlorite shall conform to AWWA B300.

## 2.7 ACCESSORIES

### 2.7.1 Sprinkler Cabinet

Spare sprinklers shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 13 and shall be packed in a suitable metal or plastic cabinet. Spare sprinklers shall be representative of, and in proportion to, the number of each type and temperature rating of the sprinklers installed. At least one wrench of each type required shall be provided.

### 2.7.2 Pendent Sprinkler Escutcheon

Escutcheon shall be one-piece metallic type with a depth of less than 3/4 inch and suitable for installation on pendent sprinklers. The escutcheon shall have a factory finish that matches the pendent sprinkler heads.

### 2.7.3 Pipe Escutcheon

Escutcheon shall be polished chromium-plated zinc alloy, or polished chromium-plated copper alloy. Escutcheons shall be either one-piece or split-pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or set screw.

### 2.7.4 Identification Sign

Valve identification sign shall be minimum 6 inches wide x 2 inches high with enamel baked finish on minimum 18 gauge steel or 0.024 inch aluminum with red letters on a white background or white letters on red background. Wording of sign shall include, but not be limited to "main drain," "auxiliary drain," "inspector's test," "alarm test," "alarm line," and similar wording as required to identify operational components.

## 2.8 DOUBLE-CHECK VALVE BACKFLOW PREVENTION ASSEMBLY

Double-check backflow prevention assembly shall comply with ASSE 1015. The assembly shall have a bronze, cast-iron or stainless steel body with flanged ends. The assembly shall include OS&Y shutoff valves on the inlet and outlet, 2-positive-seating check valve for continuous pressure application, and four test cocks. Assemblies shall be rated for working pressure of 250 psi. The maximum pressure loss shall be 6 psi at a flow rate equal to the sprinkler water demand, at the location of the assembly. Backflow preventers shall be listed for fire protection use by underwriters laboratory or factory mutual.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

The installation shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 13, NFPA 24 and publications referenced therein. Installation of in-rack sprinklers shall comply with applicable provisions of NFPA 231C.

### 3.2 ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSTALLATION

Piping shall be run straight and bear evenly on hangers and supports.

#### 3.2.1 Protection of Piping Against Earthquake Damage

The system piping shall be protected against damage from earthquakes. Seismic protection of the piping system shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 13 and Appendix A, with the exception that the "Earthquake Zones" map of Appendix A shall not apply to this project. Seismic protection shall

include flexible couplings, sway bracing and other features as required by NFPA 13 for protection of piping against damage from earthquakes. Branch lines shall be equipped with sway braces at the end sprinkler head and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet.

### 3.2.2 Piping in Exposed Areas

Exposed piping shall be installed so as not to diminish exit access widths, corridors or equipment access. Exposed horizontal piping, including drain piping, shall be installed to provide maximum headroom.

### 3.2.3 Piping in Finished Areas

In areas with suspended or dropped ceilings and in areas with concealed spaces above the ceiling, piping shall be concealed above ceilings. Piping shall be inspected, tested and approved before being concealed. Risers and similar vertical runs of piping in finished areas shall be concealed.

### 3.2.4 Pendent Sprinklers

Drop nipples to pendent sprinklers shall consist of minimum 1 inch pipe with a reducing coupling into which the sprinkler shall be threaded. Hangers shall be provided on arm-overs to drop nipples supplying pendent sprinklers when the arm-over exceeds 12 inches. Where sprinklers are installed below suspended or dropped ceilings, drop nipples shall be cut such that sprinkler ceiling plates or escutcheons are of a uniform depth throughout the finished space. The outlet of the reducing coupling shall not extend more than 1 inch below the underside of the ceiling. On pendent sprinklers installed below suspended or dropped ceilings, the distance from the sprinkler deflector to the underside of the ceiling shall not exceed 4 inches. Recessed pendent sprinklers shall be installed such that the distance from the sprinkler deflector to the underside of the ceiling shall not exceed the manufacturer's listed range and shall be of uniform depth throughout the finished area.

#### 3.2.4.1 Pendent Sprinkler Locations

Pendent sprinklers in suspended ceilings shall be a minimum of 6 inches from ceiling grid.

### 3.2.5 Upright Sprinklers

Riser nipples or "sprigs" to upright sprinklers shall contain no fittings between the branch line tee and the reducing coupling at the sprinkler. Riser nipples exceeding 30 inches in length shall be individually supported.

### 3.2.6 Pipe Joints

Pipe joints shall conform to NFPA 13, except as modified herein. Not more than four threads shall show after joint is made up. Welded joints will be permitted, only if welding operations are performed as required by NFPA 13 at the Contractor's fabrication shop, not at the project construction site.

Flanged joints shall be provided where indicated or required by NFPA 13. Grooved pipe and fittings shall be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published specification according to pipe material, wall thickness and size. Grooved couplings and fittings shall be from the same manufacturer.

### 3.2.7 Reducers

Reductions in pipe sizes shall be made with one-piece tapered reducing fittings. The use of grooved-end or rubber-gasketed reducing couplings will not be permitted. When standard fittings of the required size are not manufactured, single bushings of the face type will be permitted. Where used, face bushings shall be installed with the outer face flush with the face of the fitting opening being reduced. Bushings shall not be used in elbow fittings, in more than one outlet of a tee, in more than two outlets of a cross, or where the reduction in size is less than 1/2 inch.

### 3.2.8 Pipe Penetrations

Cutting structural members for passage of pipes or for pipe-hanger fastenings will not be permitted. Pipes that must penetrate concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors shall be core-drilled and provided with pipe sleeves. Each sleeve shall be Schedule 40 galvanized steel, ductile iron or cast iron pipe and shall extend through its respective wall or floor and be cut flush with each wall surface. Sleeves shall provide required clearance between the pipe and the sleeve per NFPA 13. The space between the sleeve and the pipe shall be firmly packed with mineral wool insulation. Where pipes pass through fire walls, fire partitions, or floors, a fire seal shall be placed between the pipe and sleeve in accordance with Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING. In penetrations which are not fire-rated or not a floor penetration, the space between the sleeve and the pipe shall be sealed at both ends with plastic waterproof cement which will dry to a firm but pliable mass or with a mechanically adjustable segmented elastomer seal.

### 3.2.9 Escutcheons

Escutcheons shall be provided for pipe penetration of ceilings and walls. Escutcheons shall be securely fastened to the pipe at surfaces through which piping passes.

### 3.2.10 Inspector's Test Connection

Unless otherwise indicated, test connection shall consist of 1 inch pipe connected to the remote branch line; a test valve located approximately 7 feet above the floor; a smooth bore brass outlet equivalent to the smallest orifice sprinkler used in the system; and a painted metal identification sign affixed to the valve with the words "Inspector's Test." The discharge orifice shall be located outside the building wall directed so as not to cause damage to adjacent construction or landscaping during full flow discharge.

### 3.2.11 Drains

Main drain piping shall be provided to discharge at a safe point outside the building at the location indicated. Auxiliary drains shall be provided as required by NFPA 13 except that drain valves shall be used where drain plugs are otherwise permitted. Where branch lines terminate at low points and form trapped sections, such branch lines shall be manifolded to a common drain line.

### 3.2.12 Installation of Fire Department Connection

Connection shall be mounted as shown. The piping between the connection and the check valve shall be provided with an automatic drip in accordance

with NFPA 13 and arranged to drain to the outside.

### 3.2.13 Identification Signs

Signs shall be affixed to each control valve, inspector test valve, main drain, auxiliary drain, test valve, and similar valves as appropriate or as required by NFPA 13. Hydraulic design data nameplates shall be permanently affixed to each sprinkler riser as specified in NFPA 13.

### 3.3 ELECTRICAL WORK

Alarm signal wiring connected to the building fire alarm control system shall be in accordance with Section 16721 FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM.

### 3.4 STERILIZATION

After system components have been installed and pressure tested, each portion of the completed system shall be sterilized. After pressure tests have been made, the portion to be sterilized shall be thoroughly flushed with water until all entrained dirt and other foreign materials have been removed before introducing chlorinating material. The chlorinating material shall be hypochlorites or liquid chlorine. Water chlorination procedure shall be in accordance with AWWA M20. The chlorinating material shall be fed into the sprinkler piping at a constant rate of 50 parts per million (ppm). A properly adjusted hypochlorite solution injected into the system with a hypochlorinator, or liquid chlorine injected into the system through a solution-fed chlorinator and booster pump, shall be used. Chlorination application shall continue until the entire system is filled. The water shall remain in the system for a minimum of 24 hours. Each valve in the system shall be opened and closed several times to ensure its proper disinfection. Following the 24-hour period, no less than 25 ppm chlorine residual shall remain in the system. The system shall be then flushed with clean water until the residual chlorine is reduced to less than one part per million. Samples of water in properly sterilized containers for bacterial examination will be taken from several system locations which are approved by the Contracting Officer. Samples shall be tested for total coliform organisms (coliform bacteria, fecal coliform, streptococcal, and other bacteria) in accordance with AWWA-10062JU. The testing method shall be either the multiple-tube fermentation technique or the membrane-filter technique. The sterilization shall be repeated until tests indicate the absence of coliform organisms (zero mean coliform density per 100 milliliters) in the samples for at least 2 full days. The system will not be accepted until satisfactory bacteriological results have been obtained.

### 3.5 FIELD PAINTING AND FINISHING

Field painting and finishing are specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL.

### 3.6 PRELIMINARY TESTS

The system, including the underground water mains, and the aboveground piping and system components, shall be tested to assure that equipment and components function as intended. The underground and aboveground interior piping systems and attached appurtenances subjected to system working pressure shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 13 and NFPA 24. Upon completion of specified tests, the Contractor shall complete certificates as specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS.

### 3.6.1 Underground Piping

#### 3.6.1.1 Flushing

Underground piping shall be flushed in accordance with NFPA 24. This includes the requirement to flush the lead-in connection to the fire protection system at a flow rate not less than the calculated maximum water demand rate of the system.

#### 3.6.1.2 Hydrostatic Testing

New underground piping shall be hydrostatically tested in accordance with NFPA 24. The allowable leakage shall be measured at the specified test pressure by pumping from a calibrated container. The amount of leakage at the joints shall not exceed 2 quarts per hour per 100 gaskets or joints, regardless of pipe diameter.

### 3.6.2 Aboveground Piping

#### 3.6.2.1 Hydrostatic Testing

Aboveground piping shall be hydrostatically tested in accordance with NFPA 13 at not less than 200 psi or 50 psi in excess of maximum system operating pressure and shall maintain that pressure without loss for 2 hours. There shall be no drop in gauge pressure or visible leakage when the system is subjected to the hydrostatic test. The test pressure shall be read from a gauge located at the low elevation point of the system or portion being tested. Testing shall be supervised by Technical Services.

### 3.6.3 Testing of Alarm Devices

Each alarm switch shall be tested by flowing water through the inspector's test connection. Each water-operated alarm device shall be tested to verify proper operation.

### 3.6.4 Main Drain Flow Test

Following flushing of the underground piping, a main drain test shall be made to verify the adequacy of the water supply. Static and residual pressures shall be recorded on the certificate specified in paragraph SUBMITTALS. In addition, a main drain test shall be conducted each time after a main control valve is shut and opened.

## 3.7 FINAL ACCEPTANCE TEST

A technician employed by the installing Contractor shall be present for the final tests and shall provide a complete demonstration of the operation of the system. This shall include operation of control valves and flowing of inspector's test connections to verify operation of associated waterflow alarm switches. After operation of control valves has been completed, the main drain test shall be repeated to assure that control valves are in the open position. In addition, the representative shall have available copies of as-built drawings and certificates of tests previously conducted. The installation shall not be considered accepted until identified discrepancies have been corrected and test documentation is properly completed and received. A Technical Services representative from the fire department shall be present for the final test and shall be notified 14 days in advance of the final test. The fire department shall be notified of all testing of the system to ensure no false alarms are received. Final

report shall be completed and given to Technical Services at final testing.  
Submit completed Sprinkler System Acceptance Test Report to Technical  
Services at final testing..

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15400

## PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE

**08/94**

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 STANDARD PRODUCTS
- 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.3.2 Cathodic Protection and Pipe Joint Bonding
- 1.4 ELECTRICAL WORK
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
- 1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.6.1 Plumbing
- 1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
  - 2.1.1 Pipe Joint Materials
  - 2.1.2 Miscellaneous Materials
  - 2.1.3 Pipe Insulation Material
- 2.2 PIPE HANGERS, INSERTS, AND SUPPORTS
- 2.3 VALVES
  - 2.3.1 Backwater Valves
  - 2.3.2 Wall Faucets
  - 2.3.6 Relief Valves
- 2.4 FIXTURES
  - 2.4.1 Lavatories
  - 2.4.2 Automatic Flushing System
- 2.5 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS
- 2.6 DRAINS
  - 2.6.1 Floor Drains
    - 2.6.1.2 Drains and Backwater Valves
  - 2.6.6 Sight Drains
- 2.8 TRAPS
- 2.10 WATER HEATER
  - 2.10.1 Automatic Storage Type
  - 2.10.3 Gas-Fired Type
  - 2.10.7 Phenolic Resin Coatings
    - 2.10.7.1 Wash Primer
    - 2.10.7.2 Pigmented Base Coat
    - 2.10.7.3 Clear Top Coat
- 2.12 PUMPS
  - 2.12.2 Circulating Pumps

## PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS
  - 3.1.1 Water Pipe, Fittings, and Connections



- 3.1.1.1 Utilities
- 3.1.1.2 Cutting and Repairing
- 3.1.1.3 Protection of Fixtures, Materials, and Equipment
- 3.1.1.4 Mains, Branches, and Runouts
- 3.1.1.5 Pipe Drains
- 3.1.1.6 Expansion and Contraction of Piping
- 3.1.1.7 Commercial-Type Water Hammer Arresters
- 3.1.3 Joints
  - 3.1.3.1 Threaded
  - 3.1.3.2 Mechanical Couplings
  - 3.1.3.3 Union and Flanged
  - 3.1.3.4 Cast Iron Soil, Waste and Vent Pipe
  - 3.1.3.5 Copper Tube and Pipe
  - 3.1.3.9 Other Joint Methods
- 3.1.4 Dissimilar Pipe Materials
- 3.1.5 Corrosion Protection for Buried Pipe and Fittings
  - 3.1.5.1 Cast Iron and Ductile Iron
  - 3.1.5.2 Steel
- 3.1.6 Pipe Sleeves and Flashing
  - 3.1.6.1 Sleeve Requirements
  - 3.1.6.2 Flashing Requirements
  - 3.1.6.3 Waterproofing
  - 3.1.6.4 Optional Counterflashing
  - 3.1.6.5 Pipe Penetrations of Slab on Grade Floors
- 3.1.7 Fire Seal
- 3.1.8 Supports
  - 3.1.8.1 General
  - 3.1.8.3 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports
- 3.1.10 Pipe Cleanouts
- 3.2 WATER HEATERS AND HOT WATER STORAGE TANKS
  - 3.2.1 Relief Valves
  - 3.2.2 Installation of Gas-Fired Water Heater
  - 3.2.3 Phenolic Resin Application Process
    - 3.2.3.1 Surface Preparation
  - 3.2.5 Connections to Water Heaters
- 3.3 FIXTURES AND FIXTURE TRIMMINGS
  - 3.3.1 Fixture Connections
  - 3.3.2 Flushometer Valves
  - 3.3.3 Height of Fixture Rims Above Floor
  - 3.3.5 Fixture Supports
    - 3.3.5.1 Support for Solid Masonry Construction
    - 3.3.5.2 Support for Cellular-Masonry Wall Construction
    - 3.3.5.3 Support for Steel Stud Frame Partitions
    - 3.3.5.4 Support for Wood Stud Construction
  - 3.3.6 Backflow Prevention Devices
  - 3.3.7 Access Panels
  - 3.3.8 Sight Drains
  - 3.3.9 Traps
- 3.6 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS
  - 3.6.1 Identification Tags
  - 3.6.2 Color Coding
  - 3.6.3 Color Coding Scheme for Locating Hidden Utility Components
- 3.7 ESCUTCHEONS
- 3.8 PAINTING
- 3.9 TESTS FLUSHING AND STERILIZATION
  - 3.9.1 Plumbing System
    - 3.9.1.1 Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies
  - 3.9.2 Phenolic Resin Coatings
    - 3.9.2.1 Test Panels

- 3.9.3 Defective Work
- 3.9.4 System Flushing
- 3.9.5 Operational Test
- 3.9.6 Disinfection
- 3.10 PLUMBING FIXTURE SCHEDULE
- 3.11 POSTED INSTRUCTIONS
- 3.12 PERFORMANCE OF WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT
  - 3.12.1 Storage Water Heaters
    - 3.12.1.2 Gas

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 15400

PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE  
08/94

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (ARI)

- ARI 700 (1995) Specifications for Fluorocarbon and Other Refrigerants
- ARI 1010 (1994) Self-Contained, Mechanically-Refrigerated Drinking-Water Coolers

## AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

- ANSI Z21.10.1 (1993; Z21.10.1a; Z21.10.1b; Z21.10.1c) Gas Water Heaters Vol. I Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu Per Hour or Less
- ANSI Z21.10.3 (1993; Z21.10.3a; Z21.10.3b) Gas Water Heaters Vol. III Storage, With Input Ratings Above 75,000 Btu Per Hour, Circulating and Instantaneous Water Heaters
- ANSI Z21.22 (1986; Z21.22a) Relief Valves and Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices for Hot Water Supply Systems

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

- ASTM A 47 (1990) Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
- ASTM A 74 (1996) Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
- ASTM A 105 (1996) Forgings, Carbon Steel, for Piping Components
- ASTM A 183 (1983; R 1990) Carbon Steel Track Bolts and Nuts
- ASTM A 193 (1996) Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel Bolting Materials for High-Temperature Service
- ASTM A 515 (1992) Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Intermediate- and

## Higher-Temperature Service

ASTM A 516	(1990) Pressure Vessel Plates, Carbon Steel, for Moderate- and Lower-Temperature Service
ASTM A 536	(1984; R 1993) Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM B 32	(1995b) Solder Metal
ASTM B 117	(1994) Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Testing Apparatus
ASTM B 370	(1992) Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction
ASTM B 813	(1993) Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM C 564	(1995) Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
ASTM C 920	(1994) Elastomeric Joint Sealants
ASTM D 2000	(1996) Rubber Products in Automotive Applications
ASTM D 2485	(1991; R 1996) Evaluating Coatings for High Temperature Service
ASTM D 2822	(1991) Asphalt Roof Cement
ASTM D 3138	(1993) Solvent Cements for Transition Joints Between Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS) and Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Non-Pressure Piping Components
ASTM D 3139	(1989; R 1995) Joints for Plastic Pressure Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D 3212	(1992) Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals
ASTM D 3308	(1991a) PTFE Resin Skived Tape
ASTM D 4060	(1995) Abrasion Resistance of Organic Coatings by the Taber Abraser
ASTM E 1	(1995) ASTM Thermometers
ASTM F 409	(1995) Thermoplastic Accessible and Replaceable Plastic Tube and Tubular Fittings
ASTM F 477	(1995) Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 34 (1992; Addenda a-j) Number Designation and  
Safety Classification of Refrigerants

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME A112.1.2 (1991) Air Gaps in Plumbing Systems

ASME A112.6.1M (1988) Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing  
Fixtures for Public Use

ASME A112.14.1 (1975; R 1990) Backwater Valves

ASME A112.19.2M (1995; Errata) Vitreous China Plumbing  
Fixtures

ASME A112.19.3M (1987; R 1996) Stainless Steel Plumbing  
fixtures (Designed for Residential Use)

ASME A112.21.1M (1991) Floor Drains

ASME A112.36.2M (1991) Cleanouts

ASME B1.20.1 (1983; R 1992) Pipe Threads, General  
Purpose (Inch)

ASME B16.5 (1988; Errata Oct 88; B16.5a) Pipe Flanges  
and Flanged Fittings

ASME B16.21 (1992) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe  
Flanges

ASME B16.34 (1988) Valves - Flanged, Threaded, and  
Welding End

ASME B31.5 (1992; B31.5a) Refrigeration Piping

ASME B40.1 (1991) Gauges - Pressure Indicating Dial  
Type - Elastic Element

ASME CSD-1 (1995) Controls and Safety Devices for  
Automatically Fired Boilers

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF SANITARY ENGINEERING (ASSE)

ASSE 1001 (1990) Pipe Applied Atmospheric Type  
Vacuum Breakers

ASSE 1003 (1964; Rev thru Oct 1993; Errata Dec 1993)  
Water Pressure Reducing Valves for  
Domestic Water Supply Systems

ASSE 1005 (1993) Water Heater Drain Valves -  
3/4-Inch Iron Pipe Size

ASSE 1011 (1995) Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers

ASSE 1012	(1995) Backflow Preventers with Intermediate Atmospheric Vent
ASSE 1013	(1971; Rev thru Oct 1993) Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Preventers
ASSE 1018	(1977; Rev Jan 1986) Trap Seal Primer Valves Water Supply Fed
ASSE 1037	(1986; Rev thru Mar 1990) Pressurized Flushing Devices (Flushometers) for Plumbing Fixtures/F

## AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)

AWWA-01	(1995) Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater
AWWA B300	(1992) Hypochlorites
AWWA B301	(1992) Liquid Chlorine
AWWA C105	(1993) Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems
AWWA C203	(1991) Coal-Tar Protective Coatings and Linings for Steel Water Pipelines - Enamel and Tape - Hot-Applied
AWWA C606	(1987) Grooved and Shouldered Joints
AWWA M20	(1973) Manual: Water Chlorination Principles and Practices

## AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8	(1992) Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding
AWS B2.2	(1991) Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification

## CAST IRON SOIL PIPE INSTITUTE (CISPI)

CISPI HSN-85	(1985) Neoprene Rubber Gaskets for Hub and Spigot Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
--------------	--

## CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS (CFR)

10 CFR 430	Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products
21 CFR 175	Indirect Food Additives: Adhesives and Components of Coatings

## COMMERCIAL ITEM DESCRIPTIONS (CID)

CID A-A-238	(Rev B) Seat, Water Closet
-------------	----------------------------

## COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA-02 (1995) Copper Tube Handbook

## COUNCIL OF AMERICAN BUILDING OFFICIALS (CABO)

CABO A117.1 (1992; Errata Jun 1993) Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities

## FOUNDATION FOR CROSS-CONNECTION CONTROL AND HYDRAULIC RESEARCH (FCCHR)

FCCCHR-01 (1993) Manual of Cross-Connection Control

## HYDRAULIC INSTITUTE (HI)

HI 1.1-1.5 (1994) Centrifugal Pumps

## MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25 (1993) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions

MSS SP-58 (1993) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture

MSS SP-67 (1995) Butterfly Valves

MSS SP-69 (1996) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application

MSS SP-70 (1990) Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-71 (1990) Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanges and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-72 (1992) Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-welding Ends for General Service

MSS SP-73 (1991) Brazing Joints for Copper and Copper Alloy Pressure Fittings

MSS SP-78 (1987; R 1992) Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-80 (1997) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves

MSS SP-85 (1994) Cast Iron Globe & Angle Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-110 (1996) Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends

## NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF PLUMBING-HEATING-COOLING CONTRACTORS

## (NAPHCC)

NAPHCC-01 (1996) National Standard Plumbing Code

## NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (1991) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment  
(1000 Volts Maximum)

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54 (1992) National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 90A (1993) Installation of Air Conditioning  
and Ventilating Systems

## PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS ASSOCIATION (PPFA)

PPFA-01 (1991) Plastic Pipe in Fire Resistive  
Construction

## PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE INSTITUTE (PDI)

PDI WH 201 (1992) Water Hammer Arresters

## SOCIETY OF AUTOMOTIVE ENGINEERS (SAE)

SAE J1508 (1993) Hose Clamps

## STEEL STRUCTURES PAINTING COUNCIL (SSPC)

SSPC SP 5 (1994) White Metal Blast Cleaning

## 1.2 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Specified materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of such products. Specified equipment shall essentially duplicate equipment that has performed satisfactorily at least two years prior to bid opening.

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

## 1.3.2 Cathodic Protection and Pipe Joint Bonding

Cathodic protection and pipe joint bonding systems shall be in accordance with Section 16640 CATHODIC PROTECTION SYSTEM (SACRIFICIAL ANODE).

## 1.4 ELECTRICAL WORK

Motors, motor controllers and motor efficiencies shall conform to the requirements of Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Electrical motor-driven equipment specified herein shall be provided complete with motors. Equipment shall be rated at 60 Hz, single phase, ac unless otherwise indicated. Where a motor controller is not provided in a motor-control center on the electrical drawings, a motor controller shall be as indicated. Motor controllers shall be provided complete with properly sized thermal-overload protection in each ungrounded conductor, auxiliary contact, and other equipment, at the specified capacity, and including an allowable service factor.



## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

### SD-04 Drawings

Plumbing System; FIO.

Detail drawings consisting of illustrations, schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information to illustrate the requirements and operations of each system. Detail drawings for the complete plumbing system including piping layouts and locations of connections; dimensions for roughing-in, foundation, and support points; schematic diagrams and wiring diagrams or connection and interconnection diagrams. Detail drawings shall indicate clearances required for maintenance and operation. Where piping and equipment are to be supported other than as indicated, details shall include loadings and proposed support methods. Mechanical drawing plans, elevations, views, and details, shall be drawn to scale.

Electrical Schematics; FIO.

Complete electrical schematic lineless or full line interconnection and connection diagram for each piece of mechanical equipment having more than one automatic or manual electrical control device.

### SD-06 Instructions

Plumbing System; FIO.

Diagrams, instructions, and other sheets proposed for posting. Manufacturer's recommendations for the installation of bell and spigot and hubless joints for cast iron soil pipe.

### SD-09 Reports

Tests, Flushing and Sterilization; FIO.

Test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to adjust each component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report shall indicate the final position of controls.

Backflow Prevention Assembly Tests; FIO.

Certification of proper operation shall be as accomplished in accordance with state regulations by an individual certified by the state to perform such tests. If no state requirement exists, the Contractor shall have the manufacturer's representative test the device, to ensure the unit is properly installed and performing as intended. The Contractor shall provide written documentation of the tests performed and signed by the individual performing the tests.

## SD-13 Certificates

Materials and Equipment; FIO.

Where materials or equipment are specified to comply with requirements of AGA, or ASME, proof of such compliance. The label or listing of the specified agency will be acceptable evidence. In lieu of the label or listing, a written certificate may be submitted from an approved, nationally recognized testing organization equipped to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and conform to the requirements and testing methods of the specified agency. Where equipment is specified to conform to requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, the design, fabrication, and installation shall conform to the code.

## SD-19 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Plumbing System; FIO.

Six 6 copies of the operation manual outlining the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation and shutdown. The manual shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Six 6 copies of the maintenance manual listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs. The manual shall include piping and equipment layout and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed.

## 1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

## 1.6.1 Plumbing

Plumbing work shall be in accordance with NAPHCC-01.

## 1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

The Contractor shall become familiar with details of the work, verify dimensions in the field, and advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

Materials for various services shall be in accordance with TABLES I and II.

Pipe schedules shall be selected based on service requirements. Pipe fittings shall be compatible with the applicable pipe materials. Pipe threads (except dry seal) shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Grooved pipe couplings and fittings shall be from the same manufacturer. Material or equipment containing lead shall not be used in any potable water system.

## 2.1.1 Pipe Joint Materials

Grooved pipe shall not be used under ground. Joints and gasket materials shall conform to the following:

- a. Coupling for Cast-Iron Pipe: ASTM A 74, AWWA C606.

- b. Coupling for Steel Pipe: AWWA C606.
- c. Couplings for Grooved Pipe: Ductile Iron ASTM A 536 (Grade 65-45-12) Malleable Iron ASTM A 47, Grade 32510. Copper ASTM A 536.
- d. Flange Gaskets: Gaskets shall be made of non-asbestos material in accordance with ASME B16.21. Gaskets shall be flat, 1/16 inch thick, and contain Aramid fibers bonded with Styrene Butadiene Rubber (SBR) or Nitro Butadiene Rubber (NBR). Gaskets shall be the full face or self centering flat ring type. Gaskets used for hydrocarbon service shall be bonded with NBR.
- e. Neoprene Gaskets for Hub and Cast-Iron Pipe and Fittings: CISPI HSN-85.
- f. Brazing Material: Brazing material shall conform to AWS A5.8, BCuP-5.
- g. Brazing Flux: Flux shall be in paste or liquid form appropriate for use with brazing material. Flux shall be as follows: lead-free; have a 100 percent flushable residue; contain slightly acidic reagents; contain potassium borides; and contain fluorides. Silver brazing materials shall be in accordance with AWS A5.8.
- h. Solder Material: Solder metal shall conform to ASTM B 32 95-5 tin-antimony.
- i. Solder Flux: Flux shall be liquid form, non-corrosive, and conform to ASTM B 813, Standard Test 1.
- j. PTFE Tape: PTFE Tape, for use with Threaded Metal or Plastic Pipe, ASTM D 3308.
- k. Rubber Gaskets for Cast-Iron Soil-Pipe and Fittings: ASTM C 564.
- l. Rubber Gaskets for Grooved Pipe: ASTM D 2000, maximum temperature 230 degrees F.
- m. Flexible Elastomeric Seals: ASTM D 3139, ASTM D 3212 or ASTM F 477.
- n. Bolts and Nuts for Grooved Pipe Couplings: Heat-treated carbon steel, ASTM A 183.
- o. Solvent Cement for Transition Joints between ABS and PVC Nonpressure Piping Components: ASTM D 3138.
- p. Flanged fittings including flanges, bolts, nuts, bolt patterns, etc. shall be in accordance with ASME B16.5 class 150 and shall have the manufacturer's trademark affixed in accordance with MSS SP-25. Flange material shall conform to ASTM A 105. Blind flange material shall conform to ASTM A 516 cold service and ASTM A 515 for hot service. Bolts shall be high strength or intermediate

strength with material conforming to ASTM A 193.

### 2.1.2 Miscellaneous Materials

Miscellaneous materials shall conform to the following:

- a. Water Hammer Arrestor: PDI WH 201.
- b. Copper, Sheet and Strip for Building Construction: ASTM B 370.
- c. Asphalt Roof Cement: ASTM D 2822.
- d. Hose Clamps: SAE J1508.
- e. Supports for Off-The-Floor Plumbing Fixtures: ASME A112.6.1M.
- f. Metallic Cleanouts: ASME A112.36.2M.
- g. Plumbing Fixture Setting Compound: A preformed flexible ring seal molded from hydrocarbon wax material. The seal material shall be nonvolatile nonasphaltic and contain germicide and provide watertight, gastight, odorproof and verminproof properties.

AWWA C203.

- h. Hypochlorites: AWWA B300.
- i. Liquid Chlorine: AWWA B301.
- j. Gauges - Pressure and Vacuum Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element: ASME B40.1.
- k. Thermometers: ASTM E 1.

### 2.1.3 Pipe Insulation Material

Insulation shall be as specified in Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

## 2.2 PIPE HANGERS, INSERTS, AND SUPPORTS

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69.

## 2.3 VALVES

Valves shall be provided on supplies to equipment and fixtures. Valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall be bronze with threaded bodies for pipe and solder-type connections for tubing. Valves 3 inches and larger shall have flanged iron bodies and bronze trim. Pressure ratings shall be based upon the application. Grooved end valves may be provided if the manufacturer certifies that the valves meet the performance requirements of applicable MSS standard. Valves shall conform to the following standards:

Description	Standard
-------------	----------

Butterfly Valves	MSS SP-67
Cast-Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-70
Cast-Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-71
Ball Valves with Flanged Butt-Welding Ends for General Service	MSS SP-72
Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends	MSS SP-110
Cast-Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-78
Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle, and Check Valves	MSS SP-80
Steel Valves, Socket Welding and Threaded Ends	ASME B16.34
Cast-Iron Globe and Angle Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends	MSS SP-85
Backwater Valves	ASME A112.14.1
Vacuum Relief Valves	ASSE 1001
Water Pressure Reducing Valves	ASSE 1003
Water Heater Drain Valves	ASSE 1005
Trap Seal Primer Valves	ASSE 1018
Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems	ANSI Z21.22
Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves for Automatically Fired Hot Water Boilers	ASME CSD-1 Safety Code No., Part CW, Article 5

### 2.3.1 Backwater Valves

Backwater valves shall be either separate from the floor drain or a combination floor drain, P-trap, and backwater valve, as shown. Valves shall have cast-iron bodies with cleanouts large enough to permit removal of interior parts. Valves shall be of the flap type, hinged or pivoted, with revolving disks. Hinge pivots, disks, and seats shall be nonferrous metal. Disks shall be slightly open in a no-flow no-backwater condition. Cleanouts shall extend to finished floor and be fitted with threaded countersunk plugs.

### 2.3.2 Wall Faucets

Wall faucets with vacuum-breaker backflow preventer shall be brass with 3/4 inch male inlet threads, hexagon shoulder, and 3/4 inch hose connection. Faucet handle shall be securely attached to stem.

### 2.3.6 Relief Valves

Water heaters and hot water storage tanks shall have a combination pressure and temperature (P&T) relief valve. The pressure relief element of a P&T relief valve shall have adequate capacity to prevent excessive pressure buildup in the system when the system is operating at the maximum rate of heat input. The temperature element of a P&T relief valve shall have a relieving capacity which is at least equal to the total input of the heaters when operating at their maximum capacity. Relief valves shall be rated according to ANSI Z21.22. Relief valves for systems where the maximum rate of heat input is less than 200,000 Btuh shall have 3/4 inch minimum inlets, and 3/4 inch outlets. The discharge pipe from the relief valve shall be the size of the valve outlet.

## 2.4 FIXTURES

Fixtures shall be water conservation type, in accordance with NAPHCC-01. Fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall be in accordance with CABO A117.1. Vitreous china, nonabsorbent, hard-burned, and vitrified throughout the body shall be provided. Porcelain enameled ware shall have specially selected, clear white, acid-resisting enamel coating evenly applied on surfaces. No fixture will be accepted that shows cracks, crazes, blisters, thin spots, or other flaws. Fixtures shall be equipped with appurtenances such as traps, faucets, stop valves, and drain fittings.

Each fixture and piece of equipment requiring connections to the drainage system, except grease interceptors, shall be equipped with a trap. Brass expansion or toggle bolts capped with acorn nuts shall be provided for supports, and polished chromium-plated pipe, valves, and fittings shall be provided where exposed to view. Fixtures with the supply discharge below the rim shall be equipped with backflow preventers. Internal parts of flush and/or flushometer valves, pop-up stoppers of lavatory waste drains may contain acetal resin, fluorocarbon, nylon, acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene (ABS) or other plastic material, if the material has provided satisfactory service under actual commercial or industrial operating conditions for not less than 2 years. Plastic in contact with hot water shall be suitable for 180 degrees F water temperature. Plumbing fixtures shall be as indicated in paragraph PLUMBING FIXTURE SCHEDULE.

### 2.4.1 Lavatories

Vitreous china lavatories shall be oval shaped, self rim type for counter mounting.

### 2.4.2 Automatic Flushing System

Flushing system shall consist of flush valve with piston valve operation, integral vacuum breaker and angle stop set. Flushing devices shall be provided as described in paragraph FIXTURES AND FIXTURE TRIMMINGS.

## 2.5 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

Backflow preventers shall be approved and listed by the Foundation For Cross-Connection Control & Hydraulic Research. Reduced pressure principle assemblies, double check valve assemblies, atmospheric (nonpressure) type vacuum breakers, and pressure type vacuum breakers shall be tested, approved, and listed in accordance with FCCCHR-01. Backflow preventers with intermediate atmospheric vent shall conform to ASSE 1012. Reduced

pressure principle backflow preventers shall conform to ASSE 1013. Hose connection vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1011. Pipe applied atmospheric type vacuum breakers shall conform to ASSE 1001. Air gaps in plumbing systems shall conform to ASME A112.1.2.

## 2.6 DRAINS

### 2.6.1 Floor Drains

Floor drains shall consist of a galvanized body, integral seepage pan, and adjustable perforated or slotted chromium-plated bronze, nickel-bronze, or nickel-brass strainer, consisting of grate and threaded collar. Floor drains shall be cast iron except where metallic waterproofing membrane is installed. Drains shall be of double drainage pattern for embedding in the floor construction. The strainer shall be adjustable to floor thickness. Drains shall be provided with threaded or caulked connection. In lieu of a caulked joint between the drain outlet and waste pipe, a neoprene rubber gasket conforming to ASTM C 564 may be installed, provided that the drain is specifically designed for the rubber gasket compression type joint. Floor drains shall conform to ASME A112.21.1M.

#### 2.6.1.2 Drains and Backwater Valves

Drains and backwater valves installed in connection with waterproofed floors or shower pans shall be equipped with bolted-type device to securely clamp flashing.

### 2.6.6 Sight Drains

Sight drains shall consist of body, integral seepage pan, and adjustable strainer with perforated or slotted grate and funnel extension. The strainer shall have a threaded collar to permit adjustment to floor thickness. Drains shall be of double drainage pattern suitable for embedding in the floor construction. A clamping device for attaching flashing or waterproofing membrane to the seepage pan without damaging the flashing or membrane shall be provided for other than concrete construction. Drains shall have a galvanized heavy cast-iron body and seepage pan and chromium-plated bronze, nickel-bronze, or nickel-brass strainer and funnel combination. Drains shall be provided with threaded or caulked connection and with a separate cast-iron "P" trap, unless otherwise indicated. Drains shall be circular, unless otherwise indicated. The funnel shall be securely mounted over an opening in the center of the strainer. Minimum dimensions shall be as follows:

Area of strainer and collar	36 square inches
Height of funnel	3-3/4 inches
Diameter of lower portion of funnel	2 inches
Diameter of upper portion of funnel	4 inches

## 2.8 TRAPS

Unless otherwise specified, traps shall be plastic per ASTM F 409 or copper-alloy adjustable tube type with slip joint inlet and swivel. Traps shall be without a cleanout. Tubes shall be copper alloy with walls not

less than 0.032 inch thick within commercial tolerances, except on the outside of bends where the thickness may be reduced slightly in manufacture by usual commercial methods. Inlets shall have rubber washer and copper alloy nuts for slip joints above the discharge level. Swivel joints shall be below the discharge level and shall be of metal-to-metal or metal-to-plastic type as required for the application. Nuts shall have flats for wrench grip. Outlets shall have internal pipe thread, except that when required for the application, the outlets shall have sockets for solder-joint connections. The depth of the water seal shall be not less than 2 inches. The interior diameter shall be not more than 1/8 inch over or under the nominal size, and interior surfaces shall be reasonably smooth throughout. A copper alloy "P" trap assembly consisting of an adjustable "P" trap and threaded trap wall nipple with cast brass wall flange shall be provided for lavatories. The assembly shall be a standard manufactured unit and may have a rubber-gasketed swivel joint.

## 2.10 WATER HEATER

Water heater types and capacities shall be as indicated. Each primary water heater shall have controls adjustable from 90 to 120 degrees F. Each gas-fired water heater shall have controls adjustable from 120 to 180 degrees F. Hot water systems utilizing recirculation systems shall be tied into separate timer. The thermal efficiencies and stand by heat losses shall conform to TABLE III for each type of water heater specified. The only exception is that the storage capacity need not meet the standard loss requirement if the tank surface area is not insulated to R-12.5 and if a standing light is not used. Water heaters shall be complete with flue, sized per manufacturer's recommendations. Flues from each water heater shall be routed to a common flue and vented through the roof. Common flue shall terminate with a listed cap and at least 24 inches above any adjacent roof or structure within 10 feet.

### 2.10.1 Automatic Storage Type

Heaters shall be complete with temperature gauge, and pressure gauge, and shall have ASME rated combination pressure and temperature relief valve.

### 2.10.3 Gas-Fired Type

Gas-fired water heaters shall conform to ANSI Z21.10.1 when input is 75,000 Btu per hour or less or ANSI Z21.10.3 for heaters with input greater than 75,000 Btu per hour.

### 2.10.7 Phenolic Resin Coatings

The phenolic resin coating shall be applied at either the coil or coating manufacturer's factory. The coil shall be chemically cleaned to remove any scale if present and to etch the metal surface. The exposed exterior surface of the coil shall be abrasively cleaned to white metal blast in accordance with SSPC SP 5. The coating shall be a product specifically intended for use on the material the water heating coils are made of. Steel, copper, copper alloy, or stainless steel coatings shall be capable of withstanding temperatures up to 400 degrees F dry bulb; and meet the requirements of 21 CFR 175. The entire exterior surface and the first 5 to 8 inches inside the tubes of each coil shall be coated with three component phenolic resin coating system. The system shall consist of the following: wash primer, pigmented base coat, the clear top coat. Immediate and final cure times and temperatures shall be as recommended by the coating manufacturer.



#### 2.10.7.1 Wash Primer

The wash primer shall be composed of a combination of polyvinyl butyral and a heat hardening phenolic resin. The weight per gallon shall be between 7.0 lbs per gallon minimum and 7.4 lbs. per gallon maximum.

#### 2.10.7.2 Pigmented Base Coat

The pigmented baking phenolic base coat shall consist of heat hardening phenolic resins, suitable pigments of the earth type, and softening agents, and shall not contain drying oils or cellulose material. The weight per gallon shall be between 10.3 lbs per gallon minimum and 10.7 lbs per gallon maximum. The non-volatile solids content shall be between 60 percent minimum and 64 percent maximum by weight.

#### 2.10.7.3 Clear Top Coat

The clear non-pigmented baking phenolic top coat shall have a weight per gallon of between 8.65 lbs per gallon minimum and 8.95 lbs per gallon maximum. The non-volatile solids content shall be between 48 percent minimum and 52 percent maximum by weight.

### 2.12 PUMPS

#### 2.12.2 Circulating Pumps

Domestic hot water circulating pumps shall be electrically driven, single-stage, centrifugal, with mechanical seals, suitable for the intended service. Pump capacities, efficiencies, motor sizes, speeds, and impeller types shall be as shown. Pump and motor shall be supported by the piping on which it is installed. The shaft shall be one-piece, ceramic with impeller and smooth-surfaced housing of bronze. Motor shall be totally enclosed, fan-cooled and shall have sufficient horsepower for the service required. Pump shall conform to HI 1.1-1.5. Each pump motor shall be equipped with an across-the-line magnetic controller in a NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with "START-STOP" switch in cover. Pump motors smaller than Fractional horsepower pump motors shall have integral thermal overload protection in accordance with Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Guards shall shield exposed moving parts.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

Hubless cast-iron pipe shall not be installed under concrete floor slabs. Piping located in air plenums shall conform to NFPA 90A requirements. Unprotected plastic pipe shall not be installed in air plenum. Piping located in shafts that constitute air ducts or that enclose air ducts shall be noncombustible in accordance with NFPA 90A. Installation of plastic pipe where in compliance with NFPA may be installed in accordance with PPFA-01. The plumbing system shall be installed complete with necessary fixtures, fittings, traps, valves, and accessories. Water and drainage piping shall be extended 5 feet outside the building, unless otherwise indicated. A gate valve and drain shall be installed on the water service line inside the building approximately 6 inches above the floor from point of entry. Piping shall be connected to the exterior service lines or capped or plugged if the exterior service is not in place. Sewer and water pipes shall be laid in separate trenches, except when otherwise shown.

Exterior underground utilities shall be at least 12 inches below the finish grade or as indicated on the drawings. If trenches are closed or the pipes are otherwise covered before being connected to the service lines, the location of the end of each plumbing utility shall be marked with a stake or other acceptable means. Valves shall be installed with control no lower than the valve body.

### 3.1.1 Water Pipe, Fittings, and Connections

#### 3.1.1.1 Utilities

The piping shall be extended to fixtures, outlets, and equipment. The hot-water and cold-water piping system shall be arranged and installed to permit draining. The supply line to each item of equipment or fixture, except faucets, flush valves, or other control valves which are supplied with integral stops, shall be equipped with a shutoff valve to enable isolation of the item for repair and maintenance without interfering with operation of other equipment or fixtures. Supply piping to fixtures, faucets, hydrants, shower heads, and flushing devices shall be anchored to prevent movement.

#### 3.1.1.2 Cutting and Repairing

The work shall be carefully laid out in advance, and unnecessary cutting of construction shall be avoided. Damage to building, piping, wiring, or equipment as a result of cutting shall be repaired by mechanics skilled in the trade involved.

#### 3.1.1.3 Protection of Fixtures, Materials, and Equipment

Pipe openings shall be closed with caps or plugs during installation. Fixtures and equipment shall be tightly covered and protected against dirt, water, chemicals, and mechanical injury. Upon completion of the work, the fixtures, materials, and equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned, adjusted, and operated. Safety guards shall be provided for exposed rotating equipment.

#### 3.1.1.4 Mains, Branches, and Runouts

Piping shall be installed as indicated. Pipe shall be accurately cut and worked into place without springing or forcing. Structural portions of the building shall not be weakened. Aboveground piping shall run parallel with the lines of the building, unless otherwise indicated. Branch pipes from service lines may be taken from top, bottom, or side of main, using crossover fittings required by structural or installation conditions. Supply pipes, valves, and fittings shall be kept a sufficient distance from other work and other services to permit not less than 1/2 inch between finished covering on the different services. Bare and insulated water lines shall not bear directly against building structural elements so as to transmit sound to the structure or to prevent flexible movement of the lines. Water pipe shall not be buried in or under floors unless specifically indicated or approved. Changes in pipe sizes shall be made with reducing fittings. Use of bushings will not be permitted except for use in situations in which standard factory fabricated components are furnished to accommodate specific excepted installation practice. Change in direction shall be made with fittings, except that bending of pipe 4 inches and smaller will be permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide sweep bends are formed. The center-line radius of bends shall be not less than six diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles,

flattening, or other malformations will not be acceptable.

#### 3.1.1.5 Pipe Drains

Pipe drains indicated shall consist of 3/4 inch hose bibb with renewable seat and gate valve ahead of hose bibb. At other low points, 3/4 inch brass plugs or caps shall be provided. Disconnection of the supply piping at the fixture is an acceptable drain.

#### 3.1.1.6 Expansion and Contraction of Piping

Allowance shall be made throughout for expansion and contraction of water pipe. Each hot-water and hot-water circulation riser shall have expansion loops or other provisions such as offsets, changes in direction, etc., where indicated and/or required. Risers shall be securely anchored as required or where indicated to force expansion to loops. Branch connections from risers shall be made with ample swing or offset to avoid undue strain on fittings or short pipe lengths. Horizontal runs of pipe over 50 feet in length shall be anchored to the wall or the supporting construction about midway on the run to force expansion, evenly divided, toward the ends. Sufficient flexibility shall be provided on branch runouts from mains and risers to provide for expansion and contraction of piping. Flexibility shall be provided by installing one or more turns in the line so that piping will spring enough to allow for expansion without straining. If mechanical grooved pipe coupling systems are provided, the deviation from design requirements for expansion and contraction may be allowed pending approval of Contracting Officer.

#### 3.1.1.7 Commercial-Type Water Hammer Arresters

Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall be provided on hot- and cold-water supplies and shall be located as generally indicated, with precise location and sizing to be in accordance with PDI WH 201. Water hammer arresters, where concealed, shall be accessible by means of access doors or removable panels. Commercial-type water hammer arresters shall conform to PDI WH 201. Vertical capped pipe columns will not be permitted.

#### 3.1.3 Joints

Installation of pipe and fittings shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Mitering of joints for elbows and notching of straight runs of pipe for tees will not be permitted. Joints shall be made up with fittings of compatible material and made for the specific purpose intended.

##### 3.1.3.1 Threaded

Threaded joints shall have American Standard taper pipe threads conforming to ASME B1.20.1. Only male pipe threads shall be coated with graphite or with an approved graphite compound, or with an inert filler and oil, or shall have a polytetrafluoroethylene tape applied.

##### 3.1.3.2 Mechanical Couplings

Grooved mechanical joints shall be prepared according to the coupling manufacturer's instructions. Pipe and groove dimensions shall comply with the tolerances specified by the coupling manufacturer. The diameter of grooves made in the field shall be measured using a "go/no-go" gauge, vernier or dial caliper, or narrow-land micrometer. Groove width and

dimension of groove from end of the pipe shall be measured and recorded for each change in grooving tool setup to verify compliance with coupling manufacturer's tolerances. Grooved joints shall not be used in concealed locations.

#### 3.1.3.3 Union and Flanged

Unions, flanges and mechanical couplings shall not be concealed in walls, ceilings, or partitions. Unions shall be used on pipe sizes 2-1/2 inches and smaller; flanges shall be used on pipe sizes 3 inches and larger.

#### 3.1.3.4 Cast Iron Soil, Waste and Vent Pipe

Bell and spigot compression and hubless gasketed clamp joints for soil, waste and vent piping shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 3.1.3.5 Copper Tube and Pipe

The tube or fittings shall not be annealed when making connections. Connections shall be made with a multiflame torch.

- a. Brazed. Brazed joints shall be made in conformance with AWS B2.2, MSS SP-73, and CDA-02 with flux and are acceptable for line sizes. Copper to copper joints shall include the use of copper-phosphorus or copper-phosphorus-silver brazing metal without flux. Brazing of dissimilar metals (copper to bronze or brass) shall include the use of flux with either a copper-phosphorus, copper-phosphorus-silver or a silver brazing filler metal.
- b. Soldered. Soldered joints shall be made with flux and are only acceptable for lines 2 inches and smaller. Soldered joints shall conform to ASME B31.5 and CDA-02.
- c. Copper Tube Extracted Joint. An extracted mechanical joint may be made in copper tube. Joint shall be produced with an appropriate tool by drilling a pilot hole and drawing out the tube surface to form a collar having a minimum height of three times the thickness of the tube wall. To prevent the branch tube from being inserted beyond the depth of the extracted joint, dimpled depth stops shall be provided. Branch tube shall be notched for proper penetration into fitting to ensure a free flow joint. Extracted joints shall be brazed in accordance with NAPHCC-01 using B-Cup series filler metal in accordance with MSS SP-73. Soldered extracted joints will not be permitted.

#### 3.1.3.9 Other Joint Methods

#### 3.1.4 Dissimilar Pipe Materials

Connections between ferrous and non-ferrous copper pipe shall be made with dielectric unions or flange waterways. Connecting joints between plastic and metallic pipe shall be made with transition fitting for the specific purpose.

#### 3.1.5 Corrosion Protection for Buried Pipe and Fittings

##### 3.1.5.1 Cast Iron and Ductile Iron

Pressure pipe shall have protective coating, a cathodic protection system, and joint bonding. Pipe, fittings, and joints shall have a protective coating. The protective coating shall be completely encasing polyethylene tube or sheet in accordance with AWWA C105. Joints and fittings shall be cleaned, coated with primer, and wrapped with tape. The pipe shall be cleaned, coated, and wrapped prior to pipe tightness testing. Joints and fittings shall be cleaned, coated, and wrapped after pipe tightness testing. Tape shall conform to AWWA C203 and shall be applied with a 50 percent overlap. Primer shall be as recommended by the tape manufacturer.

#### 3.1.5.2 Steel

Steel pipe, joints, and fittings shall be cleaned, coated with primer, and wrapped with tape. Pipe shall be cleaned, coated, and wrapped prior to pipe tightness testing. Joints and fittings shall be cleaned, coated, and wrapped after pipe tightness testing. Tape shall conform to AWWA C203 and shall be applied with a 50 percent overlap. Primer shall be as recommended by the tape manufacturer.

#### 3.1.6 Pipe Sleeves and Flashing

Pipe sleeves shall be furnished and set in their proper and permanent location.

##### 3.1.6.1 Sleeve Requirements

Pipes passing through concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors or roofs shall be provided with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil pipe passing through concrete slab on grade, except where penetrating a membrane waterproof floor. A modular mechanical type sealing assembly may be installed in lieu of a waterproofing clamping flange and caulking and sealing of annular space between pipe and sleeve. The seals shall consist of interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill the annular space between the pipe and sleeve with corrosion-protected carbon steel bolts, nuts, and pressure plates. The links shall be loosely assembled with bolts to form a continuous rubber belt around the pipe with a pressure plate under each bolt head and each nut. After the seal assembly is properly positioned in the sleeve, tightening of the bolt shall cause the rubber sealing elements to expand and provide a watertight seal between the pipe and the sleeve. Each seal assembly shall be sized as recommended by the manufacturer to fit the pipe and sleeve involved. Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members, except where indicated or approved. Rectangular and square openings shall be as detailed. Each sleeve shall extend through its respective floor, or roof, and shall be cut flush with each surface, except for special circumstances. Pipe sleeves passing through floors in wet areas such as mechanical equipment rooms, lavatories and other plumbing fixture areas shall extend a minimum of 4 inches above the finished floor. Unless otherwise indicated, sleeves shall be of a size to provide a minimum of 1/4 inch clearance between bare pipe and inside of sleeve or between jacket over insulation and sleeves. Sleeves in bearing walls shall be steel pipe or cast-iron pipe. Sleeves for membrane waterproof floors shall be steel pipe, cast-iron pipe, or plastic pipe. Membrane clamping devices shall be provided on pipe sleeves for waterproof floors. Sleeves in nonbearing walls or ceilings may be steel pipe, cast-iron pipe, galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam, or moisture-resistant fiber or plastic. Plastic sleeves shall not be used in nonbearing fire walls, roofs, or

floor/ceilings. Except as otherwise specified, the annular space between pipe and sleeve, or between jacket over insulation and sleeve, shall be sealed as indicated with sealants conforming to ASTM C 920 and with a primer, backstop material and surface preparation as specified in Section 07920 JOINT SEALING. Pipes passing through sleeves in concrete floors over crawl spaces shall be sealed as specified above. The annular space between pipe and sleeve or between jacket over insulation and sleeve shall not be sealed for interior walls which are not designated as fire rated. Sleeves through below-grade walls in contact with earth shall be recessed 1/2 inch from wall surfaces on both sides. Annular space between pipe and sleeve shall be filled with backing material and sealants in the joint between the pipe and masonry wall as specified above. Sealant selected for the earth side of the wall shall be compatible with dampproofing/waterproofing materials that are to be applied over the joint sealant.

#### 3.1.6.2 Flashing Requirements

Pipes passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane shall be installed through a 16 ounce copper flashing, each within an integral skirt or flange. Flashing shall be suitably formed, and the skirt or flange shall extend not less than 8 inches from the pipe and shall be set over the roof or floor membrane in a solid coating of bituminous cement. The flashing shall extend up the pipe a minimum of 10 inches. For cleanouts, the flashing shall be turned down into the hub and caulked after placing the ferrule. Pipes passing through pitched roofs shall be flashed, using lead or copper flashing, with an adjustable integral flange of adequate size to extend not less than 8 inches from the pipe in all directions and lapped into the roofing to provide a watertight seal. The annular space between the flashing and the bare pipe or between the flashing and the metal-jacket-covered insulation shall be sealed as indicated. Flashing for dry vents shall be turned down into the pipe to form a waterproof joint. Pipes, up to and including 10 inches in diameter, passing through roof or floor waterproofing membrane may be installed through a cast-iron sleeve with caulking recess, anchor lugs, flashing-clamp device, and pressure ring with brass bolts. Flashing shield shall be fitted into the sleeve clamping device. Pipes passing through wall waterproofing membrane shall be sleeved as described above. A waterproofing clamping flange shall be installed.

#### 3.1.6.3 Waterproofing

Waterproofing at floor-mounted water closets shall be accomplished by forming a flashing guard from soft-tempered sheet copper. The center of the sheet shall be perforated and turned down approximately 1-1/2 inches to fit between the outside diameter of the drainpipe and the inside diameter of the cast-iron or steel pipe sleeve. The turned-down portion of the flashing guard shall be embedded in sealant to a depth of approximately 1-1/2 inches; then the sealant shall be finished off flush to floor level between the flashing guard and drainpipe. The flashing guard of sheet copper shall extend not less than 8 inches from the drainpipe and shall be lapped between the floor membrane in a solid coating of bituminous cement. If cast-iron water closet floor flanges are used, the space between the pipe sleeve and drainpipe shall be sealed with sealant and the flashing guard shall be upturned approximately 1-1/2 inches to fit the outside diameter of the drainpipe and the inside diameter of the water closet floor flange. The upturned portion of the sheet fitted into the floor flange shall be sealed.

#### 3.1.6.4 Optional Counterflashing

Instead of turning the flashing down into a dry vent pipe, or caulking and sealing the annular space between the pipe and flashing or metal-jacket-covered insulation and flashing, counterflashing may be accomplished by utilizing the following:

- a. A standard roof coupling for threaded pipe up to 6 inches in diameter.
- b. A tack-welded or banded-metal rain shield around the pipe.

### 3.1.6.5 Pipe Penetrations of Slab on Grade Floors

Where pipes, fixture drains, floor drains, cleanouts or similar items penetrate slab on grade floors, except at penetrations of floors with waterproofing membrane as specified in paragraphs Flashing Requirements and Waterproofing, a groove 1/4 to 1/2 inch wide by 1/4 to 3/8 inch deep shall be formed around the pipe, fitting or drain. The groove shall be filled with a sealant as specified in Section 07920 JOINT SEALING.

### 3.1.7 Fire Seal

Where pipes pass through fire walls, fire-partitions, fire-rated pipe chase walls or floors above grade, a fire seal shall be provided as specified in Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.1.8 Supports

#### 3.1.8.1 General

Hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger shall be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Pipe guides and anchors shall be installed to keep pipes in accurate alignment, to direct the expansion movement, and to prevent buckling, swaying, and undue strain. Piping subjected to vertical movement when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures shall be supported by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers. In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp shall be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members shall not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run.

#### 3.1.8.3 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Installation of pipe hangers, inserts and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69, except as modified herein.

- a. Types 5, 12, and 26 shall not be used.
- b. Type 3 shall not be used on insulated pipe.
- c. Type 18 inserts shall be secured to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustment may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for type 18 inserts.
- d. Type 19 and 23 C-clamps shall be torqued per MSS SP-69 and shall have both locknuts and retaining devices furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.

- e. Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels shall be furnished with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.
- f. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.
- g. Type 39 saddles shall be used on insulated pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher. Type 39 saddles shall be welded to the pipe.
- h. Type 40 shields shall:
  - (1) Be used on insulated pipe less than 4 inches.
  - (2) Be used on insulated pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or less.
  - (3) Have a high density insert for pipe 2 inches and larger and for smaller pipe sizes when the insulation is suspected of being visibly compressed, or distorted at or near the shield/insulation interface. High density inserts shall have a density of 8 pcf or greater.
- i. Horizontal pipe supports shall be spaced as specified in MSS SP-69 and a support shall be installed not over 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Pipe supports shall be spaced not over 5 feet apart at valves. Horizontal pipe runs shall include allowances for expansion and contraction.
- j. Vertical pipe shall be supported at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, at intervals of not more than 15 feet nor more than 8 feet from end of risers, and at vent terminations. Vertical pipe risers shall include allowances for expansion and contraction.
- k. Type 40 shields used on insulated pipe shall have high density inserts with a density of 8 pcf or greater.
- l. Type 35 guides using steel, reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) or graphite slides shall be provided to allow longitudinal pipe movement. Slide materials shall be suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions, and bearing loads encountered. Lateral restraints shall be provided as needed. Where steel slides do not require provisions for lateral restraint the following may be used:
  - (1) On pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher, a Type 39 saddle, welded to the pipe, may freely rest on a steel plate.
  - (2) On pipe less than 4 inches a Type 40 shield, attached to the pipe or insulation, may freely rest on a steel plate.
  - (3) On pipe 4 inches and larger carrying medium less than 60 degrees F a Type 40 shield, attached to the pipe or insulation, may freely rest on a steel plate.
- m. Pipe hangers on horizontal insulated pipe shall be the size of the



outside diameter of the insulation. The insulation shall be continuous through the hanger on all pipe sizes and applications.

- n. Where there are high system temperatures and welding to piping is not desirable, the type 35 guide shall include a pipe cradle, welded to the guide structure and strapped securely to the pipe. The pipe shall be separated from the slide material by at least 4 inches or by an amount adequate for the insulation, whichever is greater.

### 3.1.10 Pipe Cleanouts

Pipe cleanouts shall be the same size as the pipe except that cleanout plugs larger than 4 inches will not be required. A cleanout installed in connection with cast-iron soil pipe shall consist of a long-sweep 1/4 bend or one or two 1/8 bends extended to the place shown. An extra-heavy cast-brass or cast-iron ferrule with countersunk cast-brass head screw plug shall be caulked into the hub of the fitting and shall be flush with the floor. Cleanouts in connection with other pipe, where indicated, shall be T-pattern, 90-degree branch drainage fittings with cast-brass screw plugs, except plastic plugs shall be installed in plastic pipe. Plugs shall be the same size as the pipe up to and including 4 inches. Cleanout tee branches with screw plug shall be installed at the foot of soil and waste stacks, at the foot of interior downspouts, on each connection to building storm drain where interior downspouts are indicated, and on each building drain outside the building. Cleanout tee branches may be omitted on stacks in single story buildings with slab-on-grade construction or where less than 18 inches of crawl space is provided under the floor. Cleanouts on pipe concealed in partitions shall be provided with chromium plated bronze, nickel bronze, nickel brass or stainless steel flush type access cover plates. Round access covers shall be provided and secured to plugs with securing screw. Square access covers may be provided with matching frames, anchoring lugs and cover screws. Cleanouts in finished walls shall have access covers and frames installed flush with the finished wall. Cleanouts installed in finished floors subject to foot traffic shall be provided with a chrome-plated cast brass, nickel brass, or nickel bronze cover secured to the plug or cover frame and set flush with the finished floor. Heads of fastening screws shall not project above the cover surface. Where cleanouts are provided with adjustable heads, the heads shall be cast iron.

## 3.2 WATER HEATERS AND HOT WATER STORAGE TANKS

### 3.2.1 Relief Valves

No valves shall be installed between a relief valve and its water heater or storage tank. The P&T relief valve shall be installed where the valve actuator comes in contact with the hottest water in the heater. Whenever possible, the relief valve shall be installed directly in a tapping in the tank or heater; otherwise, the P&T valve shall be installed in the hot-water outlet piping. A vacuum relief valve shall be provided on the cold water supply line to the hot-water storage tank or water heater and mounted above and within 6 inches above the top of the tank or water heater.

### 3.2.2 Installation of Gas-Fired Water Heater

Installation shall conform to NFPA 54 for gas fired      Circulating systems

need not have heat traps installed.

### 3.2.3 Phenolic Resin Application Process

The phenolic resin coating shall be applied at either the coil or coating manufacturer's factory.

#### 3.2.3.1 Surface Preparation

The hot water coil shall be chemically cleaned to remove any scale if present and to etch the metal surface. The exposed exterior surface of the coil shall be abrasively cleaned to white metal blast in accordance with SSPC SP 5. The exterior surface shall be coated with the three-component coating system in the following sequence and manner. For immediate and final cure times and temperature, the recommendations of the coating manufacturer shall be followed.

- a. Wash Primer. One coat of wash primer shall be applied by flooding.
- b. Pigmented Base Coat. Pigmented baking phenolic coating shall be applied in several coats by immersion or flooding to a dry film thickness of 4 to 6 mils.
- c. Clear Top Coat. Clear non-pigmented baking phenolic top coat shall be applied in several coats by immersion or flooding. The final coat may be applied by spraying. The dry film thickness of the total coating system shall be between 5 and 7 mils.

### 3.2.5 Connections to Water Heaters

Connections of metallic pipe to water heaters shall be made with dielectric unions or flanges.

## 3.3 FIXTURES AND FIXTURE TRIMMINGS

Angle stops, straight stops, stops integral with the faucets, or concealed type of lock-shield, and loose-key pattern stops for supplies with threaded, sweat or solvent weld inlets shall be furnished and installed with fixtures. Where connections between copper tubing and faucets are made by rubber compression fittings, a beading tool shall be used to mechanically deform the tubing above the compression fitting. Exposed traps and supply pipes for fixtures and equipment shall be connected to the rough piping systems at the wall, unless otherwise specified under the item. Floor and wall escutcheons shall be as specified. Drain lines and hot water lines of fixtures for handicapped personnel shall be insulated and do not require polished chrome finish. Plumbing fixtures and accessories shall be installed within the space shown.

#### 3.3.1 Fixture Connections

Where space limitations prohibit standard fittings in conjunction with the cast-iron floor flange, special short-radius fittings shall be provided. Connections between earthenware fixtures and flanges on soil pipe shall be made gastight and watertight with a closet-setting compound or neoprene gasket and seal. Use of natural rubber gaskets or putty will not be permitted. Fixtures with outlet flanges shall be set the proper distance from floor or wall to make a first-class joint with the closet-setting compound or gasket and fixture used.

### 3.3.2 Flushometer Valves

Flushometer valves shall be secured to prevent movement by anchoring the long finished top spud connecting tube to wall adjacent to valve with approved metal bracket. Flushometer valves for water closets shall be installed 39 inches above the floor.

### 3.3.3 Height of Fixture Rims Above Floor

Lavatories shall be mounted with rim 31 inches above finished floor. Wall-hung drinking fountains and water coolers shall be installed with rim 42 inches above floor. Installation of fixtures for use by the physically handicapped shall be in accordance with CABO A117.1.

### 3.3.5 Fixture Supports

Fixture supports for off-the-floor lavatories, urinals, water closets, and other fixtures of similar size, design, and use, shall be of the chair-carrier type. The carrier shall provide the necessary means of mounting the fixture, with a foot or feet to anchor the assembly to the floor slab. Adjustability shall be provided to locate the fixture at the desired height and in proper relation to the wall. Support plates, in lieu of chair carrier, shall be fastened to the wall structure only where it is not possible to anchor a floor-mounted chair carrier to the floor slab.

#### 3.3.5.1 Support for Solid Masonry Construction

Chair carrier shall be anchored to the floor slab. Where a floor-anchored chair carrier cannot be used, a suitable wall plate shall be imbedded in the masonry wall.

#### 3.3.5.2 Support for Cellular-Masonry Wall Construction

Chair carrier shall be anchored to floor slab. Where a floor-anchored chair carrier cannot be used, a suitable wall plate shall be fastened to the cellular wall using through bolts and a back-up plate.

#### 3.3.5.3 Support for Steel Stud Frame Partitions

Chair carrier shall be used. The anchor feet and tubular uprights shall be of the heavy duty design; and feet (bases) shall be steel and welded to a square or rectangular steel tube upright. Wall plates, in lieu of floor-anchored chair carriers, shall be used only if adjoining steel partition studs are suitably reinforced to support a wall plate bolted to these studs.

#### 3.3.5.4 Support for Wood Stud Construction

Where floor is a concrete slab, a floor-anchored chair carrier shall be used. Where entire construction is wood, wood crosspieces shall be installed. Fixture hanger plates, supports, brackets, or mounting lugs shall be fastened with not less than No. 10 wood screws, 1/4 inch thick minimum steel hanger, or toggle bolts with nut. The wood crosspieces shall extend the full width of the fixture and shall be securely supported.

### 3.3.6 Backflow Prevention Devices

Plumbing fixtures, equipment, and pipe connections shall not cross connect or interconnect between a potable water supply and any source of nonpotable

water. Backflow preventers shall be installed where indicated and in accordance with NAPHCC-01 at all other locations necessary to preclude a cross-connect or interconnect between a potable water supply and any nonpotable substance. In addition backflow preventers shall be installed at all locations where the potable water outlet is below the flood level of the equipment, or where the potable water outlet will be located below the level of the nonpotable substance. Backflow preventers shall be located so that no part of the device will be submerged. Backflow preventers shall be of sufficient size to allow unrestricted flow of water to the equipment, and preclude the backflow of any nonpotable substance into the potable water system. Access shall be provided for maintenance and testing. Each device shall be a standard commercial unit.

### 3.3.7 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided for concealed valves and controls, or any item requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced, maintained, or replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 05500 MISCELLANEOUS METAL.

### 3.3.8 Sight Drains

Sight drains shall be installed so that the indirect waste will terminate 2 inches above the flood rim of the funnel to provide an acceptable air gap.

### 3.3.9 Traps

Each trap shall be placed as near the fixture as possible, and no fixture shall be double-trapped. Traps installed on cast-iron soil pipe shall be cast iron. Traps installed on steel pipe or copper tubing shall be recess-drainage pattern, or brass-tube type.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS

### 3.6.1 Identification Tags

Identification tags made of brass, engraved laminated plastic, or engraved anodized aluminum, indicating service and valve number shall be installed on valves, except those valves installed on supplies at plumbing fixtures. Tags shall be 1-3/8 inch minimum diameter, and marking shall be stamped or engraved. Indentations shall be black, for reading clarity. Tags shall be attached to valves with No. 12 AWG, copper wire, chrome-plated beaded chain, or plastic straps designed for that purpose.

### 3.6.2 Color Coding

Color coding for piping identification shall be as specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL.

### 3.6.3 Color Coding Scheme for Locating Hidden Utility Components

Scheme shall be provided in buildings having suspended grid ceilings. The color coding scheme shall identify points of access for maintenance and operation of operable components which are not visible from the finished space and installed in the space directly above the suspended grid ceiling. The operable components shall include valves, dampers, switches, linkages and thermostats. The color coding scheme shall consist of a color code board and colored metal disks. Each colored metal disk shall be

approximately 3/8 inch in diameter and secured to removable ceiling panels with fasteners. The fasteners shall be inserted into the ceiling panels so that the fasteners will be concealed from view. The fasteners shall be manually removable without tools and shall not separate from the ceiling panels when panels are dropped from ceiling height. Installation of colored metal disks shall follow completion of the finished surface on which the disks are to be fastened. The color code board shall have the approximate dimensions of 3 foot width, 30 inches height, and 1/2 inch thickness. The board shall be made of wood fiberboard and framed under glass or 1/16 inch transparent plastic cover. Unless otherwise directed, the color code symbols shall be approximately 3/4 inch in diameter and the related lettering in 1/2 inch high capital letters. The color code board shall be mounted and located in the mechanical or equipment room Coordinate color schemes with Contracting Officer.

### 3.7 ESCUTCHEONS

Escutcheons shall be provided at finished surfaces where bare or insulated piping, exposed to view, passes through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Escutcheons shall be fastened securely to pipe or pipe covering and shall be satin-finish, corrosion-resisting steel, polished chromium-plated zinc alloy, or polished chromium-plated copper alloy. Escutcheons shall be either one-piece or split-pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or setscrew.

### 3.8 PAINTING

Painting of pipes, hangers, supports, and other iron work, either in concealed spaces or exposed spaces, is specified in Section 09900PAINTING, GENERAL.

### 3.9 TESTS FLUSHING AND STERILIZATION

#### 3.9.1 Plumbing System

The plumbing system shall be tested in accordance with NAPHCC-01.

##### 3.9.1.1 Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies

Backflow prevention assembly shall be tested using gauges specifically designed for the testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Gauges shall be tested annually for accuracy in accordance with the University of Southern California's Foundation of Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Research or the American Water Works Association Manual of Cross Connection (Manual M-14). Report form for each assembly shall include, as a minimum, the following:

Data on Device	Data on Testing Firm
Type of Assembly	Name
Manufacturer	Address
Model Number	Certified Tester
Serial Number	Certified Tester No.
Size	Date of Test
Location	
Test Pressure Readings	Serial Number and Test Data of Gauges

If the unit fails to meet specified requirements, the unit shall be repaired and retested.

### 3.9.2 Phenolic Resin Coatings

A certificate of compliance shall be submitted by the coating manufacturer that documents successful use of coating system under service conditions indicated on the drawings for a minimum of 2 years at three different locations, and that the coating material and application comply with the testing procedures outlined.

#### 3.9.2.1 Test Panels

Steel test panel substrate shall be 24 gauge in thickness. The panels shall be coated with one coat wash primer, then pigmented baking phenolic to a dry film thickness of 4 to 6 mil, then clear baking phenolic to a total dry film thickness of 5 to 7 mil. The panels shall then be subjected to the tests specified below:

- a. Heat Test: Test panel shall be minimum 2-3/4 x 5-7/8 inches in size. A coated test panel shall show no cracking, flaking, or other failure after the panel has been tested in accordance with ASTM D 2485, with a furnace temperature of 400 degrees F.
- b. Abrasion Test: A coated test panel shall show no more than a 40 milligram loss when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4060, utilizing a Tabor Abraser CS-17F wheel with a 1000 g weight for 1000 cycles.
- c. Corrosion Test: A coated test panel shall show no corrosion after being subjected to a 500 hour salt spray test in accordance with ASTM B 117.

### 3.9.3 Defective Work

If inspection or test shows defects, such defective work or material shall be replaced or repaired as necessary and inspection and tests shall be repeated. Repairs to piping shall be made with new materials. Caulking of screwed joints or holes will not be permitted.

### 3.9.4 System Flushing

After tests are completed, potable water piping shall be flushed. In general, sufficient water shall be used to produce a minimum water velocity of 2.5 feet per second through piping being flushed. Flushing shall be continued until discharge water shows no discoloration. System shall be drained at low points. Strainer screens shall be removed, cleaned, and replaced in line. After flushing and cleaning, systems shall be prepared for service by immediately filling water piping with clean, fresh potable water. Any stoppage, discoloration, or other damage to the finish, furnishings, or parts of the building due to the Contractor's failure to properly clean the piping system shall be repaired by the Contractor. When the work is complete, the hot-water system shall be adjusted for uniform circulation. Flushing devices and automatic control systems shall be adjusted for proper operation.

### 3.9.5 Operational Test

Upon completion of and prior to acceptance of the installation, the Contractor shall subject the plumbing system to operating tests to demonstrate satisfactory functional and operational efficiency. Such

operating tests shall cover a period of not less than 8 hours for each system and shall include the following information in a report with conclusion as to the adequacy of the system:

- a. Time, date, and duration of test.
- b. Water pressures at the most remote and the highest fixtures.
- c. Operation of each fixture and fixture trim.
- d. Operation of each valve, hydrant, and faucet.
- e. Pump suction and discharge pressures.
- f. Temperature of each domestic hot-water supply.
- g. Operation of each floor and roof drain by flooding with water.
- h. Operation of each vacuum breaker and backflow preventer.
- i. Complete operation of each water pressure booster system, including pump start pressure and stop pressure.
- j. Compressed air readings at each compressor and at each outlet. Each indicating instrument shall be read at 1/2 hour intervals. The report of the test shall be submitted in quadruplicate. The Contractor shall furnish instruments, equipment, and personnel required for the tests; the Government will furnish the necessary water and electricity.

#### 3.9.6 Disinfection

After pressure tests have been made, the entire domestic hot- and cold-water distribution system shall be sterilized. System shall be thoroughly flushed with water of sufficient velocity until all entrained dirt and other foreign material have been removed, before introducing chlorinating material. The chlorinating material shall be hypochlorites or liquid chlorine. Water chlorination procedure shall be in accordance with AWWA M20. The chlorinating material shall be fed into the water piping system at a constant rate at a concentration of at least 50 parts per million (ppm). A properly adjusted hypochlorite solution injected into the main with a hypochlorinator, or liquid chlorine injected into the main through a solution-feed chlorinator and booster pump, shall be used. The chlorine residual shall be checked at intervals to ensure that the proper level is maintained. Chlorine application shall continue until the entire main is filled. The water shall remain in the system for a minimum of 24 hours. Each valve in the system being sterilized shall be opened and closed several times during the contact period to ensure its proper disinfection. Following the 24-hour period, no less than 25 ppm chlorine residual shall remain in the system. Water tanks shall be disinfected by the addition of chlorine directly to the filling water. Following a 6 hour period, no less than 50 ppm chlorine residual shall remain in the tank. The system including the tanks shall then be flushed with clean water until the residual chlorine is reduced to less than one part per million. During the flushing period each valve and faucet shall be opened and closed several times. From several points in the system the Contracting Officer will take samples of water in properly sterilized containers for bacterial examination. The samples of water shall be tested for total coliform organisms (coliform bacteria, fecal coliform, streptococcal, and other

bacteria) in accordance with AWWA-01. The testing method used shall be either the multiple-tube fermentation technique or the membrane-filter technique. The sterilizing shall be repeated until tests indicate the absence of coliform organisms (zero mean coliform density per 100 milliliters) in the samples for at least 2 full days. The system will not be accepted until satisfactory bacteriological results have been obtained.

### 3.10 PLUMBING FIXTURE SCHEDULE

#### P-1A WATER CLOSET:

Siphon-jet, elongated bowl, top supply spud, ASME A112.19.2M, floor mounted. Floor flange shall be copper alloy, cast iron, or plastic.

Gasket shall be wax type.

Seat - CID A-A-238, Type A, whiteplastic, elongated, open front.

Flushometer Valve - ASSE 1037, large diaphragm type with non-hold-open feature, backcheck angle control stop, and vacuum breaker. Minimum upper chamber inside diameter of not less than 2-5/8 inches at the point where the diaphragm is sealed between the upper and lower chambers. The maximum water use shall be 1.6 gallons per flush.

#### P-1B WATER CLOSET HANDICAPPED:

Top rim of bowl shall be 18 inches above the floor; other features are the same as P-1.

#### P-2 URINAL:

Wall hanging, with integral trap and extended shields, ASME A112.19.2M siphon jet. Top supply connection, back outlet.

Flushometer Valve - Similar to Flushometer Valve for P-1. The maximum water use shall be 1 gallon per flush.

#### P-3A LAVATORY:

Manufacturer's standard sink depth, vitreous china ASME A112.19.2M, countertop, oval.

Faucet - Faucets shall be center set single control, mixing type. Faucets shall have replaceable seats and washers. Faucets shall have metal replaceable cartridge control unit or metal cartridge units with diaphragm which can be replaced without special tools. Valves and handles shall be copper alloy. Connection between valve and spout for center-set faucet shall be of rigid metal tubing. Flow shall be limited to 2.5 gpm at a flowing pressure of 80 psi.

Handles - Crown type. Cast, formed, or drop forged copper alloy.

Drain - Pop-up drain shall include stopper, lift rods, jam nut, washer, and tail piece. See paragraph FIXTURES for optional plastic accessories.

#### P-3B WHEELCHAIR LAVATORY:



Vitreous china, ASME A112.19.2M, wheelchair lavatory with wrist or elbow controls 20 inches wide x 27 inches deep. Flow shall be limited to 2.5 gpm at a flowing water pressure of 80 psi.

Drain - Strainer shall be copper alloy or stainless steel.

P-5 Washing Machine Connector Box

Provide recessed wall box fabricated of PVC plastic stainless or hot-dip galvanized steel. Provide hot-dip galvanized steel with epoxy or baked-on enamel finish. Provide drain nipple and locknut with cover nut for locking drain outlet to box. Provide brass pipe fittings for connecting each supply pipe to valve and locking to box. Provide hot water and cold water supply valves similar to hose bibbs.

P-6 Ice Machine Connection Box

Provide recessed wall box fabricated of PVC plastic or hot-dip galvanized steel. Provide hot-dip galvanized steel with epoxy or baked-on enamel finish. Provide brass pipe fitting for connecting cold water supply pipe to valve and locking to box. Valve inlet connections shall be of the compression type.

P-7 KITCHEN SINK:

Ledge back with holes for faucet and spout double bowl 33 x 22 inches stainless steel ASME A112.19.3M.

Faucet and Spout - Cast or wrought copper alloy. Aerator shall have internal threads. Flow shall be limited to 0.25 gallon per cycle at a flowing water pressure of 80 psi if a metering device or fitting is used that limits the period of water discharge such as a foot switch or fixture occupancy sensor. If a metering device is not used, the flow shall be limited to 2.5 gpm at a flowing water pressure of 80 psi.

Handle - Cast copper alloy, wrought copper alloy, or stainless steel. Single lever type.

Drain Assembly - Plug, cup strainer, crossbars, jam nuts, washers, couplings, stopper, etc. shall be copper alloy or stainless steel.

P-8 KITCHEN SINK:

Ledge back with holes for faucet and spout single bowl 24 x 21 inches stainless steel ASME A112.19.3M].

Faucet and Spout - Cast or wrought copper alloy. Aerator shall have internal threads. Flow shall be limited to 0.25 gallon per cycle at a flowing water pressure of 80 psi if a metering device or fitting is used that limits the period of water discharge such as a foot switch or fixture occupancy sensor. If a metering device is not used, the flow shall be limited to 2.5 gpm at a flowing water pressure of 80 psi.

Handle - Cast copper alloy, wrought copper alloy, or stainless steel. Single lever type.

Drain Assembly - Plug, cup strainer, crossbars, jam nuts, washers, couplings, stopper, etc. shall be copper alloy or stainless steel.

## P-4 PRECAST TERRAZZO SERVICE SINK:

Terrazzo shall be made of marble chips cast in white portland cement to produce a compressive strength of not less than 3000 psi 7 days after casting. Provide floor outlet copper alloy body drains as indicated, cast integral with terrazzo, with nickel bronze, chromium-plated copper alloy, or polished stainless steel strainers. Units shall be 24" Wide x 24" Deep and have 10" high walls with not less than 1" wide shoulders. Provide 30" long flexible heavy duty 5/8" rubber hose, cloth reinforced, with 3/4" brass coupling at one end and 5" long x 3" wide bracket made of 18 gauge #302 stainless steel with rubber grip.

Faucet and Spout - Cast or wrought copper alloy, with top brace, with backflow preventer. Faucets shall have replaceable seat and the washer shall rotate onto the seat. Handles shall be four arm type. Strainers shall have internal threads.

Drain Assembly - Plug, cup strainer, crossbars, jam nuts, washers, couplings, stopper, etc. shall be copper alloy or stainless steel.

Trap - Cast iron, minimum 3 inch diameter.

## EWC WATER COOLER DRINKING FOUNTAINS:

Water cooler drinking fountains shall: be self contained, conform to ARI 1010, use one of the fluorocarbon gases conforming to ARI 700 and ASHRAE 34 which has an Ozone Depletion Potential of less than or equal to 0.05, have a capacity to deliver 8 gph of water at 50 degrees F with an inlet water temperature of 80 degrees F while residing in a room environment of 90 degrees F, and have self-closing valves. Self-closing valves shall have automatic stream regulators, have a flow control capability, have a push button actuation or have a cross-shaped index metal turn handle without a hood. Exposed surfaces of stainless steel shall have No. 4 general polish finish. Spouts shall provide a flow of water at least 4 inches high so as to allow the insertion of a cup or glass under the flow of water.

Surface Wall-Mounted - Surface wall-mounted units shall be 13-1/4 inches wide, 13 inches deep, and have a back height of 6 to 8 inches. The bowl shall be made of corrosion resisting steel. The unit shall have concealed fasteners and be for interior installation.

Handicapped - Handicapped units shall be surface wall-mounted. The dimensions shall be 15 inches wide, 20 inches deep, with a back height of 6 to 8 inches. The unit shall clear the floor or ground by at least 8 inches. A clear knee space shall exist between the bottom of the bowl and the floor or ground of at least 27 inches and between the front edge of the bowl and the body of the unit of at least 8 inches. A 8 inch wide clear space shall exist on both sides of the unit. The spout height shall be no more than 36 inches above the floor or ground to the outlet. The spout shall be at the front of the unit and direct the water flow in a trajectory that is parallel or nearly parallel to the front of the unit. The bowl shall be 6-1/2 inches high, made of corrosion resisting steel and be for interior installation.

### 3.11 POSTED INSTRUCTIONS

Framed instructions under glass or in laminated plastic, including wiring and control diagrams showing the complete layout of the entire system, shall be posted where directed. Condensed operating instructions explaining preventive maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system shall be prepared in typed form, framed as specified above for the wiring and control diagrams and posted beside the diagrams.

The framed instructions shall be posted before acceptance testing of the systems.

### 3.12 PERFORMANCE OF WATER HEATING EQUIPMENT

Standard rating condition terms are as follows:

EF = Energy factor, overall efficiency.

ET = Thermal efficiency with 70 degrees F delta T.

EC = Combustion efficiency, 100 percent - flue loss when smoke = 0 (trace is permitted).

SL = Standby loss in W/sq. ft. based on 80 degrees F delta T, or in percent per hour based on nominal 90 degrees F delta T.

HL = Heat loss of tank surface area.

V = Storage volume in liters

#### 3.12.1 Storage Water Heaters

##### 3.12.1.2 Gas

a. Storage capacity of 100 gallons or less, and input rating of 75,000 Btu/h or less: minimum EF shall be 0.62-0.0019V per 10 CFR 430.

b. Storage capacity of more than 100 gallons - or input rating more than 75,000 Btu/h: Et shall be 77 percent; maximum SL shall be  $1.3+38/V$ , per ANSI Z21.10.3.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15488

## GAS PIPING SYSTEMS

01/89

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.2.1 Welding
  - 1.2.2 Jointing Thermoplastic and Fiberglass Piping
  - 1.2.3 Standard Products
  - 1.2.4 Verification of Dimensions
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS
  - 2.1.1 Steel Pipe, Joints, and Fittings
  - 2.1.8 Identification
  - 2.1.10 Pipe Threads
  - 2.1.11 Escutcheons
  - 2.1.12 Gas Transition Fittings
  - 2.1.13 Insulating Pipe Joints
    - 2.1.13.1 Insulating Joint Material
    - 2.1.13.2 Threaded Pipe Joints
  - 2.1.14 Flexible Connectors
- 2.2 VALVES
  - 2.2.1 Valves 2 Inches and Smaller
- 2.3 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
- 2.4 METERS, REGULATORS AND SHUTOFF VALVES

## PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.2 GAS PIPING SYSTEM
  - 3.2.1 Protection of Materials and Components
  - 3.2.2 Workmanship and Defects
- 3.3 PROTECTIVE COVERING
  - 3.3.2 Aboveground Metallic Piping Systems
    - 3.3.2.1 Ferrous Surfaces
- 3.4 INSTALLATION
  - 3.4.1 Metallic Piping Installation
  - 3.4.7 Aboveground Piping
  - 3.4.8 Final Gas Connections
- 3.5 PIPE JOINTS
  - 3.5.1 Threaded Metallic Joints
  - 3.5.2 Welded Metallic Joints
- 3.6 PIPE SLEEVES
- 3.8 FIRE SEAL
- 3.9 ESCUTCHEONS
- 3.10 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

- 3.11 BUILDING STRUCTURE
- 3.12 PIPING SYSTEM SUPPORTS
- 3.13 ELECTRICAL BONDING AND GROUNDING
- 3.14 SHUTOFF VALVE
- 3.16 TESTING
  - 3.16.1 Pressure Tests
  - 3.16.3 Test With Gas
  - 3.16.4 Purging
  - 3.16.5 Labor, Materials and Equipment

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 15488

## GAS PIPING SYSTEMS

01/89

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AMERICAN GAS ASSOCIATION (AGA)

AGA-01 (1989) A.G.A. Plastic Pipe Manual for Gas Service

## AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE

ANSI Z21.45 (1992; Z21.4a; Z21.4b) Flexible Connectors of Other Than All-Metal Construction for Gas Appliances

ANSI Z21.69 (1992; Z21.69a) Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B1.20.1 (1983; R 1992) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)

ASME B16.3 (1992) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings

ASME B16.9 (1993) Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings

ASME B16.11 (1991) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

ASME B16.33 (1990) Manually Operated Metallic Gas Valves for Use in Gas Piping Systems Up to 125 psig (Sizes 1/2 through 2)

ASME B31.1 (1995) Power Piping

ASME B31.2 (1968) Fuel Gas Piping

ASME B36.10M (1985; R 1994) Welded and Seamless Wrought Steel Pipe

ASME BPV IX (1995; Addenda Dec 1995) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; Section IX, Welding and Brazing Qualifications

## MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25	(1993) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions
MSS SP-58	(1993) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture
MSS SP-69	(1991) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54	(1992) National Fuel Gas Code
NFPA 70	(1996) National Electrical Code

## 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

### 1.2.1 Welding

Piping shall be welded in accordance with qualified procedures using performance qualified welders and welding operators. Procedures and welders shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPV IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. The Contracting Officer shall be notified at least 24 hours in advance of tests and the tests shall be performed at the work site if practicable. The Contracting Officer shall be furnished with a copy of qualified procedures and a list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators. The welder or welding operator shall apply his assigned symbol near each weld he makes as a permanent record.

### 1.2.2 Jointing Thermoplastic and Fiberglass Piping

Piping shall be jointed by performance qualified joiners using qualified procedures in accordance with AGA-01. Plastic Pipe Manual for Gas Service. The Contracting Officer shall be furnished with a copy of qualified procedures and list of and identification symbols of qualified joiners.

### 1.2.3 Standard Products

Materials and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products and shall essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Asbestos or products containing asbestos shall not be used. Manufacturer's descriptive data and installation instructions shall be submitted for approval for compression-type mechanical joints used in joining dissimilar materials and for insulating joints. Valves, flanges and fittings shall be marked in accordance with MSS SP-25.

### 1.2.4 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation;

submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01300 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Data

Qualifications; FIO.

Qualified procedures and a list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators.

SD-04 Drawings

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

2.1.1 Steel Pipe, Joints, and Fittings

Steel pipe shall conform to ASME B36.10M. Malleable-iron threaded fittings shall conform to ASME B16.3. Wrought steel butt welding fittings shall conform to ASME B16.9. Socket welding and threaded forged steel fittings shall conform to ASME B16.11.

2.1.8 Identification

Pipe flow markings and metal tags shall be provided as required.

2.1.10 Pipe Threads

Pipe threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1.

2.1.11 Escutcheons

Escutcheons shall be chromium-plated steel or chromium-plated brass, either one piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or set screw.

2.1.12 Gas Transition Fittings

Gas transition fittings shall be manufactured steel fittings approved for jointing metallic and thermoplastic or fiberglass pipe. Approved transition fittings are those that conform to AGA-01 requirements for transitions fittings.

2.1.13 Insulating Pipe Joints

2.1.13.1 Insulating Joint Material

Insulating joint material shall be provided between flanged or threaded metallic pipe systems where shown to control galvanic or electrical action.

2.1.13.2 Threaded Pipe Joints

Joints for threaded pipe shall be steel body nut type dielectric unions with insulating gaskets.

2.1.14 Flexible Connectors



Flexible connectors for connecting gas utilization equipment to building gas piping shall conform to ANSI Z21.45. Flexible connectors for movable food service equipment shall conform to ANSI Z21.69.

## 2.2 VALVES

Valves shall be suitable for shutoff or isolation service and shall conform to the following:

### 2.2.1 Valves 2 Inches and Smaller

Valves 2 inches and smaller shall conform to ASME B16.33 and shall be of materials and manufacture compatible with system materials used.

## 2.3 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

Pipe hangers and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69.

## 2.4 METERS, REGULATORS AND SHUTOFF VALVES

Meters, regulators and shutoff valves shall be as specified in Section 02685 GAS DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM.

# PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.2 GAS PIPING SYSTEM

Gas piping system shall be from the point of delivery, defined as the outlet of the meter set assembly.

### 3.2.1 Protection of Materials and Components

Pipe and tube openings shall be closed with caps or plugs during installation. Equipment shall be protected from dirt, water, and chemical or mechanical damage. At the completion of all work, the entire system shall be thoroughly cleaned.

### 3.2.2 Workmanship and Defects

Piping, tubing and fittings shall be clear and free of cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading and shall be thoroughly brushed and chip-and scale-blown. Defects in piping, tubing or fittings shall not be repaired. When defective piping, tubing, or fittings are located in a system, the defective material shall be replaced.

## 3.3 PROTECTIVE COVERING

### 3.3.2 Aboveground Metallic Piping Systems

#### 3.3.2.1 Ferrous Surfaces

Shop primed surfaces shall be touched up with ferrous metal primer. Surfaces that have not been shop primed shall be solvent cleaned. Surfaces that contain loose rust, loose mill scale and other foreign substances shall be mechanically cleaned by power wire brushing and primed with ferrous metal primer. Primed surface shall be finished with two coats of exterior oil paint.

## 3.4 INSTALLATION

Installation of the gas system shall be in conformance with the manufacturer's recommendations and applicable provisions of NFPA 54, AGA-01, and as indicated. Pipe cutting shall be done without damage to the pipe. Unless otherwise authorized, cutting shall be done by an approved type of mechanical cutter. Wheel cutters shall be used where practicable. On steel pipe 6 inches and larger, an approved gas cutting and beveling machine may be used. Cutting of thermoplastic and fiberglass pipe shall be in accordance with AGA-01.

#### 3.4.1 Metallic Piping Installation

Underground piping shall be buried a minimum of 18 inches below grade. Changes in direction of piping shall be made with fittings only; mitering or notching pipe to form elbows and tees or other similar type construction will not be permitted. Branch connection may be made with either tees or forged branch outlet fittings. Branch outlet fittings shall be forged, flared for improvement of flow where attached to the run, and reinforced against external strains. Aluminum alloy pipe shall not be used in exterior locations or underground.

#### 3.4.7 Aboveground Piping

Aboveground piping shall be run as straight as practicable along the alignment indicated and with a minimum of joints. Piping shall be separately supported. Exposed horizontal piping shall not be installed farther than 6 inches from nearest parallel wall in laundry areas where clothes hanging could be attempted.

#### 3.4.8 Final Gas Connections

Unless otherwise specified herein, final connections shall be made with rigid metallic pipe and fittings. Flexible connectors may be used for final connections to gas utilization equipment. In addition to cautions listed in instructions required by ANSI standards for flexible connectors, insure that flexible connectors do not pass through equipment cabinet. Provide accessible gas shutoff valve and coupling for each gas equipment item.

### 3.5 PIPE JOINTS

Pipe joints shall be designed and installed to effectively sustain the longitudinal pull-out forces caused by contraction of the piping or superimposed loads.

#### 3.5.1 Threaded Metallic Joints

Threaded joints in metallic pipe shall have tapered threads evenly cut and shall be made with UL approved graphite joint sealing compound for gas service or tetrafluoroethylene tape applied to the male threads only. Threaded joints up to 1-1/2 inches in diameter may be made with approved tetrafluoroethylene tape. Threaded joints up to 2 inches in diameter may be made with approved joint sealing compound. After cutting and before threading, pipe shall be reamed and burrs shall be removed. Caulking of threaded joints to stop or prevent leaks shall not be permitted.

#### 3.5.2 Welded Metallic Joints

Beveling, alignment, heat treatment, and inspection of welds shall conform

to ASME B31.2. Weld defects shall be removed and repairs made to the weld, or the weld joints shall be entirely removed and rewelded. After filler metal has been removed from its original package, it shall be protected or stored so that its characteristics or welding properties are not affected adversely. Electrodes that have been wetted or have lost any of their coating shall not be used.

### 3.6 PIPE SLEEVES

Pipes passing through concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors or roofs shall be provided with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members except where indicated or approved. Each sleeve shall extend through its respective wall and shall be cut flush with each surface. Unless otherwise indicated, sleeves shall be large enough to provide a minimum clearance of 1/4 inch all around the pipe. Sleeves in bearing walls, waterproofing membrane floors, and wet areas shall be steel pipe. Sleeves in nonbearing walls or ceilings may be steel pipe, galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam, or moisture-resistant fiber or plastic. For penetrations of fire walls, fire partitions and floors which are not on grade, the annular space between the pipe and sleeve shall be sealed with firestopping material and sealant that meet the requirement of Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.8 FIRE SEAL

Penetrations of fire rated partitions, walls and floors shall be in accordance with Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING.

### 3.9 ESCUTCHEONS

Escutcheons shall be provided for all finished surfaces where gas piping passes through floors, walls, or ceilings except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms.

### 3.10 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

Drips, grading of the lines, freeze protection, and branch outlet locations shall be as shown and shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 54.

### 3.11 BUILDING STRUCTURE

Building structure shall not be weakened by the installation of any gas piping. Beams or joists shall not be cut or notched.

### 3.12 PIPING SYSTEM SUPPORTS

Gas piping systems in buildings shall be supported with pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, bands or hangers suitable for the size of piping or tubing. Gas piping system shall not be supported by other piping. Spacing of supports in gas piping and tubing installations shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 54. The selection and application of supports in gas piping and tubing installations shall conform to the requirements of MSS SP-69. In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp shall be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members shall not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for any of the individual pipes in the multiple pipe run. The clips or clamps shall be rigidly connected to the common base member. A clearance of 1/8 inch shall be provided between the

pipe and clip or clamp for all piping which may be subjected to thermal expansion.

### 3.13 ELECTRICAL BONDING AND GROUNDING

A gas piping system within a building shall be electrically continuous and bonded to a grounding electrode as required by NFPA 70.

### 3.14 SHUTOFF VALVE

Main gas shutoff valve controlling the gas piping system shall be easily accessible for operation and shall be installed as indicated, protected from physical damage, and marked with a metal tag to clearly identify the piping system controlled.

### 3.16 TESTING

Before any section of a gas piping system is put into service, it shall be carefully tested to assure that it is gastight. Prior to testing, the system shall be blown out, cleaned and cleared of all foreign material. Each joint shall be tested by means of an approved gas detector, soap and water, or an equivalent nonflammable solution. Testing shall be completed before any work is covered, enclosed, or concealed. All testing of piping systems shall be done with due regard for the safety of employees and the public during the test. Bulkheads, anchorage and bracing suitably designed to resist test pressures shall be installed if necessary. Oxygen shall not be used as a testing medium.

#### 3.16.1 Pressure Tests

Before appliances are connected, piping systems shall be filled with air or an inert gas and shall withstand a minimum pressure of 3 pounds gauge for a period of not less than 10 minutes as specified in NFPA 54 without showing any drop in pressure. Oxygen shall not be used. Pressure shall be measured with a mercury manometer, slope gauge, or an equivalent device so calibrated as to be read in increments of not greater than 0.1 pound. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the pressure tests are made.

#### 3.16.3 Test With Gas

Before turning gas under pressure into any piping, all openings from which gas can escape shall be closed. Immediately after turning on the gas, the piping system shall be checked for leakage by using a laboratory-certified gas meter, an appliance orifice, a manometer, or equivalent device. All testing shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 54. If leakage is recorded, the gas supply shall be shut off, the leak shall be repaired, and the tests repeated until all leaks have been stopped.

#### 3.16.4 Purging

After testing is completed, and before connecting any appliances, all gas piping shall be fully purged. LPG piping tested using fuel gas with appliances connected does not require purging. Piping shall not be purged into the combustion chamber of an appliance. The open end of piping systems being purged shall not discharge into confined spaces or areas where there are ignition sources unless the safety precautions recommended in NFPA 54 are followed.

#### 3.16.5 Labor, Materials and Equipment

All labor, materials and equipment necessary for conducting the testing and purging shall be furnished by the Contractor.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15565

## HEATING SYSTEM; GAS-FIRED HEATERS

03/89

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 SUBMITTALS
- 1.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.3.1 Nameplates
  - 1.3.2 Equipment Guards
  - 1.3.3 Verification of Dimensions
- 1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS
- 2.2 ELECTRICAL WORK
- 2.3 HEATERS
  - 2.3.2 Unit Heaters
- 2.4 THERMOSTATS
- 2.5 VENT PIPING
- 2.8 FACTORY FINISHES

## PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION
  - 3.1.1 Heating Equipment
  - 3.1.2 Vents
  - 3.1.3 Gas Piping
- 3.2 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING
- 3.3 Training

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 15565

## HEATING SYSTEM; GAS-FIRED HEATERS

03/89

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AMERICAN GAS ASSOCIATION LABORATORIES (AGAL)

AGAL-01 (1995; Supple Dec 95) Directory of  
Certified Appliances and Accessories

## AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI Z21.66 (1988; Z21.66a; Z21.66b) Automatic Vent  
Damper Devices for Use with Gas-Fired  
Appliances

ANSI Z83.8 (1990; Z83.8a; Z83.8b) Gas Unit Heaters

## NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1 (1993; Rev 1) Motors and Generators

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54 (1992) National Fuel Gas Code

NFPA 211 (1992) Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and  
Solid Fuel-Burning Appliances

## UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL-06 (1995) Gas and Oil Equipment Directory

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

SD-01 Data

Heating System; FIO.

Spare parts data for each different item of materials and equipment specified, after approval of the detail drawings, and not later than 2

months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. The data shall include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply.

#### SD-04 Drawings

Heating System; FIO.

Detail drawings consisting of illustrations, schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information to illustrate the requirements and operation of the system. Detail drawings for space heating equipment, controls, associated equipment, and for piping and wiring. Drawings shall show proposed layout and anchorage of equipment and appurtenances, and equipment relationship to other parts of the work including clearances for maintenance and operation.

#### SD-06 Instructions

Heating System; GA.

Six complete copies of operating instructions outlining the step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation and shutdown. The instructions shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and basic operating features. Six complete copies of maintenance instructions listing routine maintenance, possible breakdowns, repairs and troubleshooting guide. The instructions shall include simplified piping, wiring, and control diagrams for the system as installed.

#### SD-09 Reports

Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing; GA.

Test reports shall be submitted in booklet form showing all field tests performed to adjust each component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report shall indicate the final position of controls.

### 1.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

#### 1.3.1 Nameplates

Each major component of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number on a plate secured to the equipment.

#### 1.3.2 Equipment Guards

Belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts so located that any person may come in close proximity thereto shall be completely enclosed or guarded. High-temperature equipment and piping so located as to endanger personnel or create a fire hazard shall be guarded or covered with insulation of type specified for service.

#### 1.3.3 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become thoroughly familiar with all details of the



work, verify all dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

All equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be stored with protection from weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Material and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing of the products. Equipment shall essentially duplicate equipment that has been in satisfactory use at least 2 years prior to bid opening.

#### 2.2 ELECTRICAL WORK

Electrical motor driven equipment shall be provided complete with motors, motor starters, and controls. Motors shall conform to NEMA MG 1. Electrical equipment and wiring shall be in accordance with Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Electrical characteristics shall be as specified or indicated. Unless otherwise indicated motors of 1 Hp and above shall be high efficiency type. Motor starters shall be provided complete with thermal overload protection and other appurtenances necessary for the motor control specified. Each motor shall be of sufficient size to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, shall be provided. Provide an integral disconnect with all heaters. Disconnect shall comply with requirements of Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR.

#### 2.3 HEATERS

Heaters shall be equipped for and adjusted to burn natural gas. Each heater shall be provided with a gas pressure regulator that will satisfactorily limit the main gas burner supply pressure. Heaters shall have an intermittent or interrupted electrically ignited pilot or a direct electric ignition system. Safety controls shall conform to the ANSI standard specified for each heater. Mounting brackets and hardware shall be furnished by the heater manufacturer and shall be factory finished to match the supported equipment.

##### 2.3.2 Unit Heaters

Heaters shall conform to requirements of ANSI Z83.8. Heat exchangers shall be aluminum clad steel or stainless steel. Air discharge section shall be equipped with adjustable horizontal louvers. Heater fan motors shall operate at a speed not in excess of 1,550 rpm. Fan shafts shall be either directly connected to the driving motor, or indirectly connected by multiple V-belt drive. Fans in one unit shall be of the same size. Heaters shall have automatic ignition. Heaters shall have minimum steady state efficiencies of 80 percent at maximum rated capacity and 75 percent at minimum rated capacity that is provided and allowed by the controls. Heaters shall be provided with a space thermostat which controls both

unit's fan and burner.

## 2.4 THERMOSTATS

Thermostats shall be the adjustable electric or electronic type. Control wiring required to complete the space temperature control system shall be included. Thermostats shall have a 3 degree F differential and a set point range of 0 to 100 degrees F. Thermostats shall be the single stage type.

## 2.5 VENT PIPING

Vent piping shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 54.

## 2.8 FACTORY FINISHES

Equipment and component items, when fabricated from ferrous metal, shall be factory finished with the manufacturer's standard finish.

# PART 3 EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

Equipment shall be installed as indicated and in accordance with the recommendations of the equipment manufacturer and the listing agency, except as otherwise specified.

### 3.1.1 Heating Equipment

Heaters shall be installed with clearance to combustibles complying with minimum distances as determined by AGAL-01, UL-06 and as indicated on each heater approval and listing plate. Heaters shall be independently supported from the building structure as indicated and shall not rely on support from suspended ceiling systems.

### 3.1.2 Vents

Vent dampers, piping and structural penetrations shall be located as indicated. Vent damper installation shall conform to ANSI Z21.66. Vent pipes, where not connected to a masonry chimney conforming to NFPA 211, shall extend through the roof or an outside wall and shall terminate, in compliance with NFPA 54. Vents passing through waterproof membranes shall be provided with the necessary flashings to obtain waterproof installations.

### 3.1.3 Gas Piping

Gas piping shall be connected as indicated and shall comply with the applicable requirements at Section 15488 GAS PIPING SYSTEMS.

## 3.2 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

Testing, adjusting, and balancing shall be as specified in Section 15990 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS.

## 3.3 Training

The Contractor shall conduct a training course for the maintenance and

operating staff. The training period of 1 hours normal working time shall start after the system is functionally complete but before the final acceptance tests. The training shall include all of the items contained in the operating and maintenance instructions as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations. The Contracting Officer shall be given at least two weeks advance notice of such training.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15569

## WATER HEATING; GAS; UP TO 20 MBTUH

05/95

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.2.1 Standard Products
  - 1.2.2 Asbestos Prohibition
  - 1.2.3 Nameplates
  - 1.2.4 Equipment Guards
  - 1.2.5 Verification of Dimensions
  - 1.2.6 Welding
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- 1.4 MANUFACTURER'S SERVICES
- 1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 BOILERS
  - 2.1.2 Watertube Boiler
    - 2.1.2.1 Hot Water Heating Boilers
- 2.2 FUEL BURNING EQUIPMENT
  - 2.2.1 Burners
    - 2.2.1.1 Gas Fired Burners and Controls
  - 2.2.3 Draft Damper
- 2.3 COMBUSTION CONTROL EQUIPMENT
  - 2.3.2 Electrical controls
  - 2.3.3 Water Temperature Controller
  - 2.3.6 Boiler Combustion Controls and Positioners
  - 2.3.7 Combustion Safety Controls and Equipment
    - 2.3.7.2 Water Flow Interlock
- 2.4 PUMPS
  - 2.4.2 Hot Water and Boiler Circulating Pumps
    - 2.4.3.3 Rating and Testing
- 2.7 AIR HANDLING UNITS
- 2.8 FITTINGS AND ACCESSORIES
  - 2.8.4 Conventional Breeching and Stacks
  - 2.8.6 Expansion Tank
  - 2.8.7 Air Separator
  - 2.8.8 Filters
  - 2.8.12 Steel Pipe and Fittings
    - 2.8.12.1 Steel Pipe
    - 2.8.12.2 Steel Pipe Fittings
    - 2.8.12.4 Welded Fittings

- 2.8.12.5 Cast-Iron Fittings
- 2.8.12.6 Malleable-Iron Fittings
- 2.8.12.7 Unions
- 2.8.12.8 Threads
- 2.8.12.9 Grooved Mechanical fittings
- 2.8.13 Copper Tubing and Fittings
  - 2.8.13.1 Copper Tubing
  - 2.8.13.2 Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings
  - 2.8.13.3 Flared Fittings
  - 2.8.13.4 Adapters
  - 2.8.13.5 Threaded Fittings
  - 2.8.13.6 Brazing Material
  - 2.8.13.7 Brazing Flux
  - 2.8.13.8 Solder Material
  - 2.8.13.9 Solder Flux
- 2.8.14 Dielectric Unions
- 2.8.15 Flexible Pipe Connectors
- 2.8.16 Pipe Supports
- 2.8.17 Pipe Expansion
  - 2.8.17.1 Expansion Loops
- 2.8.18 Valves
  - 2.8.18.1 Gate Valves
  - 2.8.18.2 Globe Valves
  - 2.8.18.3 Check Valves
  - 2.8.18.4 Angle Valves
  - 2.8.18.5 Ball Valves
  - 2.8.18.6 Plug Valves
  - 2.8.18.7 Grooved End Valves
  - 2.8.18.8 Balancing Valves
  - 2.8.18.9 Automatic Flow Control Valves
  - 2.8.18.10 Butterfly Valves
  - 2.8.18.11 Drain valves
  - 2.8.18.12 Safety Valves
- 2.8.19 Strainers
- 2.8.20 Pressure Gauges
- 2.8.21 Thermometers
- 2.8.22 Air Vents
  - 2.8.22.1 Manual Air Vents
- 2.9 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT
  - 2.9.1 Motor Ratings
  - 2.9.2 Motor Controls
- 2.10 INSULATION
- 2.11 TOOLS
- 2.13 BOILER WATER TREATMENT
  - 2.13.2 Boiler Water Limits
  - 2.13.10 Chemical Shot Feeder
  - 2.13.11 Chemical Piping
  - 2.13.12 Test Kits

### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 ERECTION OF BOILER AND AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT
- 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION
  - 3.2.1 Cold Water Connections
  - 3.2.2 Hot Water Piping and Fittings
  - 3.2.3 Vent Piping and Fittings
  - 3.2.4 Gauge Piping
  - 3.2.7 Joints
    - 3.2.7.1 Threaded Joints

- 3.2.7.2 Welded Joints
- 3.2.7.3 Grooved Mechanical Joints
- 3.2.7.4 Flared and Brazed Copper Pipe and Tubing
- 3.2.7.5 Soldered Joints
- 3.2.7.6 Copper Tube Extracted Joint
- 3.2.8 Flanges and Unions
- 3.2.9 Branch Connections
  - 3.2.9.1 Branch Connections for Hot Water Systems
  - 3.2.9.2 Branch Connections for Steam Systems
- 3.2.13 Flared, Brazed, and Soldered Copper Pipe and Tubing
- 3.2.14 Copper Tube Extracted Joint
- 3.2.15 Supports
  - 3.2.15.1 General
  - 3.2.15.3 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports
- 3.2.16 Anchors
- 3.2.17 Valves
- 3.2.18 Pipe Sleeves
  - 3.2.18.4 Fire Seal
- 3.2.19 Balancing Valves
- 3.2.20 Thermometer Wells
- 3.2.21 Air Vents
- 3.2.22 Escutcheons
- 3.2.23 Drains
- 3.2.24 Strainer Blow-Down Piping
- 3.3 GAS FUEL SYSTEM
- 3.5 FIELD PAINTING
- 3.6 HEATING SYSTEM TESTS
  - 3.6.1 Water Treatment Testing
    - 3.6.1.2 Boiler/Piping Test
- 3.7 CLEANING
  - 3.7.1 Boilers and Piping
  - 3.7.2 Heating Units
- 3.8 FUEL SYSTEM TESTS
  - 3.8.2 Gas System Test
- 3.9 FIELD TRAINING

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 15569

WATER HEATING; GAS; UP TO 20 MBTUH  
**05/95**

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

ASTM A 47	(1990) Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings
ASTM A 53	(1995a) Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless
ASTM A 106	(1994) Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service
ASTM A 167	(1996) Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip
ASTM A 183	(1983, R 1990) Carbon Steel Track Bolts and Nuts
ASTM A 234	(1996) Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and Elevated Temperatures
ASTM A 536	(1984; R 1993) Ductile Iron Castings
ASTM B 32	(1995a) Solder Metal
ASTM B 62	(1993) Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
ASTM B 75	(1993) Seamless Copper Tube
ASTM B 88	(1996) Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B 813	(1993) Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering Applications of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube
ASTM B 828	(1992) Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper-Alloy Tube and Fittings
ASTM D 2000	(1990; R 1994) Rubber Products in

## Automotive Applications

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B1.20.1	(1983; R 1992) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.3	(1992) Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings
ASME B16.4	(1992) Gray Iron Threaded Fittings
ASME B16.9	(1993) Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
ASME B16.11	(1991) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.15	(1985; R 1994) Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250
ASME B16.18	(1984; R 1994) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.22	(1989) Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.26	(1988) Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
ASME B16.34	(1988) Valves - Flanged, Threaded and Welding End
ASME B16.39	(1986; R 1994) Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions Classes 150, 250, and 300
ASME B31.1	(1995) Power Piping
ASME B31.5	(1992; B31.5a) Refrigeration Piping
ASME B40.1	(1991) Gauges - Pressure Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element
ASME BPV IV	(1995; Addenda Dec 1995) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; Section IV, Heating Boilers
ASME BPV VIII Div 1	(1995; Addenda Dec 1995) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; Section VIII, Pressure Vessels Division 1 - Basic Coverage
ASME BPV IX	(1995; Addenda Dec 1995) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; Section IX, Welding and Brazing Qualifications
ASME CSD-1	(1992; CSD-1a; CSD-1b) Controls and Safety Devices for Automatically Fired Boilers

## AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)



AWWA C606 (1987) Grooved and Shouldered Joints

AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)

AWS A5.8 (1992) Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding

AWS B2.2 (1991) Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification

COMMERCIAL ITEM DESCRIPTIONS (CID)

CID A-A-1419 (Rev D) Filter Element, Air Conditioning (Viscous-Impingement and Dry Types, Replaceable)

COPPER DEVELOPMENT ASSOCIATION (CDA)

CDA 404/0 RR (1993) Copper Tube for Plumbing, Heating, Air Conditioning and Refrigeration

HYDRONICS INSTITUTE (HYI)

HYI-01 (1996) I=B=R Ratings for Boilers, Baseboard Radiation and Finned Tube (Commercial) Radiation

MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)

MSS SP-25 (1993) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions

MSS SP-58 (1993) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture

MSS SP-69 (1996) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application

MSS SP-70 (1990) Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-71 (1990) Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanges and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-72 (1992) Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-welding Ends for General Service

MSS SP-73 (1991) Brazing Joints for Copper and Copper Alloy Pressure Fittings

MSS SP-78 (1987; R 1992) Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-80 (1987) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves

MSS SP-85 (1994) Cast Iron Globe & Angle Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends

MSS SP-110 (1992) Ball Valves Threaded, Socket  
Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared  
Ends

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 54 (1992) National Fuel Gas Code

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL-06 (1996) Gas and Oil Equipment Directory

## 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

### 1.2.1 Standard Products

Materials and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products and shall essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Equipment shall be supported by a service organization that is, in the opinion of the Contracting Officer, reasonably convenient to the site.

### 1.2.2 Asbestos Prohibition

Asbestos and asbestos-containing products shall not be used.

### 1.2.3 Nameplates

Each major component of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number on a plate secured to the equipment. Each pressure vessel shall have an approved ASME stamp.

### 1.2.4 Equipment Guards

Belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting setscrews, keys, and other rotating parts exposed to personnel contact shall be fully enclosed or guarded in accordance with OSHA requirements. High temperature equipment and piping exposed to contact by personnel or where it creates a potential fire hazard shall be properly guarded or covered with insulation of a type specified. Catwalks, operating platforms, ladders, and guardrails shall be provided where shown and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 05500 MISCELLANEOUS METAL.

### 1.2.5 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become familiar with details of the work, verify dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work or ordering any materials.

### 1.2.6 Welding

Boilers and piping shall be welded and brazed in accordance with qualified procedures using performance-qualified welders and welding operators. Procedures and welders shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPV IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. The Contracting Officer shall be notified 24 hours in advance of tests, and

the tests shall be performed at the work site if practical. The welder or welding operator shall apply his assigned symbol near each weld he makes as a permanent record.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-01 Data

Manufacturer's Catalog Data; GA.

Manufacturer's catalog data shall be included with the detail drawings for the following items:

- Boilers
- Pumps
- Fittings and Accessories
- Water Treatment System

The data shall show model, size, options, etc., that are intended for consideration. Data submitted shall be adequate to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements.

Spare Parts Data; FIO.

Spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment, after approval of the detail drawings and no later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. The data shall include a complete list of parts and supplies, with current unit prices and source of supply, and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced after 1 and 3 years of service.

Water Treatment Plan; GA.

Six complete copies of the proposed water treatment plan. The plan shall include a layout, control scheme, a list of the existing water conditions including the items listed in paragraph BOILER WATER TREATMENT, a list of all chemicals, the proportion of chemicals to be added, the final treated water conditions, and a description of environmental concerns for handling the chemicals.

Heating and Fuel Systems Test Procedures; FIO.

Proposed test procedures for the heating system tests and fuel system tests, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing.

Welding Procedures; FIO.

A copy of qualified welding procedures, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of welding operations.

Qualification; FIO.

A statement from the firms proposed to prepare submittals and perform installation and testing, demonstrating successful completion of similar services of at least five projects of similar size or scope, at least 2

weeks prior to the submittal of any other item required by this section.

Welding Qualification; FIO.

A list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of welding operations.

#### SD-04 Drawings

Heating System; GA.

Detail drawings consisting of equipment layout including installation details and electrical connection diagrams; combustion and safety control diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications; and piping layout showing the location of guides and anchors, the load imposed on each support or anchor, and typical support details. Drawings shall include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit and shall show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance.

#### SD-06 Instructions

Posted Instructions; GA.

System layout diagrams that show the layout of equipment, piping, and ductwork and typed condensed operation manuals explaining preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal, safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system, framed under glass or laminated plastic, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing. After approval, these items shall be posted where directed.

#### SD-07 Schedules

Tests; FIO.

Proposed test schedules for the heating system and fuel system tests, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing.

#### SD-09 Reports

Heating System and Fuel System Tests; FIO.

Test reports for the heating system tests and the fuel system test, upon completion of testing complete with results.

Water Treatment Tests; FIO.

(1) The water quality test report shall identify the chemical composition of the boiler water. The report shall include a comparison of the condition of the boiler water with the manufacturer's recommended conditions. Any required corrective action shall be documented within the report.

(2) A test report shall identify the condition of the boiler at the completion of 1 year of service. The report shall include a

comparison of the condition of the boiler with the manufacturer's recommended operating conditions.

#### SD-13 Certificates

Boiler Emissions; FIO.

Written certification by the boiler manufacturer that each boiler furnished complies with Federal, state, and local regulations for emissions. The certification shall also include a description of applicable emission regulations. If any boiler is exempt from the emission regulations, the certification shall indicate the reason for the exemption.

#### SD-19 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Heating System; FIO.

Six complete manuals listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, shutdown, and routine maintenance, at least 2 weeks prior to field training. The manuals shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, simplified wiring and control diagrams, troubleshooting guide, and recommended service organization (including address and telephone number) for each item of equipment. Each service organization shall be capable of providing 4 hour onsite response to a service call on an emergency basis.

Water Treatment System; FIO.

Six complete copies of operating and maintenance manuals for the step-by-step water treatment procedures, including procedures for testing the water quality.

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER'S SERVICES

Services of a manufacturer's representative who is experienced in the installation, adjustment, and operation of the equipment specified shall be provided. The representative shall supervise the installing, adjusting, and testing of the equipment.

### 1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be protected from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BOILERS

Each boiler shall have the output capacity in British thermal units per hour (Btuh) as indicated when fired with the specified fuels. The boiler shall be furnished complete with the gas burning equipment, boiler fittings and trim, automatic controls, natural draft/atmospheric burner, electrical wiring, insulation, piping connections, and protective jacket. The boiler shall be completely assembled and tested at the manufacturer's plant. Boiler auxiliaries including fans, motors, drives, and similar equipment shall be provided with at least 10 percent excess capacity to allow for field variations in settings and to compensate for any unforeseen increases in pressure losses in appurtenant piping and ductwork. However, the boiler

safety devices shall not be sized for a 10 percent excess capacity. The boiler and its accessories shall be designed and installed to permit ready accessibility for operation, maintenance, and service. Boilers shall be designed, constructed, and equipped in accordance with ASME BPV IV. Each boiler shall be of the watertube type and designed for water service as specified herein. The boiler capacity shall be based on the ratings shown in HYI-01 or as certified by the American Boiler Manufacturers Association, or American Gas Association.

#### 2.1.2 Watertube Boiler

Boiler shall be self-contained, packaged type, complete with all accessories, mounted on a structural steel base. The heat input rate for finned tube designs shall not be greater than 12,000 Btu/hr per square ft based on internal heater area. The heat input rate for other boilers shall not be greater than 6,700 Btu/hr per square ft of fireside heating surface.

##### 2.1.2.1 Hot Water Heating Boilers

The hot water heating boiler shall be capable of operating at the specified maximum continuous capacity without damage or deterioration to the boiler, its setting, firing equipment, or auxiliaries. The rated capacity shall be the capacity at which the boiler will operate continuously while maintaining at least the specified minimum efficiency. The boiler design conditions shall be as follows:

- a. Boiler design pressure 160 psig.
- b. Operating pressure at boiler outlet 80 psig.
- c. Hot water temperature 180 degrees F.
- d. Temperature differential between boiler discharge and system return 20 degrees F.
- e. Water pressure drop 10 psig.
- f. Outdoor ambient air temperature 100 degrees F (max), 0 degrees F (min).
- g. Site elevation 95 feet.
- h. Maximum continuous capacity 726,000 Btuh output.
- i. Boilers shall have an Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency of at least 80 percent..

#### 2.2 FUEL BURNING EQUIPMENT

Boiler shall be designed to burn gas. Each boiler shall comply with Federal, state, and local emission regulations.

##### 2.2.1 Burners

###### 2.2.1.1 Gas Fired Burners and Controls

Burners shall be UL approved natural draft/atmospheric burners. Burner shall be provided complete with fuel supply system in conformance with the following safety codes or standards:

### 2.2.3 Draft Damper

Boilers shall be provided with manual or automatic dampers, draft hoods, or barometric dampers as recommended by the boiler manufacturer to maintain proper draft in the boiler. Draft damper shall be provided in a convenient and accessible location in the flue gas outlet from the boiler. Automatic damper shall be arranged for automatic operation as recommended by the boiler manufacturer.

## 2.3 COMBUSTION CONTROL EQUIPMENT

Combustion control equipment shall be provided as a system by a single manufacturer. Field installed automatic combustion control system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and under the direct supervision of a representative of the control manufacturer. The boiler water temperature shall be controlled by a water temperature controller. The equipment shall operate electrically. If recording instruments are provided, a 1 year supply of ink and 400 blank charts for each recorder shall be furnished.

### 2.3.2 Electrical controls

Electrical control devices shall be rated at 120 volts and shall be connected as specified in Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR.

### 2.3.3 Water Temperature Controller

The controller shall be of sturdy construction and shall be protected against dust and dampness. The thermostatic element shall be inserted in a separable socket installed where recommended by the manufacturer. Coordinate with section 15951 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC.

### 2.3.6 Boiler Combustion Controls and Positioners

- a. Gas boiler units shall be provided with fixed rate (on-off) combustion controls with gas pilot or spark ignition.
- b. Fixed rate on-off controls for boilers with capacities up to 600 kW (2,000,000 Btuh) shall use a water temperature controller in a temperature well in direct contact with the water.

### 2.3.7 Combustion Safety Controls and Equipment

Control systems and safety devices for automatically fired boilers shall conform to ASME CSD-1. Electrical combustion and safety controls shall be rated at 120 volts, single phase, 60 Hz and shall be connected as specified in Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. A 4 inch diameter alarm bell shall be provided and shall be located where indicated or directed. The alarm bell shall ring when the boiler is shut down by any safety control or interlock. Indicating lights shall be provided on the control panel. A red light shall indicate flame failure, and a green light shall indicate that the main fuel valve is open. The following shutdown conditions shall require a manual reset before the boiler can automatically recycle:

- a. Flame failure.
- b. Failure to establish pilot flame.

- c. Failure to establish main flame.
- d. Cutoff.
- e. High temperature cutoff.

#### 2.3.7.2 Water Flow Interlock

Hot water boiler limit controls shall be provided to include protection for low boiler water flow and high boiler water temperature. The limit controls shall be interlocked with the combustion control system to effect boiler alarm and shutdown. The controls shall not allow boiler startup unless hot water flow is proven.

### 2.4 PUMPS

#### 2.4.2 Hot Water and Boiler Circulating Pumps

Circulating pumps for hot water shall be electrically driven single-stage centrifugal type and have a capacity not less than indicated. Boiler circulating pumps shall be supported by the piping on which installed and shall be closed-coupled shaft or flexible-coupled shaft. The motor shall have sufficient power for the service required, shall be of a type approved by the manufacturer of the pump, shall be suitable for the available electric service, and shall conform to the requirements of paragraph ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT.

##### 2.4.3.3 Rating and Testing

The pump manufacturer shall submit a certified test report covering the actual test of the unit and certifying that the equipment complies with the indicated requirements.

### 2.7 AIR HANDLING UNITS

Air handling units and associated equipment shall be in accordance with Section 15895 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM.

### 2.8 FITTINGS AND ACCESSORIES

Boiler fittings and accessories shall be installed with each boiler in accordance with ASME BPV IV, unless otherwise specified.

#### 2.8.4 Conventional Breeching and Stacks

#### 2.8.6 Expansion Tank

The hot water pressurization system shall include a diaphragm-type expansion tank which will accommodate the expanded water of the system generated within the normal operating temperature range, limiting the pressure increase at all components in the system to the maximum allowable pressure at those components. The only air in the system shall be the permanent sealed-in air cushion contained in the diaphragm-type tank. The sizes shall be as indicated. The expansion tank shall be welded steel, constructed, tested, and stamped in accordance with ASME BPV VIII Div 1 for a working pressure of 125 psi and precharged to the minimum operating pressure. The tank's air chamber shall be fitted with an air charging valve and pressure gauge. The tank shall be supported by steel legs or bases for vertical installation or steel saddles for horizontal installations. The tank shall have lifting rings and a drain connection.



All components shall be suitable for a maximum operating temperature of 250 degrees F.

#### 2.8.7 Air Separator

External air separation tank shall be steel, constructed, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME BPV VIII Div 1 for a working pressure of 125 psi. The capacity of the air separation tank indicated is minimum.

#### 2.8.8 Filters

Filters shall conform to ASTM F 872 or CID A-A-1419.

#### 2.8.12 Steel Pipe and Fittings

##### 2.8.12.1 Steel Pipe

Steel pipe shall be ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade A or B, black steel, standard weight.

##### 2.8.12.2 Steel Pipe Fittings

Fittings shall have the manufacturer's trademark affixed in accordance with MSS SP-25 so as to permanently identify the manufacturer.

##### 2.8.12.4 Welded Fittings

Welded fittings shall conform to ASTM A 234 with WPA marking. Buttwelded fittings shall conform to ASME B16.9, and socket-welded fittings shall conform to ASME B16.11.

##### 2.8.12.5 Cast-Iron Fittings

Fittings shall be ASME B16.4, Class 125, type required to match connecting piping.

##### 2.8.12.6 Malleable-Iron Fittings

Fittings shall be ASME B16.3, type as required to match connecting piping.

##### 2.8.12.7 Unions

Unions shall be ASME B16.39, Class 150.

##### 2.8.12.8 Threads

Pipe threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1.

##### 2.8.12.9 Grooved Mechanical fittings

Joints and fittings shall be designed for not less than 125 psig service and shall be the product of the same manufacturer. Fitting and coupling houses shall be malleable iron conforming to ASTM A 47, Grade 32510; ductile iron conforming to ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12; or steel conforming to ASTM A 106, Grade B or ASTM A 53. Gaskets shall be molded synthetic rubber with central cavity, pressure responsive configuration and shall conform to ASTM D 2000, Grade No. 2CA615A15B44F17Z for circulating medium up to 230 degrees F or Grade N0. M3BA610A15B44Z for circulating medium up to 200 degrees F. Grooved joints shall conform to AWWA C606. Coupling

nuts and bolts shall be steel and shall conform to ASTM A 183.

#### 2.8.13 Copper Tubing and Fittings

##### 2.8.13.1 Copper Tubing

Tubing shall be ASTM B 88, Type K or L. Adapters for copper tubing shall be brass or bronze for brazed fittings.

##### 2.8.13.2 Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings

Wrought copper and bronze solder-joint pressure fittings shall conform to ASME B16.22 and ASTM B 75. Cast copper alloy solder-joint pressure fittings shall conform to ASME B16.18 and ASTM B 828.

##### 2.8.13.3 Flared Fittings

Cast copper alloy fittings for flared copper tube shall conform to ASME B16.26 and ASTM B 62.

##### 2.8.13.4 Adapters

Adapters may be used for connecting tubing to flanges and to threaded ends of valves and equipment. Extracted brazed tee joints produced with an acceptable tool and installed as recommended by the manufacturer may be used.

##### 2.8.13.5 Threaded Fittings

Cast bronze threaded fittings shall conform to ASME B16.15.

##### 2.8.13.6 Brazing Material

Brazing material shall conform to AWS A5.8.

##### 2.8.13.7 Brazing Flux

Flux shall be in paste or liquid form appropriate for use with brazing material. Flux shall be as follows: lead-free; have a 100 percent flushable residue; contain slightly acidic reagents; contain potassium borides, and contain fluorides. Silver brazing materials shall be in accordance with AWS A5.8.

##### 2.8.13.8 Solder Material

Solder metal shall conform to ASTM B 32 95-5 tin-antimony.

##### 2.8.13.9 Solder Flux

Flux shall be liquid form, non-corrosive, and conform to ASTM B 813, Standard Test 1.

#### 2.8.14 Dielectric Unions

Dielectric unions shall have metal connections on both ends. The ends shall be threaded, flanged, or brazed to match adjacent piping. Metal parts of the union shall be separated so that the electrical current is below 1 percent of the galvanic current which would exist upon metal-to-metal contact.

### 2.8.15 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Flexible pipe connectors shall be designed for 125 psi or 150 psi service.

Connectors shall be installed where indicated. The flexible section shall be constructed of rubber, tetrafluoroethylene resin, or corrosion-resisting steel, bronze, monel, or galvanized steel. Materials used and the configuration shall be suitable for the pressure, vacuum, and temperature medium. The flexible section shall be suitable for service intended and may have threaded, welded, soldered, flanged, or socket ends. Flanged assemblies shall be equipped with limit bolts to restrict maximum travel to the manufacturer's standard limits. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of the flexible connectors shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the service intended. Internal sleeves or liners, compatible with circulating medium, shall be provided when recommended by the manufacturer.

Covers to protect the bellows shall be provided where indicated.

### 2.8.16 Pipe Supports

Pipe supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69.

### 2.8.17 Pipe Expansion

#### 2.8.17.1 Expansion Loops

Expansion loops and offsets shall provide adequate expansion of the main straight runs of the system within the stress limits specified in ASME B31.1.

The loops and offsets shall be cold-sprung and installed where indicated. Pipe guides and anchors shall be provided as indicated.

### 2.8.18 Valves

Valves shall be Class 125 and shall be suitable for the application. Grooved ends per AWWA C606 may be used for water service only. Valves in nonboiler external piping shall meet the material, fabrication and operating requirements of ASME B31.1. The connection type of all valves shall match the same type of connection required for the piping on which installed.

#### 2.8.18.1 Gate Valves

Gate valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall conform to MSS SP-80 bronze rising stem, threaded, solder, or flanged ends. Gate valves 3 inches and larger shall conform to MSS SP-70 cast iron bronze trim, outside screw and yoke, flanged, or threaded ends.

#### 2.8.18.2 Globe Valves

Globe valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall conform to MSS SP-80, bronze, threaded, soldered, or flanged ends. Globe valves 3 inches and larger shall conform to MSS SP-85, cast iron, bronze trim, flanged, or threaded ends.

#### 2.8.18.3 Check Valves

Check valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall conform to MSS SP-80, bronze, threaded, soldered, or flanged ends. Check valves 3 inches and larger shall conform to MSS SP-71, cast iron, bronze trim, flanged, or threaded ends.

#### 2.8.18.4 Angle Valves

Angle valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall conform to MSS SP-80 bronze, threaded, soldered, or flanged ends. Angle valves 3 inches and larger shall conform to MSS SP-85, cast iron, bronze trim, flanged, or threaded ends.

#### 2.8.18.5 Ball Valves

Ball valves 1/2 inch and larger shall conform to MSS SP-72 or MSS SP-110, ductile iron or bronze, threaded, soldered, or flanged ends.

#### 2.8.18.6 Plug Valves

Plug valves 2 in. and larger shall conform to MSS SP-78. Plug valves smaller than 2 in. shall conform to ASME B16.34.

#### 2.8.18.7 Grooved End Valves

Valves with grooved ends per AWWA C606 may be used if the valve manufacturer certifies that their performance meets the requirements of the standards indicated for each type of valve.

#### 2.8.18.8 Balancing Valves

Balancing valves shall have meter connections with positive shutoff valves. An integral pointer shall register the degree of valve opening. Valves shall be calibrated so that flow rate can be determined when valve opening in degrees and pressure differential across valve is known. Each balancing valve shall be constructed with internal seals to prevent leakage and shall be supplied with preformed insulation. Valves shall be suitable for 250 degrees F temperature and working pressure of the pipe in which installed. Valve bodies shall be provided with tapped openings and pipe extensions with shutoff valves outside of pipe insulation. The pipe extensions shall be provided with quick connecting hose fittings for a portable meter to measure the pressure differential. One portable differential meter shall be furnished. The meter suitable for the operating pressure specified shall be complete with hoses, vent, and shutoff valves, and carrying case. In lieu of the balancing valve with integral metering connections, a ball valve or plug valve with a separately installed orifice plate or venturi tube may be used for balancing.

#### 2.8.18.9 Automatic Flow Control Valves

In lieu of the specified balancing valves, automatic flow control valves may be provided to maintain constant flow and shall be designed to be sensitive to pressure differential across the valve to provide the required opening. Valves shall be selected for the flow required and provided with a permanent nameplate or tag carrying a permanent record of the factory-determined flow rate and flow control pressure levels. Valves shall control the flow within 5 percent of the tag rating. Valves shall be suitable for the maximum operating pressure of 125 psi or 150 percent of the system operating pressure, whichever is greater. Where the available system pressure is not adequate to provide the minimum pressure differential that still allows flow control, the system pump head capability shall be increased. Valves shall be suitable for 250 degrees F temperature service. Valve materials shall be same as specified for the heating system check, globe, angle, and gate valves. Valve operator shall

be the electric motor type or pneumatic type as applicable. Valve operator shall be capable of positive shutoff against the system pump head. Valve bodies shall be provided with tapped openings and pipe extensions with shutoff valves outside of pipe insulation. The pipe extensions shall be provided with quick connecting hose fittings for a portable meter to measure the pressure differential across the automatic flow control valve. A portable meter shall be provided with accessory kit as recommended for the project by the automatic valve manufacturer.

#### 2.8.18.10 Butterfly Valves

Butterfly valves shall be 2-flange type or lug wafer type, and shall be bubbletight at 150 psig. Valve bodies shall be cast iron, malleable iron, or steel. ASTM A 167, Type 404 or Type 316, corrosion resisting steel stems, bronze, or corrosion resisting steel discs, and synthetic rubber seats shall be provided. Valves smaller than 8 inches shall have throttling handles with a minimum of seven locking positions. Valves 8 inches and larger shall have totally enclosed manual gear operators with adjustable balance return stops and position indicators. Valves in insulated lines shall have extended neck to accommodate insulation thickness.

#### 2.8.18.11 Drain valves

Drain valves shall be provided at each drain point of blowdown as recommended by the boiler manufacturer. Piping shall conform to ASME BPV IV and ASTM A 53.

#### 2.8.18.12 Safety Valves

Safety valves shall have steel bodies and shall be equipped with corrosion-resistant trim and valve seats. The valves shall be properly guided and shall be positive closing so that no leakage can occur. Adjustment of the desired back-pressure shall cover the range between 2 and 10 psig. The adjustment shall be made externally, and any shafts extending through the valve body shall be provided with adjustable stuffing boxes having renewable packing. Boiler safety valves of proper size and of the required number, in accordance with ASME BPV IV, shall be installed so that the discharge will be through piping extended to floor drain.

#### 2.8.19 Strainers

Basket and "Y" type strainers shall be the same size as the pipelines in which they are installed. The strainer bodies shall be heavy and durable, fabricated of cast iron, and shall have bottoms drilled and tapped with a gate valve attached for blowdown purposes. Strainers shall be designed for 125 psig service and 180 degrees F. The bodies shall have arrows clearly cast on the sides indicating the direction of flow. Each strainer shall be equipped with an easily removable cover and sediment screen. The screen shall be made of 22 gauge monel or corrosion-resistant steel with small perforations numbering not less than 400 per square inch to provide a net free area through the basket of at least 3.30 times that of the entering pipe. The flow shall be into the screen and out through the perforations.

#### 2.8.20 Pressure Gauges

Gauges shall conform to ASME B40.1 and shall be provided with throttling type needle valve or a pulsation dampener and shutoff valve. Minimum dial size shall be 3-1/2 inches. A pressure gauge shall be provided for each

boiler in a visible location on the boiler.

#### 2.8.21 Thermometers

Thermometers shall be provided with wells and separable corrosion-resistant steel sockets. Thermometers for inlet water and outlet water for each hot water boiler shall be provided in a visible location on the boiler.

Thermometers shall have brass, malleable iron, or aluminum alloy case and frame, clear protective face, permanently stabilized glass tube with indicating-fluid column, white face, black numbers, and a minimum 9 inch scale.

#### 2.8.22 Air Vents

##### 2.8.22.1 Manual Air Vents

Manual air vents shall be brass or bronze valves or cocks suitable for the pressure rating of the piping system and furnished with threaded plugs or caps.

### 2.9 ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

Electric motor-driven equipment shall be provided complete with motors, motor starters, and necessary control devices. Electrical equipment, motor control devices, motor efficiencies and wiring shall be as specified in Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Motors which are not an integral part of a packaged boiler shall be rated for standard efficiency service. Motors which are an integral part of the packaged boiler shall be the highest efficiency available by the manufacturer of the packaged boiler. Motor starters shall be provided complete with properly sized thermal overload protections and other appurtenances necessary for the motor control specified. Starters shall be furnished in general purpose enclosures. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices but not shown shall be provided.

#### 2.9.1 Motor Ratings

Motors shall be suitable for the voltage and frequency provided. Motors 1/2 hp and larger shall be three-phase, unless otherwise indicated. Motors shall be of sufficient capacity to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating on the motor.

#### 2.9.2 Motor Controls

Motor controllers shall be provided complete with properly sized thermal overload protection. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any wiring required to such devices shall be provided. Where two-speed or variable-speed motors are indicated, solid-state variable-speed controllers may be provided to accomplish the same function. Solid state variable speed controllers shall be utilized for fractional through 10 hp ratings. Adjustable frequency drives shall be used for larger motors.

### 2.10 INSULATION

Shop and field-applied insulation shall be as specified in Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

## 2.11 TOOLS

Special tools shall be furnished. Special tools shall include uncommon tools necessary for the operation and maintenance of boilers, burners, pumps, fans, controls, meters, special piping systems, and other equipment.

Small hand tools shall be furnished within a suitable cabinet, mounted where directed.

## 2.13 BOILER WATER TREATMENT

The water treatment system shall be capable of feeding chemicals and bleeding the system to prevent corrosion and scale within the boiler and piping distribution system. The water shall be treated to maintain the conditions recommended by the boiler manufacturer. Chemicals shall meet required federal, state, and local environmental regulations for the treatment of boilers and discharge to the sanitary sewer. The services of a company regularly engaged in the treatment of boilers shall be used to determine the correct chemicals and concentrations required for water treatment. The company shall maintain the chemical treatment and provide all chemicals required for a period of 1 year from the date of occupancy. Filming amines and proprietary chemicals shall not be used. The water treatment chemicals shall remain stable throughout the operating temperature range of the system and shall be compatible with pump seals and other elements of the system.

### 2.13.2 Boiler Water Limits

The boiler manufacturer shall be consulted for the determination of the boiler water chemical composition limits. The boiler water limits shall be as follows unless dictated differently by the boiler manufacturer's recommendations:

Hardness	Less than 2 ppm
pH	9.3 - 9.9

### 2.13.10 Chemical Shot Feeder

A shot feeder shall be provided. Size and capacity of feeder shall be based upon local requirements and water analysis. The feeder shall be furnished with an air vent, gauge glass, funnel, valves, fittings, and piping.

### 2.13.11 Chemical Piping

The piping and fittings shall be constructed of steel.

### 2.13.12 Test Kits

One test kit of each type required to determine the water quality as outlined within the operation and maintenance manuals shall be provided.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 ERECTION OF BOILER AND AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT

Boiler and auxiliary equipment shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

Unless otherwise specified, nonboiler external pipe and fittings shall conform to the requirements of ASME B31.1. Pipe installed shall be cut accurately to suit field conditions, shall be installed without springing or forcing, and shall properly clear windows, doors, and other openings. Cutting or other weakening of the building structure to facilitate piping installation will not be permitted. Pipes shall be free of burrs, oil, grease and other foreign material and shall be installed to permit free expansion and contraction without damaging the building structure, pipe, pipe joints, or pipe supports. Changes in direction shall be made with fittings, except that bending of pipe 4 inches and smaller will be permitted provided a pipe bender is used and wide sweep bends are formed. The centerline radius of bends shall not be less than 6 diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be accepted. Vent pipes shall be carried through the roof as directed and shall be properly flashed. Unless otherwise indicated, horizontal supply mains shall pitch down in the direction of flow with a grade of not less than 1 inch in 40 feet. Open ends of pipelines and equipment shall be properly capped or plugged during installation to keep dirt or other foreign materials out of the systems. Pipe not otherwise specified shall be uncoated. Unless otherwise specified or shown, final connections to equipment shall be made with malleable-iron unions for steel pipe 2-1/2 inches or less in diameter and with flanges for pipe 3 inches or more in diameter. Unions for copper pipe or tubing shall be brass or bronze. Reducing fittings shall be used for changes in pipe sizes. In horizontal hot water lines, reducing fittings shall be eccentric type to maintain the top of the lines at the same level to prevent air binding.

#### 3.2.1 Cold Water Connections

Cold water fill connections shall be made to the water supply system as indicated. Necessary pipe, fittings, and valves required for water connections between the boiler and cold water main shall be provided as shown. The pressure regulating valve shall be of a type that will not stick or allow pressure to build up on the low side. The valve shall be set to maintain a terminal pressure of approximately 5 psi in excess of the static head on the system and shall operate within a 2 psi tolerance regardless of cold water supply piping pressure and without objectionable noise under any condition of operation. Provide a backflow preventer.

#### 3.2.2 Hot Water Piping and Fittings

Pipe shall be black steel or copper tubing. Fittings for steel piping shall be black malleable iron or cast iron to suit piping. Fittings adjacent to valves shall suit valve material.

#### 3.2.3 Vent Piping and Fittings

Vent piping shall be black steel. Fittings shall be black malleable iron or cast iron to suit piping.

#### 3.2.4 Gauge Piping

Piping shall be copper tubing.

#### 3.2.7 Joints



Joints between sections of steel pipe and between steel pipe and fittings shall be threaded, grooved, flanged or welded as indicated or specified. Except as otherwise specified, fittings 1 inch and smaller shall be threaded; fittings 1-1/4 inches and up to but not including 3 inches shall be either threaded, grooved, or welded; and fittings 3 inches and larger shall be either flanged, grooved, or welded. Pipe and fittings 1-1/4 inches and larger installed in inaccessible conduit or trenches beneath concrete floor slabs shall be welded. Connections to equipment shall be made with black malleable-iron unions for pipe 2-1/2 inches or smaller in diameter and with flanges for pipe 3 inches or larger in diameter. Joints between sections of copper tubing or pipe shall be flared, soldered, or brazed.

#### 3.2.7.1 Threaded Joints

Threaded joints shall be made with tapered threads properly cut and shall be made perfectly tight with a stiff mixture of graphite and oil or with polytetrafluoroethylene tape applied to the male threads only and in no case to the fittings.

#### 3.2.7.2 Welded Joints

Welded joints shall be in accordance with paragraph GENERAL REQUIREMENTS unless otherwise specified. Changes in direction of piping shall be made with welding fittings only; mitering or notching pipe to form elbows and tees or other similar type construction will not be permitted. Branch connections may be made with either welding tees or forged branch outlet fittings, either being acceptable without size limitation. Branch outlet fittings, where used, shall be forged, flared for improved flow characteristics where attached to the run, reinforced against external strains, and designed to withstand full pipe bursting strength. Socket weld joints shall be assembled so that the space between the end of the pipe and the bottom of the socket is no less than 1/16 inch and no more than 1/8 inch.

#### 3.2.7.3 Grooved Mechanical Joints

Grooved mechanical joints may be provided for hot water systems in lieu of unions, welded, flanged, or screwed piping connections in low temperature hot water systems where the temperature of the circulating medium does not exceed 230 degrees F. Grooves shall be prepared according to the coupling manufacturer's instructions. Pipe and groove dimensions shall comply with the tolerances specified by the coupling manufacturer. The diameter of grooves made in the field shall be measured using a "go/no-go" gauge, vernier or dial caliper, or narrow-land micrometer. Groove width and dimension of groove from end of pipe shall be measured and recorded for each change in grooving tool setup to verify compliance with coupling manufacturer's tolerances. Grooved joints shall not be used in concealed locations. Mechanical joints shall use rigid mechanical pipe couplings, except at equipment connections. At equipment connections, flexible couplings may be used. Coupling shall be of the bolted type for use with grooved end pipes, fittings, valves, and strainers. Couplings shall be self-centering and shall engage in a watertight couple.

#### 3.2.7.4 Flared and Brazed Copper Pipe and Tubing

Tubing shall be cut square, and burrs shall be removed. Both inside of fittings and outside of tubing shall be cleaned thoroughly with sand cloth or steel wire brush before brazing. Annealing of fittings and hard-drawn

tubing shall not occur when making connections. Installation shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Mitering of joints for elbows and notching of straight runs of pipe for tees will not be permitted. Brazed joints shall be made in conformance with AWS B2.2, MSS SP-73, and CDA 404/0 RR with flux. Copper-to-copper joints shall include the use of copper-phosphorous or copper-phosphorous-silver brazing metal without flux. Brazing of dissimilar metals (copper to bronze or brass) shall include the use of flux with either a copper-phosphorous, copper-phosphorous-silver or a silver brazing filler metal. Joints for flared fittings shall be of the compression pattern. Swing joints or offsets shall be provided in all branch connections, mains, and risers to provide for expansion and contraction forces without undue stress to the fittings or to short lengths of pipe or tubing. Flared or brazed copper tubing to pipe adapters shall be provided where necessary for joining threaded pipe to copper tubing.

#### 3.2.7.5 Soldered Joints

Soldered joints shall be made with flux and are only acceptable for lines 2 inches and smaller. Soldered joints shall conform to ASME B31.5 and CDA 404/0 RR.

#### 3.2.7.6 Copper Tube Extracted Joint

An extruded mechanical tee joint may be made in copper tube. Joint shall be produced with an appropriate tool by drilling a pilot hole and drawing out the tube surface to form a collar having a minimum height of three times the thickness of the tube wall. To prevent the branch tube from being inserted beyond the depth of the extracted joint, dimpled depth stops shall be provided. The branch tube shall be notched for proper penetration into fitting to assure a free flow joint. Extracted joints shall be brazed using a copper phosphorous classification brazing filler metal. Soldered joints will not be permitted.

#### 3.2.8 Flanges and Unions

Flanges shall be faced true, provided with 1/16 inch thick gaskets, and made square and tight. Where steel flanges mate with cast-iron flanged fittings, valves, or equipment, they shall be provided with flat faces and full face gaskets. Union or flange joints shall be provided in each line immediately preceding the connection to each piece of equipment or material requiring maintenance such as coils, pumps, control valves, and other similar items. Dielectric pipe unions shall be provided between ferrous and nonferrous piping to prevent galvanic corrosion. The dielectric unions shall have metal connections on both ends. The ends shall be threaded, flanged, or brazed to match adjacent piping. The metal parts of the union shall be separated so that the electrical current is below 1 percent of the galvanic current which would exist upon metal-to-metal contact. Gaskets, flanges, and unions shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 3.2.9 Branch Connections

##### 3.2.9.1 Branch Connections for Hot Water Systems

Branches from the main shall pitch up or down as shown to prevent air entrapment. Connections shall ensure unrestricted circulation, eliminate air pockets, and permit complete drainage of the system. Branches shall pitch with a grade of not less than 1 inch in 10 feet. When indicated,

special flow fittings shall be installed on the mains to bypass portions of the water through each radiator. Special flow fittings shall be standard catalog products and shall be installed as recommended by the manufacturer.

### 3.2.9.2 Branch Connections for Steam Systems

Branches shall be taken from the supply mains at an angle of 45 degrees above the horizontal, unless otherwise indicated. The branches from return mains shall be taken from the top or sides, unless indicated otherwise. Branches shall pitch up from the mains toward the undrilled risers or radiator connections with a grade of not less than 1 inch in 10 feet. Connections to ensure unrestricted circulation, eliminate air pockets, and permit the complete drainage of the system.

### 3.2.13 Flared, Brazed, and Soldered Copper Pipe and Tubing

Copper tubing shall be flared, brazed, or soldered. Tubing shall be cut square, and burrs shall be removed. Both inside of fittings and outside of tubing shall be cleaned thoroughly with sand cloth or steel wire brush before brazing. Annealing of fittings and hard-drawn tubing shall not occur when making connections. Installation shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Mitering of joints for elbows and notching of straight runs of pipe for tees will not be permitted. Joints for flared fittings shall be of the compression pattern. Swing joints or offsets shall be provided on branch connections, mains, and risers to provide for expansion and contraction forces without undue stress to the fittings or to short lengths of pipe or tubing. Pipe adapters shall be provided where necessary for joining threaded pipe to copper tubing. Brazed joints shall be made in conformance with MSS SP-73, and CDA 404/0 RR.

Copper-to-copper joints shall include the use of copper-phosphorous or copper-phosphorous-silver brazing metal without flux. Brazing of dissimilar metals (copper to bronze or brass) shall include the use of flux with either a copper-phosphorous, copper-phosphorous-silver, or a silver brazing filler metal. Soldered joints shall be made with flux and are only acceptable for lines 2 inches or smaller. Soldered joints shall conform to ASME B31.5 and shall be in accordance with CDA 404/0 RR.

### 3.2.14 Copper Tube Extracted Joint

An extracted mechanical tee joint may be made in copper tube. Joint shall be produced with an appropriate tool by drilling a pilot hole and drawing out the tube surface to form a collar having a minimum height of three times the thickness of the tube wall. To prevent the branch tube from being inserted beyond the depth of the extracted joint, dimpled depth stops shall be provided. The branch tube shall be notched for proper penetration into fitting to assure a free flow joint. Extracted joints shall be brazed using a copper phosphorous classification brazing filler metal. Soldered joints will not be permitted.

### 3.2.15 Supports

#### 3.2.15.1 General

Hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger shall be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Pipe guides and anchors shall be installed to keep pipes in accurate alignment, to direct the expansion movement, and to prevent buckling, swaying, and undue strain. Piping subjected to vertical movement when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures shall be supported by

variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers.

### 3.2.15.3 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69, except as modified herein.

- a. Types 5, 12, and 26 shall not be used.
- b. Type 3 shall not be used on insulated pipe which has a vapor barrier. Type 3 may be used on insulated pipe that does not have a vapor barrier if clamped directly to the pipe, if the clamp bottom does not extend through the insulation, and if the top clamp attachment does not contact the insulation during pipe movement.
- c. Type 18 inserts shall be secured to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustment may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for Type 18 inserts.
- d. Type 19 and 23 C-clamps shall be torqued per MSS SP-69 and have both locknuts and retaining devices furnished by the manufacturer. Field fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.
- e. Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels shall be furnished with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.
- f. Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.
- g. Horizontal pipe supports shall be spaced as specified in MSS SP-69 and a support shall be installed not over 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Pipe supports shall be spaced not over 5 feet apart at valves.
- h. Vertical pipe shall be supported at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, and at intervals of not more than 15 feet, not more than 8 feet from end of risers, and at vent terminations.
- i. Type 35 guides using steel, reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) or graphite slides shall be provided where required to allow longitudinal pipe movement. Lateral restraints shall be provided as required. Slide materials shall be suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions, and bearing loads encountered.

(1) Where steel slides do not require provisions for restraint of lateral movement, an alternate guide method may be used. On piping 4 inches and larger, a Type 39 saddle may be welded to the pipe and freely rested on a steel plate. On piping under 4 inches, a Type 40 protection shield may be attached to the pipe or insulation and freely rested on a steel slide plate.

(2) Where there are high system temperatures and welding to piping is not desirable, the Type 35 guide shall include a pipe cradle welded to the guide structure and strapped securely to the pipe. The pipe shall be separated from the slide material by at least 4 inches or by an amount adequate for the insulation,

whichever is greater.

- j. Except for Type 3, pipe hangers on horizontal insulated pipe shall be the size of the outside diameter of the insulation.
- k. Piping in trenches shall be supported as indicated.
- l. Structural steel attachments and brackets required to support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, shall be provided under this section. Material and installation shall be as specified under Section 05120 STRUCTURAL STEEL. Pipe hanger loads suspended from steel joist between panel points shall not exceed 50 pounds. Loads exceeding 50 pounds shall be suspended from panel points.

### 3.2.16 Anchors

Anchors shall be provided where necessary to localize expansion or to prevent undue strain on piping. Anchors shall consist of heavy steel collars with lugs and bolts for clamping and attaching anchor braces, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor braces shall be installed in the most effective manner to secure the desired results, using turnbuckles where required. Supports, anchors, or stays shall not be attached where they will injure the structure or adjacent construction during installation or by the weight of expansion of the pipeline.

### 3.2.17 Valves

Valves shall be installed where indicated, specified, and required for functioning and servicing of the systems. Valves shall be safely accessible. Swing check valves shall be installed upright in horizontal lines and in vertical lines only when flow is in the upward direction. Gate and globe valves shall be installed with stems horizontal or above. Valves to be brazed shall be disassembled prior to brazing and all packing removed. After brazing, the valves shall be allowed to cool before reassembling.

### 3.2.18 Pipe Sleeves

Pipe passing through concrete or masonry walls or concrete floors or roofs shall be provided with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members except where indicated or approved. Rectangular and square openings shall be as detailed. Each sleeve shall extend through its respective wall, floor, or roof. Sleeves through walls shall be cut flush with wall surface. Unless otherwise indicated, sleeves shall be sized to provide a minimum clearance of 1/4 inch between bare pipe and sleeves or between jacket over insulation and sleeves. Sleeves in nonbearing walls, floors, or ceilings may be galvanized steel pipe, cast-iron pipe, or galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam. Except in interior walls, the annular space between pipe and sleeve or between jacket over insulation and sleeve in nonfire rated walls shall be sealed as indicated and specified in Section 07900 JOINT SEALING. Metal jackets shall be provided over insulation passing through exterior walls, firewalls, fire partitions, floors, or roofs.

Metal jackets shall not be thinner than 0.006 inch thick aluminum, if corrugated, and 0.016 inch thick aluminum, if smooth.

Metal jackets shall be secured with aluminum or stainless steel bands not less than 3/8 inch wide and not more than 8 inches apart. When penetrating roofs and before fitting the metal jacket into place, a 1/2 inch wide strip of sealant shall be run vertically along the inside of the longitudinal joint of the metal jacket from a point below the backup material to a minimum height of 36 inches above the roof. If the pipe turns from vertical to horizontal, the sealant strip shall be run to a point just beyond the first elbow.

#### 3.2.18.4 Fire Seal

Where pipes pass through firewalls, fire partitions, or floors, a fire seal shall be provided as specified in Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING.

#### 3.2.19 Balancing Valves

Balancing valves shall be installed as indicated.

#### 3.2.20 Thermometer Wells

A thermometer well shall be provided in each return line for each circuit in multicircuit systems.

#### 3.2.21 Air Vents

Air vents shall be installed where shown or directed. Air vents shall be installed in piping at all system high points. The vent shall remain open until water rises in the tank or pipe to a predetermined level at which time it shall close tight. An overflow pipe from the vent shall be run to a point designated by the Contracting Officer's representative. The inlet to the air vent shall have a gate valve or ball valve.

#### 3.2.22 Escutcheons

Escutcheons shall be provided at all finished surfaces where exposed piping, bare or insulated, passes through floors, walls, or ceilings except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Escutcheons shall be fastened securely to pipe or pipe covering and shall be chromium-plated iron or chromium-plated brass, either one-piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or setscrews.

#### 3.2.23 Drains

A drain connection with a 1 inch gate valve or 3/4 inch hose bib shall be installed at the lowest point in the return main near the boiler. In addition, threaded drain connections with threaded cap or plug shall be installed on the heat exchanger coil on each unit heater or unit ventilator and wherever required for thorough draining of the system.

#### 3.2.24 Strainer Blow-Down Piping

Strainer blow-down connections shall be fitted with a black steel blow-down pipeline routed to an accessible location and provided with a blow-down valve.

### 3.3 GAS FUEL SYSTEM

Gas piping, fittings, valves, regulators, tests, cleaning, and adjustments shall be in accordance with the Section 15488 GAS PIPING SYSTEMS. NFPA 54

shall be complied with unless otherwise specified. Burners, pilots, and all accessories shall be listed in UL-06. The fuel system shall be provided with a gas tight, manually operated, UL listed stop valve at the gas-supply connections, a gas strainer, a pressure regulator, pressure gauges, a burner-control valve, a safety shutoff valve suitable for size of burner and sequence of operation, and other components required for safe, efficient, and reliable operation as specified. Approved permanent and ready facilities to permit periodic valve leakage tests on the safety shutoff valve or valves shall be provided.

### 3.5 FIELD PAINTING

Ferrous metal not specified to be coated at the factory shall be cleaned, prepared, and painted as specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL. Exposed pipe covering shall be painted as specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL. Aluminum sheath over insulation shall not be painted.

### 3.6 HEATING SYSTEM TESTS

Before any covering is installed on pipe or heating equipment, the entire heating system's piping, fittings, and terminal heating units shall be hydrostatically tested and proved tight at a pressure of 1-1/2 times the design working pressure. Before pressurizing system for test, items or equipment (e.g., vessels, pumps, instruments, controls, relief valves) rated for pressures below the test pressure shall be blanked off or replaced with spool pieces. Before balancing and final operating test, test blanks and spool pieces shall be removed; and protected instruments and equipment shall be reconnected. With equipment items protected, the system shall be pressurized to test pressure. Pressure shall be held for a period of time sufficient to inspect all welds, joints, and connections for leaks, but not less than 2 hours. No loss of pressure will be allowed. Leaks shall be repaired and repaired joints shall be retested. Caulking of joints shall not be permitted. System shall be drained and after instruments and equipment are reconnected, the system shall be refilled with service medium and maximum operating pressure applied. The pressure shall be held while inspecting these joints and connections for leaks. The leaks shall be repaired and the repaired joints retested. Upon completion of hydrostatic tests and before acceptance of the installation, the Contractor shall balance the heating system in accordance with Section 15990 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS; and operating tests required to demonstrate satisfactory functional and operational efficiency shall be performed. The operating test shall cover a period of at least 24 hours for each system, and shall include, as a minimum, the following specific information in a report, together with conclusions as to the adequacy of the system:

- a. Certification of balancing.
- b. Time, date, and duration of test.
- c. Outside and inside dry bulb temperatures.
- d. Temperature of hot water supply leaving boiler.
- e. Temperature of heating return water from system at boiler inlet.
- f. Quantity of water feed to boiler.
- g. Boiler make, type, serial number, design pressure, and rated

capacity.

- h. Fuel burner make, model, and rated capacity; ammeter and voltmeter readings for burner motor.
- i. Circulating pump make, model, and rated capacity, and ammeter and voltmeter readings for pump motor during operation.
- j. Flue-gas temperature at boiler outlet.
- k. Percent carbon dioxide in flue-gas.
- l. Grade or type and calorific value of fuel.
- m. Draft at boiler flue-gas exit.
- n. Draft or pressure in furnace.
- o. Quantity of water circulated.
- p. Quantity of fuel consumed.
- q. Stack emission pollutants concentration.

Indicating instruments shall be read at half-hour intervals unless otherwise directed. The Contractor shall furnish all instruments, equipment, and personnel required for the tests and balancing. Fuels, water, and electricity shall be obtained as specified in the SPECIAL CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS.

### 3.6.1 Water Treatment Testing

If the boiler water is not in conformance with the boiler manufacturer's recommendations, the water treatment company shall take corrective action.

#### 3.6.1.2 Boiler/Piping Test

At the conclusion of the 1 year period, the boiler and condensate piping shall be inspected for problems due to corrosion and scale. If the boiler is found not to conform to the manufacturer's recommendations, and the water treatment company recommendations have been followed, the water treatment company shall provide all chemicals and labor for cleaning or repairing the equipment as required by the manufacturer's recommendations. If corrosion is found within the condensate piping, proper repairs shall be made by the water treatment company.

### 3.7 CLEANING

#### 3.7.1 Boilers and Piping

After the hydrostatic tests have been made and before the system is balanced and operating tests are performed, the boilers and feed water piping shall be thoroughly cleaned by filling the system with a solution consisting of either 1 pound of caustic soda or 1 pound of trisodium phosphate per 50 gallons of water. The proper safety precautions shall be observed in the handling and use of these chemicals. The water shall be heated to approximately 150 degrees F and the solution circulated in the system for a period of 48 hours. The system shall then be drained and



thoroughly flushed out with fresh water. Strainers and valves shall be thoroughly cleaned. Prior to operating tests, air shall be removed from all water systems by operating the air vents.

### 3.7.2 Heating Units

Inside space heating equipment, ducts, plenums, and casing shall be thoroughly cleaned of debris and blown free of small particles of rubbish and dust and then vacuum cleaned before installing outlet faces. Equipment shall be wiped clean, with all traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots removed. Temporary filters shall be provided for fans that are operated during construction, and new filters shall be installed after construction dirt has been removed from the building, and the ducts, plenum, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. System shall be maintained in this clean condition until final acceptance. Bearings shall be properly lubricated with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Belts shall be tightened to proper tension. Control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment shall be adjusted to setting indicated or directed. Fans shall be adjusted to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions.

## 3.8 FUEL SYSTEM TESTS

### 3.8.2 Gas System Test

The gas fuel system shall be tested in accordance with the test procedures outlined in NFPA 54.

## 3.9 FIELD TRAINING

The Contractor shall conduct a training course for the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period shall consist of a total of 4 hours of normal working time and shall start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests. The field instructions shall cover all of the items contained in the operating and maintenance instructions, as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations and boiler safety devices. The Contracting Officer shall be notified at least 14 days prior to date of proposed conduction of the training course.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15650

## CENTRAL REFRIGERATED AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM

**07/92**

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- 1.4 QUALIFICATIONS
- 1.5 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- 1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS
  - 1.7.1 Verification of Dimensions
  - 1.7.2 Drawings

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 STANDARD COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS
- 2.2 NAMEPLATES
- 2.3 ELECTRICAL WORK
- 2.4 SELF-CONTAINED LIQUID CHILLER
  - 2.4.1 Scroll, Reciprocating, or Rotary Screw Type
- 2.6 CHILLER COMPONENTS
  - 2.6.1 Refrigerant and Oil
  - 2.6.2 Structural Base
  - 2.6.3 Chiller Refrigerant Circuit
  - 2.6.4 Controls Package
    - 2.6.4.1 Operating Controls
    - 2.6.4.2 Monitoring Capabilities
    - 2.6.4.3 Programmable Setpoints
    - 2.6.4.4 Safety Controls with Manual Reset
    - 2.6.4.5 Safety Controls with Automatic Reset
    - 2.6.4.6 Remote Alarm
    - 2.6.4.7 Energy Management Control System (EMCS) Interface
  - 2.6.5 Compressor(s)
    - 2.6.5.1 Reciprocating Compressor(s)
    - 2.6.5.2 Scroll Compressor(s)
    - 2.6.5.3 Rotary Screw Compressor(s)
  - 2.6.6 Compressor Driver, Electric Motor
  - 2.6.9 Compressor Driver Connections
  - 2.6.10 Liquid Cooler (Evaporator)
  - 2.6.11 Air-Cooled Condenser Coil
  - 2.6.14 Receivers
  - 2.6.15 Chiller Purge System
  - 2.6.16 Tools
- 2.8 ACCESSORIES
  - 2.8.1 Pumps
    - 2.8.1.1 Construction
    - 2.8.1.2 Mechanical Shaft Seals

- 2.8.2 Expansion Tanks
- 2.8.3 Air Separator Tanks
- 2.10 WATER TREATMENT SYSTEMS
  - 2.10.2 Chilled Water
  - 2.10.3 Glycol Solution
  - 2.10.5 Chilled Water System
- 2.11 PIPING COMPONENTS
  - 2.11.1 Water Piping and Fittings
    - 2.11.1.1 Steel Pipe
    - 2.11.1.2 Steel Pipe Joints and Fittings
    - 2.11.1.3 Copper Tube
    - 2.11.1.4 Copper Tube Joints and Fittings
  - 2.11.2 Water Piping Valves and Accessories
    - 2.11.2.1 Gate Valves
    - 2.11.2.2 Globe and Angle Valves
    - 2.11.2.3 Check Valves
    - 2.11.2.4 Butterfly Valves
    - 2.11.2.6 Ball Valves
    - 2.11.2.7 Calibrated Balancing Valves
    - 2.11.2.9 Air Vents
    - 2.11.2.10 Strainers
    - 2.11.2.11 Combination Strainer and Suction Diffuser
    - 2.11.2.12 Pump Discharge Valves
    - 2.11.2.13 Backflow Preventers
    - 2.11.2.14 Flexible Pipe Connectors
    - 2.11.2.15 Pressure Gauges
    - 2.11.2.16 Thermometers
    - 2.11.2.17 Pipe Nipples
    - 2.11.2.18 Pipe Unions
    - 2.11.2.19 Solder
  - 2.11.6 Escutcheons
  - 2.11.7 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports
- 2.12 FABRICATION
  - 2.12.1 Factory Coating
  - 2.12.2 Field Painting
    - 2.12.2.1 Color Coding
    - 2.12.2.2 Color Coding Scheme
- 2.14 SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES
  - 2.14.1 Drain and Makeup Water Piping

### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION
  - 3.1.1 Refrigeration System
    - 3.1.1.1 Equipment
    - 3.1.1.4 Automatic Controls
  - 3.1.2 General Piping Installation
    - 3.1.2.1 Brazed Joints
    - 3.1.2.2 Threaded Joints
    - 3.1.2.3 Welded Joints
    - 3.1.2.4 Flanged Joints
    - 3.1.2.5 Flared Connections
    - 3.1.2.6 Thermometers
    - 3.1.2.7 Supports
    - 3.1.2.8 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports
    - 3.1.2.11 Pipe Sleeves
    - 3.1.2.12 Escutcheons
    - 3.1.2.13 Access Panels
  - 3.1.3 Water Piping

- 3.1.3.1 Directional Changes
- 3.1.3.2 Functional Requirements
- 3.1.3.3 Valves
- 3.1.3.4 Air Vents
- 3.1.3.5 Drains
- 3.1.3.6 Flexible Pipe Connectors
- 3.1.3.7 Flanges and Unions
- 3.1.3.8 Grooved Mechanical Joints
- 3.1.5 Mechanical Room Ventilation
- 3.1.6 Field Applied Insulation
- 3.1.7 Factory Applied Insulation
  - 3.1.7.2 Liquid Coolers
- 3.2 TESTS
  - 3.2.1 Field Tests
    - 3.2.1.1 Water Pipe Testing
  - 3.2.2 System Performance Tests
- 3.3 INSPECTIONS
- 3.4 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICE
- 3.5 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING
  - 3.5.1 Piping
  - 3.5.2 Equipment
- 3.6 DEMONSTRATIONS

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 15650

## CENTRAL REFRIGERATED AIR-CONDITIONING SYSTEM

**07/92**

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (ARI)

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| ARI 495          | (1993) Refrigerant Liquid Receivers                                |
| ARI ANSI/ARI 590 | (1992) Positive Displacement Compressor<br>Water-Chilling Packages |
| ARI 700          | (1995) Specifications for Fluorocarbon and<br>Other Refrigerants   |

## AMERICAN BEARING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (ABEMA)

- |              |   |
|--------------|---|
| ABEMA Std 9  | (1990) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for<br>Ball Bearings   |
| ABEMA Std 11 | (1990) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for<br>Roller Bearings |

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| ASTM A 47        | (1990; R 1995) Ferritic Malleable Iron<br>Castings   |
| ASTM A 53        | (1996) Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped,<br>Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless                                |
| ASTM A 106       | (1995) Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for<br>High-Temperature Service  |
| ASTM A 181/A181M | (1995b) Carbon Steel Forgings for<br>General-Purpose Piping  |
| ASTM A 183       | (1983; R 1990) Carbon Steel Track Bolts<br>and Nuts  |
| ASTM A 193/A193M | (1996) Alloy-Steel and Stainless Steel<br>Bolting Materials for High-Temperature<br>Service                  |
| ASTM A 234/A234M | (1996b) Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon<br>Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and<br>Elevated Temperatures |

ASTM A 733	(1993) Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel and Austenitic Stainless Steel Pipe Nipples
ASTM B 32	(1996) Solder Metal
ASTM B 62	(1993) Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings
ASTM B 75	(1995a) Seamless Copper Tube
ASTM B 88	(1996) Seamless Copper Water Tube
ASTM B 117	(1995) Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM D 520	(1984; R 1989) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM D 1384	(1994) Corrosion Test for Engine Coolants in Glassware
ASTM D 2000	(1996) Rubber Products in Automotive Applications
ASTM D 3308	(1991a) PTFE Resin Skived Tape
ASTM F 1199	(1988, R 1993) Cast (All Temperature and Pressures) and Welded Pipe Line Strainers (150 psig and 150 degrees F Maximum)

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 15	(1994) Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration
ASHRAE 34	(1992; Addenda a-j) Number Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B1.20.1	(1983; R 1992) Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)
ASME B16.5	(1996) Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings
ASME B16.9	(1993) Factory-Made Wrought Steel Buttwelding Fittings
ASME B16.11	(1991) Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded
ASME B16.18	(1984; R 1994) Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings
ASME B16.21	(1992) Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges
ASME B16.22	(1995) Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings

ASME B16.26	(1988) Cast Copper Alloy Fittings for Flared Copper Tubes
ASME B16.39	(1986; R 1994) Malleable Iron Threaded Pipe Unions Classes 150, 250, and 300
ASME B31.1	(1995) Power Piping
ASME B31.5	(1992; B31.5a) Refrigeration Piping
ASME B40.1	(1991) Gauges - Pressure Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element
ASME BPV VIII Div 1	(1995; Addenda Dec 1995) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; Section VIII, Pressure Vessels Division 1 - Basic Coverage
ASME BPV IX	(1995; Addenda Dec 1995) Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; Section IX, Welding and Brazing Qualifications
AMERICAN WATER WORKS ASSOCIATION (AWWA)	
AWWA C606	(1987) Grooved and Shouldered Joints
AMERICAN WELDING SOCIETY (AWS)	
AWS D1.1	(1994) Structural Welding Code - Steel
HYDRAULIC INSTITUTE (HI)	
HI 1.1-1.5	(1994) Centrifugal Pumps
MANUFACTURERS STANDARDIZATION SOCIETY OF THE VALVE AND FITTINGS INDUSTRY (MSS)	
MSS SP-25	(1993) Standard Marking System for Valves, Fittings, Flanges and Unions
MSS SP-58	(1993) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacture
MSS SP-67	(1995) Butterfly Valves
MSS SP-69	(1996) Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application
MSS SP-70	(1990) Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
MSS SP-71	(1990) Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanges and Threaded Ends
MSS SP-72	(1992) Ball Valves with Flanged or Butt-Welding Ends for General Service
MSS SP-80	(1997) Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check

## Valves

MSS SP-85	(1994) Cast Iron Globe & Angle Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends
MSS SP-110	(1996) Ball Valves Threaded, Socket Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends

## NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250	(1991) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)
NEMA ICS 1	(1993) Industrial Controls and Systems
NEMA ICS 2	(1993) Industrial Control and Systems, Controllers, Contractors Overload relays Rated not More Than 2,000 Volts AC or 750 DC
NEMA MG 1	(1993; Rev 1; Rev 2; Rev 3) Motors and Generators

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A	(1996) Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
----------	--

## 1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

This specification section covers the provisions and installation procedures necessary for a complete and totally functional central refrigerated air-conditioning system as defined herein.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

## SD-01 Data

Central Refrigerated Air-Conditioning System; F10.

Manufacturer's catalog data, at least 5 weeks prior to beginning construction, shall be highlighted to show model No., size, options, performance charts and curves, etc. in adequate detail to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Data shall include manufacturer's recommended installation instructions and procedures. Data shall be adequate to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements as specified within the paragraphs:

- a. Refrigeration System
- b. System Components
- c. Accessories
- d. Piping Components



If vibration isolation is specified for a unit, vibration isolator literature shall be included containing catalog cuts and certification that the isolation characteristics of the isolators provided meet the manufacturer's recommendations.

Water Treatment Systems; FI0.

Six complete copies, at least 5 weeks prior to the purchase of the water treatment system, of the proposed water treatment plan including a layout, control scheme, a list of existing make-up water conditions including the items listed in Paragraph Water Analysis, a list of chemicals, the proportion of chemicals to be added, the final treated water conditions, and a description of environmental concerns for handling the chemicals.

Spare Parts; FI0.

Spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified, after approval of the detail drawings and not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. The data shall include a complete list of parts and supplies, with source of supply.

Qualifications; FI0.

Six copies of qualified procedures, and list of names and identification symbols of qualified welders and welding operators, prior to non-factory welding operations.

#### SD-04 Drawings

Central Refrigerated Air-Conditioning System ; FI0.

Drawings, at least 5 weeks prior to beginning construction, shall provide adequate detail to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements. Drawings shall consist of:

- a. Equipment layouts which identify assembly and installation details.
- b. Piping layouts which identify all valves and fittings.
- c. Plans and elevations which identify clearances required for maintenance and operation.
- d. Wiring diagrams which identify each component individually and all interconnected or interlocked relationships between components.
- e. Foundation drawings, bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations.
- f. Details, if piping and equipment are to be supported other than as indicated, which include loadings and type of frames, brackets, stanchions, or other supports.

#### SD-06 Instructions

Posted Instructions; FI0.

Posted instructions, at least 2 weeks prior to construction completion, shall include equipment layout, wiring and control diagrams, piping, valves and control sequences, and typed condensed operation instructions. The condensed operation instructions shall include preventative maintenance procedures, methods of checking the system for normal and safe operation, and procedures for safely starting and stopping the system. The posted

instructions shall be framed under glass or laminated plastic and be posted where indicated by the Contracting Officer.

#### SD-07 Schedules

Factory Tests; FIO.

Schedules, at least 2 weeks prior to the factory test, which identify the date, time, and location for each test. Schedules shall be submitted for both the Chiller Performance Test and the Chiller Sound Test. The Chiller Performance Test schedule shall also allow the witnessing of the test by a Government Representative.

Tests; FIO.

Test schedules, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing, for each of the field tests, the system performance tests, and the condenser water quality tests. The schedules shall identify the date, time, and location for each test.

Demonstrations; FIO.

A schedule, at least 2 weeks prior to the date of the proposed training course, which identifies the date, time, and location for the training.

#### SD-09 Reports

Factory Tests; FIO.

Six copies of the report shall be provided in bound 8 1/2 x 11 inch booklets. Reports shall certify the compliance with performance requirements and follow the format of the required testing standard for both the Chiller Performance Tests and the Chiller Sound Tests. Test report shall include certified calibration report of all test instrumentation. Calibration report shall include certification that all test instrumentation has been calibrated within 6 months prior to the test date, identification of all instrumentation, and certification that all instrumentation complies with requirements of the test standard. Test report shall be submitted 1 week after completion of the factory test.

Field Tests; FIO.

Six copies of the report shall be provided in bound 8 1/2 x 11 inch booklets. Reports shall document all phases of tests performed during the Water Pipe Testing, the Refrigerant Pipe Testing, and the Cooling Tower Tests. The report shall include initial test summaries, all repairs/adjustments made, and the final test results.

System Performance Tests; FIO.

Six copies of the report shall be provided in bound 8 1/2 x 11 inch booklets. The report shall document compliance with the specified performance criteria upon completion and testing of the system. The report shall indicate the number of days covered by the tests and any conclusions as to the adequacy of the system. The report shall also include the following information and shall be taken at least three different times at outside dry-bulb temperatures that are at least 5 degrees F apart:

- a. Date and outside weather conditions.

- b. The load on the system based on the following:
  - (1) The refrigerant used in the system.
  - (2) Condensing temperature and pressure.
  - (3) Suction temperature and pressure.
  - (4) Running current, voltage and proper phase sequence for each phase of all motors.
  - (5) The actual on-site setting of all operating and safety controls.
  - (6) Chilled water pressure, flow and temperature in and out of the chiller.

#### SD-13 Certificates

Central Refrigerated Air-Conditioning System; GA.

Where the system, components, or equipment are specified to comply with requirements of AGA, NFPA, ARI, ASHRAE, ASME, or UL, 1 copy of proof of such compliance shall be provided. The label or listing of the specified agency shall be acceptable evidence. In lieu of the label or listing, a written certificate from an approved, nationally recognized testing organization equipped to perform such services, stating that the items have been tested and conform to the requirements and testing methods of the specified agency may be submitted. When performance requirements of this project's drawings and specifications vary from standard ARI rating conditions, computer printouts, catalog, or other application data certified by ARI or a nationally recognized laboratory as described above shall be included. If ARI does not have a current certification program that encompasses such application data, the manufacturer may self certify that his application data complies with project performance requirements in accordance with the specified test standards.

#### SD-19 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Operation Manual; FI0.

Six complete copies of an operation manual in bound 8 1/2 x 11 inch booklets listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, abnormal shutdown, emergency shutdown, and normal shutdown at least 4 weeks prior to the first training course. The booklets shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, and parts list. The manuals shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, and a brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features.

Maintenance Manual; FI0.

Six complete copies of maintenance manual in bound 8 1/2 x 11 inch booklets listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and a trouble shooting guide. The manuals shall include piping and equipment layouts and simplified wiring and control diagrams of the system as installed.

Water Treatment System; FI0.

Six complete copies of operating and maintenance manuals for the step-by-step water treatment procedures. The manuals shall include testing procedures used in determining water quality.

### 1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

Piping shall be welded in accordance with the qualified procedures using performance qualified welders and welding operators. Procedures and welders shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPV IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. The Contracting Officer shall be notified 24 hours in advance of tests and the tests shall be performed at the work site if practical. The welder or welding operator shall apply his assigned symbol near each weld he makes as a permanent record.

#### 1.5 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

Exposed moving parts, parts that produce high operating temperature, parts which may be electrically energized, and parts that may be a hazard to operating personnel shall be insulated, fully enclosed, guarded, or fitted with other types of safety devices. Safety devices shall be installed so that proper operation of equipment is not impaired.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

All equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be stored with protection from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

#### 1.7 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

##### 1.7.1 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

##### 1.7.2 Drawings

Because of the small scale of the drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. The Contractor shall carefully investigate the plumbing, fire protection, electrical, structural and finish conditions that would affect the work to be performed and shall arrange such work accordingly, furnishing required offsets, fittings, and accessories to meet such conditions.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 STANDARD COMMERCIAL PRODUCTS

Materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. The standard products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for two years prior to bid opening. The two-year use shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size. The two years experience shall be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturer's catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a two-year field service record shall be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. All products shall be supported by a service organization. The Contractor

shall submit a certified list of qualified permanent service organizations for support of the equipment which includes their addresses and qualifications. These service organizations shall be reasonably convenient to the equipment installation and shall be able to render satisfactory service to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis during the warranty period of the contract.

## 2.2 NAMEPLATES

Each major component of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, and catalog or serial number on a plate securely attached to the item of equipment. As a minimum, nameplates shall be provided for:

- a. Liquid-Chilling Package(s)
- b. Compressor(s)
- c. Compressor Driver(s)
- d. Condenser(s)
- e. Liquid Cooler(s)
- f. Receiver(s)
- g. Pump(s)
- h. Pump Motor(s)

## 2.3 ELECTRICAL WORK

Electrical equipment, motors, motor starters, and wiring shall be in accordance with Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Motor starters for equipment furnished under Div 15 contractor in accordance with Section 16415, ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR, and be installed by Div 16 contractor. Electrical motor driven equipment specified shall be provided complete with motors, motor starters, and controls. Electrical characteristics and enclosure type shall be as shown, and unless otherwise indicated, all motors of 1 horsepower and above with open, dripproof, or totally enclosed fan cooled enclosures, shall be high efficiency type. Field wiring shall be in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Each motor shall conform to NEMA MG 1 and be of sufficient size to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor.

Motors shall be continuous duty with the enclosure specified. Motor starters shall be provided complete with thermal overload protection and other appurtenances necessary for the motor control indicated. Motors shall be furnished with a magnetic across-the-line or reduced voltage type starter as required by the manufacturer. Motor starter shall be provided in enclosures constructed in accordance with UL NEMA 3R enclosures for air cooled chiller. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified and any control wiring required for controls and devices specified, but not shown, shall be provided.

## 2.4 SELF-CONTAINED LIQUID CHILLER

Unless necessary for delivery purposes, units shall be assembled, leak-tested, charged (refrigerant and oil), and adjusted at the factory. In lieu of delivery constraints, a chiller may be assembled, leak-tested, charged (refrigerant and oil), and adjusted at the job site by a factory representative. Unit components delivered separately shall be sealed and charged with a nitrogen holding charge. Unit assembly shall be completed in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Chiller shall operate within capacity range and speed recommended by the manufacturer. Parts weighing 50 pounds or more which must be removed for inspection,

cleaning, or repair, such as motors, gear boxes, cylinder heads, casing tops, condenser, and cooler heads, shall have lifting eyes or lugs. Chiller shall be provided with factory installed insulation on surfaces subject to sweating including the liquid cooler, suction line piping, economizer, and cooling lines. Chiller shall include all customary auxiliaries deemed necessary by the manufacturer for safe, controlled, automatic operation of the equipment. Chiller shall be provided with a single point wiring connection for incoming power supply. Factory installed insulation shall be provided on all suction piping from the evaporator to the compressor and on the liquid cooler shell. Where motors are the gas-cooled type, factory installed insulation shall be provided on the cold-gas inlet connection to the motor per manufacturer's standard practice. Chiller's liquid cooler shall be provided with flanged connections.

#### 2.4.1 Scroll, Reciprocating, or Rotary Screw Type

Chiller shall be constructed and rated in accordance with ARI ANSI/ARI 590.

Chiller shall conform to ASHRAE 15. As a minimum, chiller shall include the following components as defined in paragraph CHILLER COMPONENTS.

- a. Refrigerant and oil
- b. Structural base
- c. Controls package
- d. Scroll, reciprocating, or rotary screw compressor
- e. Compressor driver, electric motor
- f. Compressor driver connection
- g. Liquid cooler (evaporator)
- f. Air- condenser coil
- g. Tools
- h. Chiller refrigerant circuit

#### 2.6 CHILLER COMPONENTS

##### 2.6.1 Refrigerant and Oil

Refrigerants shall be one of the fluorocarbon gases. Refrigerants shall have number designations and safety classifications in accordance with ASHRAE 34. Refrigerants shall meet the requirements of ARI 700 as a minimum. Refrigerants shall have an Ozone Depletion Potential (ODP) of less than or equal to 0.05.

##### 2.6.2 Structural Base

Chiller and individual chiller components shall be provided with a factory-mounted welded structural steel base or support legs. Chiller and individual chiller components shall be isolated from the building structure by means of molded neoprene isolation pads.

##### 2.6.3 Chiller Refrigerant Circuit

Chiller refrigerant circuit shall be completely piped and factory leak tested. For multicompressor units, not less than 2 independent refrigerant circuits shall be provided. Circuit shall include as a minimum a combination filter and drier, combination sight glass and moisture indicator, liquid-line solenoid valve for reciprocating or scroll units, an electronic or thermostatic expansion valve with external equalizer, charging ports, compressor service valves, and superheat adjustment.

#### 2.6.4 Controls Package

Chiller shall be provided with a complete factory mounted and prewired electric or microprocessor based control system. Controls package shall be unit-mounted which contains as a minimum a digital display or acceptable gauges, an on-auto-off switch, motor starters, power wiring, control wiring, and disconnect switches. Controls package shall provide operating controls, monitoring capabilities, programmable setpoints, safety controls, and EMCS interfaces as defined below.

##### 2.6.4.1 Operating Controls

Chiller shall be provided with the following adjustable operating controls as a minimum.

- a. Leaving chilled water temperature control
- b. Adjustable timer to prevent compressor from short cycling
- c. Automatic lead/lag controls (adjustable) for multiprocessor units
- d. Load limiting
- e. Fan sequencing for air-cooled condenser
- f. System capacity control to adjust the unit capacity in accordance with the system load and the programmable setpoints. Controls shall automatically re-cycle the chiller on power interruption.
- g. Startup and head pressure controls to allow system operation at all ambient temperatures down to 0 degrees F

##### 2.6.4.2 Monitoring Capabilities

During normal operations, the control system shall be capable of monitoring and displaying the following operating parameters. Access and operation of display shall not require opening or removing any panels or doors.

- a. Entering and leaving chilled water temperatures
- b. Self diagnostic
- c. Operation status
- d. Operating hours
- e. Number of starts
- f. Compressor status (on or off)
- g. Refrigerant discharge and suction pressures

##### 2.6.4.3 Programmable Setpoints

The control system shall be capable of being reprogrammed directly at the unit. No parameters shall be capable of being changed without first entering a security access code. The programmable setpoints shall include the following as a minimum.

- a. Leaving Chilled Water Temperature
- b. Time Clock/Calendar Date

##### 2.6.4.4 Safety Controls with Manual Reset

Chiller shall be provided with the following safety controls which automatically shutdown the chiller and which require manual reset.

- a. Low chilled water temperature protection
- b. High condenser refrigerant discharge pressure protection
- c. Low suction pressure protection
- d. Chilled water flow detection

- e. Motor current overload and phase loss protection
- f. High motor winding temperature protection for hermetic motors
- g. Low oil flow protection

#### 2.6.4.5 Safety Controls with Automatic Reset

Chiller shall be provided with the following safety controls which automatically shutdown the chiller and which provide automatic reset.

- a. Over/under voltage protection
- b. Phase reversal protection
- c. Chilled water flow interlock

#### 2.6.4.6 Remote Alarm

During the initiation of a safety shutdown, the control system shall be capable of activating a remote alarm bell. In coordination with the chiller, the contractor shall provide an alarm circuit (including transformer if applicable) and a minimum 4 inch diameter alarm bell. Alarm circuit shall activate bell in the event of machine shutdown due to the chiller's monitoring of safety controls. The alarm bell shall not sound for a chiller that uses low-pressure cutout as an operating control.

#### 2.6.4.7 Energy Management Control System (EMCS) Interface

The control system shall be capable of communicating all data to a remote integrated DDC processor through a single shielded cable. The data shall include as a minimum all system operating conditions, capacity controls, and safety shutdown conditions. The control system shall also be capable of receiving at a minimum the following operating commands.

- a. Remote Unit Start/Stop
- b. Remote Chilled Water Reset

#### 2.6.5 Compressor(s)

##### 2.6.5.1 Reciprocating Compressor(s)

All rotating parts shall be statically and dynamically balanced at the factory to minimize vibration. Compressors shall be capable of operating at partial-load conditions without increased vibration over the normal vibration at full load operation and shall be capable of continuous operation down to the lowest step of unloading as specified. Compressors of size 10 horsepower and above shall have an oil lubrication system of the reversible, forced-feed type with oil strainer. Shaft seal in open-type units shall be mechanical type. Piston speed for open-type compressors shall not exceed the manufacturer's recommendation or 1200 fpm, whichever is less. Compressors shall include:

- a. Vertical, V, W, or radial cylinder design
- b. Oil lubrication
- c. Integrally cast block of close-grained iron or cast aluminum block with hardened steel cylinder sleeves
- d. Oil-level bull's eye
- e. Cast cylinder heads
- f. Cast-aluminum or forged-steel connecting rods
- g. Cast iron or forged-steel crankshaft
- h. Main bearings of the sleeve-insert type
- i. Crankcase oil heaters controlled as recommended by the manufacturer



- j. Suction and discharge refrigerant service valves that are flange connected, wrench operated, with cap
- k. A strainer on the suction side of the compressor

#### 2.6.5.2 Scroll Compressor(s)

Compressors shall be of the compliant, hermetically sealed design. Compressors shall be mounted on vibration isolators to minimize vibration and noise. Rotating parts shall be statically and dynamically balanced at the factory to minimize vibration. Lubrication system shall be centrifugal pump type equipped with a means for determining oil level and an oil charging valve. Crankcase oil heater shall be provided if standard or if available as an option. If provided, the crankcase oil heater shall be controlled as recommended by the manufacturer.

#### 2.6.5.3 Rotary Screw Compressor(s)

Compressors shall operate stably for indefinite time periods at any stage of capacity reduction without hot-gas bypass. Provision shall be made to insure proper lubrication of bearings and shaft seals on shutdown with or without electric power supply. Rotary screw compressors shall include:

- a. An open or hermetic, positive displacement, oil-injected design directly driven by the compressor driver. Compressor shall allow access to internal compressor components for repairs, inspection, and replacement of parts.
- b. Rotors which are solid steel forging with sufficient rigidity for proper operation.
- c. A maximum rotor operating speed no greater than 3600 RPM.
- d. Casings of cast iron, precision machined for minimal clearance about periphery of rotors.
- e. A lubrication system of the forced-feed type that provides oil at the proper pressure to all parts requiring lubrication.
- f. Shaft main bearings of the sleeve type with heavy duty bushings or rolling element type in accordance with ABEMA Std 9 or ABEMA Std 11. Bearings shall be conservatively loaded and rated for an L(10) life of not less than 200,000 hours.
- g. A differential oil pressure or flow cutout to allow the compressor to operate only when the required oil pressure or flow is provided to the bearings.
- h. A temperature- or pressure-initiated, hydraulically actuated, single-slide-valve, capacity-control system to provide minimum automatic capacity modulation from 100 percent to 25 percent.
- i. An oil separator and oil return system to remove oil entrained in the refrigerant gas and automatically return the oil to the compressor.
- j. Crankcase oil heaters controlled as recommended by the manufacturer.

#### 2.6.6 Compressor Driver, Electric Motor

Motor shall be the polyphase, induction type conforming to NEMA MG 1. Motors shall be suitable for use with the indicated electrical power characteristics and the type of starter provided. Motor starters shall be the reduced voltage, closed-transition type conforming to NEMA ICS and NEMA ICS 2. Motor starter shall be unit mounted as indicated with starter type, wiring, and accessories coordinated by the chiller manufacturer. Starter shall be able to operate in temperatures up to 120 degrees F.

#### 2.6.9 Compressor Driver Connections

Each compressor shall be driven by a V-belt drive or direct connected through a flexible coupling, except that flexible coupling is not required on hermetic units. V-belt drives shall be designed for not less than 150 percent of the driving motor capacity. Flexible couplings shall be of the type that does not require lubrication.

#### 2.6.10 Liquid Cooler (Evaporator)

Cooler shall be of the shell-and-coil or shell-and-tube type design. Condenser's refrigerant side shall be designed and factory pressure tested to comply with ASHRAE 15. Condenser's water side shall be designed and factory pressure tested for not less than 150 psi. Cooler shell shall be constructed of seamless or welded steel. Coil bundles shall be totally removable and arranged to drain completely. Tubes shall be seamless copper, plain, integrally finned with smooth bore or integrally finned with enhanced bore. Each tube shall be individually replaceable. Tubes shall be installed into carbon mild steel tube sheets by rolling. Tube baffles shall be properly spaced to provide adequate tube support and cross flow. Performance shall be based on a water velocity not less than 3 fps nor more than 12 fps and a fouling factor of 0.00025.

#### 2.6.11 Air-Cooled Condenser Coil

Condenser coil shall be of the extended-surface fin-and-tube type and shall be constructed of seamless copper tubes with compatible copper or aluminum fins. Fins shall be soldered or mechanically bonded to the tubes and installed in a metal casing. Coils shall be circuited and sized for a minimum of 5 degrees F subcooling and full pump down capacity. Coil shall be factory leak and pressure tested after assembly in accordance with ASHRAE 15.

#### 2.6.14 Receivers

Liquid receivers not already specified herein as an integral factory-mounted part of a package, shall be designed, fitted, and rated in accordance with the recommendations of ARI 495, except as modified herein. Receiver shall bear a stamp certifying compliance with ASME BPV VIII Div 1 and shall meet the requirements of ASHRAE 15. Inner surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned by sandblasting or other approved means. Each receiver shall have a storage capacity not less than 20 percent in excess of that required for the fully-charged system. Each receiver shall be equipped with inlet, outlet drop pipe, drain plug, purging valve, relief valves of capacity and setting required by ASHRAE 15, and two bull's eye liquid-level sight glasses. Sight glasses shall be in the same vertical plane, 90 degrees apart, perpendicular to the axis of the receiver, and not over 3 inches horizontally from the drop pipe measured along the axis of the receiver. In lieu of bull's eye sight glass, external gauge glass with metal glass guard and automatic closing stop valves may be provided.

#### 2.6.15 Chiller Purge System

Chillers which operate at pressures below atmospheric pressure shall be provided with a purge system that operates independently of the chiller. Purge system shall automatically remove air, water vapor, and non-condensable gases from the chiller's refrigerant. Purge system shall condense, separate, and return all refrigerant back to the chiller. An oil separator shall be provided with the purge system if required by the

manufacturer. Purge system shall not discharge to occupied areas, or create a potential hazard to personnel. Purge system shall include a purge pressure gauge, number of starts counter, and an elapsed time meter. Purge system shall include lights or an alarm which indicate excessive purge or an abnormal air leakage into chiller.

#### 2.6.16 Tools

One complete set of special tools as recommended by the manufacturer for field maintenance of the system shall be provided. Tools shall be mounted on a tool board in the equipment room or contained in a toolbox as directed by the Contracting Officer.

### 2.8 ACCESSORIES

#### 2.8.1 Pumps

Pumps shall be the electrically driven, non-overloading, centrifugal type which conform to HI 1.1-1.5. Pump capacity, efficiency, motor size, and impeller type shall be as indicated on the drawings. Pumps shall be selected at or near peak efficiency. Pump curve shall rise continuously from maximum capacity to shutoff. Pump motor shall be totally enclosed and have sufficient horsepower for the service required. Each pump motor shall be equipped with an across-the-line magnetic controller in a NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with "START-STOP" switch in the cover. In accordance with Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR.

##### 2.8.1.1 Construction

Shaft seal shall be mechanical-seal or stuffing-box type. Impeller shall be statically and dynamically balanced. Each pump casing shall be designed to withstand the discharge head specified plus the static head on system plus 50 percent of the total, but not less than 125 psig. Pump casing and bearing housing shall be close grained cast iron. High points in the casing shall be provided with manual air vents; low points shall be provided with drain plugs. Impeller, impeller wearing rings, glands, casing wear rings, and shaft sleeve shall be bronze. Shaft shall be carbon or alloy steel, turned and ground. Bearings shall be ball-bearings, roller-bearings, or oil-lubricated bronze-sleeve type bearings, and be efficiently sealed or isolated to prevent loss of oil or entrance of dirt or water. Pump and motor shall be mounted on a common cast iron base having lipped edges and tapped drainage openings or structural steel base with lipped edges or drain pan and tapped drainage openings. Pump shall be provided with shaft coupling guard. Close coupled pumps shall be provided with drip pockets and tapped openings. Pump motor shall have the required capacity to prevent overloading with pump operating at any point on its characteristic curve. Pump speed shall not exceed 3,600 rpm, except where the pump head is less than 60 feet of water, the pump speed shall not exceed 1,750 rpm. Pump shall be accessible for servicing without disturbing piping connections.

##### 2.8.1.2 Mechanical Shaft Seals

Seals shall be single, inside mounted, end-face-elastomer bellows type with stainless steel spring, brass or stainless steel seal head, carbon rotating face, and tungsten carbide or ceramic sealing face. Glands shall be bronze and of the water-flush design to provide lubrication flush across the face of the seal. Bypass line from pump discharge to flush connection in gland shall be provided, with filter or cyclone separator in line.

### 2.8.2 Expansion Tanks

Expansion tanks shall be welded steel, constructed, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME BPV VIII Div 1 for a working pressure of 125 psig and precharged to the minimum operating pressure. Expansion tanks shall have a replaceable diaphragm and be the captive air type. Tanks shall accommodate expanded water of the system generated within the normal operating temperature range, limiting this pressure increase at all components in the system to the maximum allowable pressure at those components. Each tank air chamber shall be fitted with an air charging valve. Tanks shall be supported by steel legs or bases for vertical installation or steel saddles for horizontal installations. The only air in the system shall be the permanent sealed-in air cushion contained within the expansion tank.

### 2.8.3 Air Separator Tanks

External air separation tank shall be steel, constructed, tested, and stamped in accordance with ASME BPV VIII Div 1 for a working pressure of 125 psig.

## 2.10 WATER TREATMENT SYSTEMS

When water treatment is specified, the use of chemical-treatment products containing hexavalent chromium (Cr) is prohibited.

### 2.10.2 Chilled Water

Water to be used in the chilled water systems shall be treated to maintain the conditions recommended by this specification as well as the recommendations from the manufacturers of the condenser and evaporator coils. Chemicals shall meet all required federal, state, and local environmental regulations for the treatment of evaporator coils and direct discharge to the sanitary sewer.

### 2.10.3 Glycol Solution

A 20 percent concentration by volume of industrial grade ethylene glycol shall be provided for the system. The glycol shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D 1384 with less than 0.5 mils penetration per year for all system metals. The glycol shall contain corrosion inhibitors. Silicate based inhibitors shall not be used. The solution shall be compatible with pump seals, other elements of the system, and water treatment chemicals used within the system.

### 2.10.5 Chilled Water System

A shot feeder shall be provided on the chilled water piping. Size and capacity of feeder shall be based on local requirements and water analysis. The feeder shall be furnished with an air vent, gauge glass, funnel, valves, fittings, and piping.

## 2.11 PIPING COMPONENTS

### 2.11.1 Water Piping and Fittings

#### 2.11.1.1 Steel Pipe

Steel pipe shall conform to ASTM A 53, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grades A or B. Type F pipe shall not be used.

#### 2.11.1.2 Steel Pipe Joints and Fittings

Joints and fittings shall be welded, flanged, threaded, or grooved as indicated. If not otherwise indicated, piping 1 inch and smaller shall be threaded; piping larger than 1 inch and smaller than 3 inches shall be either threaded, grooved, or welded; and piping 3 inches and larger shall be grooved, welded, or flanged. Rigid grooved mechanical joints and fittings may only be used in serviceable aboveground locations where the temperature of the circulating medium does not exceed 230 degrees F. Flexible grooved joints shall be used only as a flexible connector with grooved pipe system. Unless otherwise specified, grooved piping components shall meet the corresponding criteria specified for the similar welded, flanged, or threaded component specified herein. The manufacturer of each fitting shall be permanently identified on the body of the fitting in accordance with MSS SP-25.

- a. Welded Joints and Fittings: Welded fittings shall conform to ASTM A 234/A234M, and identified with the appropriate grade and marking symbol. Butt-welding fittings shall conform to ASME B16.9. Socket-welding and threaded fittings shall conform to ASME B16.11.
- b. Flanged Joints and Fittings: Flanges shall conform to ASTM A 181/A181M and ASME B16.5 Class 150. Gaskets shall be nonasbestos compressed material in accordance with ASME B16.21, 1/16 inch thickness, full face or self-centering flat ring type. This gaskets shall contain aramid fibers bonded with styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) or nitrile butadiene rubber (NBR). Bolts, nuts, and bolt patterns shall conform to ASME B16.5. Bolts shall be high or intermediate strength material conforming to ASTM A 193/A193M.
- c. Threaded Joints and Fittings: Threads shall conform to ASME B1.20.1. Pipe nipples shall conform to ASTM A 733, type and material to match adjacent piping. Unions shall conform to ASME B16.39, type as required to match adjacent piping.
- d. Dielectric Unions and Flanges: Dielectric unions shall have the tensile strength and dimensional requirements specified. Unions shall have metal connections on both ends threaded to match adjacent piping. Metal parts of dielectric unions shall be separated with a nylon insulator to prevent current flow between dissimilar metals. Unions shall be suitable for the required operating pressures and temperatures. Dielectric flanges shall provide the same pressure ratings as standard flanges and provide complete electrical isolation.
- e. Grooved Mechanical Joints and Fittings: Joints and fittings shall be designed for not less than 125 psig service and shall be the product of the same manufacturer. Fitting and coupling houses shall be malleable iron conforming to ASTM A 47, Grade 32510; ductile iron conforming to ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12; or steel conforming ASTM A 106, Grade B or ASTM A 53. Gaskets shall be molded synthetic rubber with central cavity, pressure responsive configuration and shall conform to ASTM D 2000 Grade No. 2CA615A15B44F17Z for circulating medium up to 230 degrees F or Grade No. M3BA610A15B44Z for circulating medium up to 200 degrees F. Grooved joints shall conform to AWWA C606. Coupling

nuts and bolts shall be steel and shall conform to ASTM A 183.

#### 2.11.1.3 Copper Tube

Copper tubing for water service shall conform to ASTM B 88, Type K or L.

#### 2.11.1.4 Copper Tube Joints and Fittings

Wrought copper and bronze solder-joint pressure fittings shall conform to ASME B16.22 and ASTM B 75. Cast copper alloy solder-joint pressure fittings shall conform to ASME B16.18. Cast copper alloy fittings for flared copper tube shall conform to ASME B16.26 and ASTM B 62. Brass or bronze adapters for brazed tubing may be used for connecting tubing to flanges and to threaded ends of valves and equipment. Extracted brazed tee joints produced with an acceptable tool and installed as recommended by the manufacturer may be used.

#### 2.11.2 Water Piping Valves and Accessories

Valves shall be rated for Class 125 and shall be suitable for operating temperature of 250 degrees F. Valves shall be suitable for the working pressure of the pipe in which installed. Valves shall meet the material, fabrication and operating requirements of ASME B31.1. Chain operators shall be provided for valves located 10 feet or higher above the floor. Valves in sizes larger than 1 inch and used on steel pipe systems, may be provided with rigid grooved mechanical joint ends. Such grooved end valves shall be subject to the same requirements as rigid grooved mechanical joints and fittings and, shall be provided by the same manufacturer as the grooved pipe joint and fitting system.

##### 2.11.2.1 Gate Valves

Gate valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall conform to MSS SP-80 and shall be bronze with rising stem and threaded, soldered, or flanged ends. Gate valves 3 inches and larger shall conform to MSS SP-70, Type I, II, Class 125, Design OF and shall be cast iron with bronze trim, outside screw and yoke, and flanged or threaded ends.

##### 2.11.2.2 Globe and Angle Valves

Globe and angle valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall conform to MSS SP-80 and shall be bronze with threaded, soldered, or flanged ends. Globe and angle valves 3 inches and larger shall conform to MSS SP-85 and shall be cast iron with bronze trim and flanged or threaded ends.

##### 2.11.2.3 Check Valves

Check valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall conform to MSS SP-80 and shall be bronze with threaded, soldered, or flanged ends. Check valves 3 inches and larger shall conform to MSS SP-71, Type I, II, III, or IV, Class 125 or 150 and shall be cast iron with bronze trim and flanged or threaded ends.

##### 2.11.2.4 Butterfly Valves

Butterfly valves shall be in accordance with MSS SP-67, Type 1 and shall be 2 flange or lug wafer type, and shall be bubble tight at [150] [250] psig. Valve bodies shall be cast iron, malleable iron, or steel. Valves smaller than 8 inches shall have throttling handles with a minimum of seven locking positions. Valves 8 inches and larger shall have totally enclosed

manual gear operators with adjustable balance return stops and position indicators. Valves in insulated lines shall have extended neck to accommodate insulation thickness.

#### 2.11.2.6 Ball Valves

Ball valves 1/2 inch and larger shall conform to MSS SP-72 or MSS SP-110 and shall be ductile iron or bronze with threaded, soldered, or flanged ends. Valves 8 inches or larger shall be provided with manual gear operators with position indicators.

#### 2.11.2.7 Calibrated Balancing Valves

Each valve shall be calibrated so that flow can be determined when the temperature and pressure differential across valve is known. Valves shall have an integral pointer which registers the degree of valve opening. Each valve shall be constructed with internal seals to prevent leakage and shall be supplied with preformed insulation. Valve bodies shall be provided with tapped openings and pipe extensions with positive shutoff valves outside of pipe insulation. The pipe extensions shall be provided with quick connecting hose fittings for a portable meter to measure the pressure differential. One portable differential meter, suitable for the operating pressure specified, shall be provided. The meter shall be complete with hoses, vent, integral metering connections, and carrying case as recommended by the valve manufacturer.

#### 2.11.2.9 Air Vents

Manual air vents shall be brass or bronze valves or cocks suitable for 125 psig service, and furnished with threaded plugs or caps. Automatic air vents shall be float type, cast iron, stainless steel, or forged steel construction, suitable for 125 psig service.

#### 2.11.2.10 Strainers

Strainers shall be in accordance with ASTM F 1199, except as modified herein. Strainer shall be the cleanable, basket or "Y" type, the same size as the pipeline. The strainer bodies shall be fabricated of cast iron with bottoms drilled, and tapped. The bodies shall have arrows clearly cast on the sides indicating the direction of flow. Each strainer shall be equipped with removable cover and sediment screen. The screen shall be made of minimum 22 gauge corrosion-resistant steel with small perforations numbering not less than 400 per square inch to provide a net free area through the basket of at least 3.30 times that of the entering pipe. The flow shall be into the screen and out through the perforations.

#### 2.11.2.11 Combination Strainer and Suction Diffuser

A combination strainer and suction diffuser, consisting of an angle type body with removable strainer basket and straightening vanes, a suction pipe support, and a blowdown outlet, shall be provided on pump suction. The combination strainer and suction diffuser shall be in accordance with ASTM F 1199, except as modified herein.

#### 2.11.2.12 Pump Discharge Valves

Pump discharge valves shall be installed where indicated and shall perform the functions of a nonslam check valve, a manual balancing valve, and a shutoff. Valves shall be of cast iron or ductile iron construction with

bronze and/or stainless steel accessories. Valves shall have an integral pointer which registers the degree of valve opening. Flow through the valve shall be manually adjustable from bubble tight shutoff to full flow. Valves smaller than 2 inches shall have NPT connections. Valves 2 inches and larger shall have flanged or grooved end connections. The valve design shall allow the back seat for the stem to be replaced in the field under full line pressure. Valve Cv rating shall be as indicated.

#### 2.11.2.13 Backflow Preventers

Backflow preventers shall be in accordance with Section 15400 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

#### 2.11.2.14 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Flexible pipe connectors shall be designed for 125 psig or 150 psig service as appropriate for the static head plus the system head, and 230 degrees F, for grooved end flexible connectors. The flexible section shall be constructed of rubber, tetrafluoroethylene resin, or corrosion-resisting steel, bronze, monel, or galvanized steel. The flexible section shall be suitable for intended service with end connections to match adjacent piping. Flanged assemblies shall be equipped with limit bolts to restrict maximum travel to the manufacturer's standard limits. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of the flexible connectors shall be as recommended by the manufacturer for the service intended. Internal sleeves or liners, compatible with circulating medium, shall be provided when recommended by the manufacturer. Covers to protect the bellows shall be provided where indicated.

#### 2.11.2.15 Pressure Gauges

Gauges shall conform to ASME B40.1 and shall be provided with throttling type needle valve or a pulsation dampener and shut-off valve. Gauge shall be a minimum of 3-1/2 inches in diameter with a range from 0 psig to approximately 1.5 times the maximum system working pressure.

#### 2.11.2.16 Thermometers

Thermometers shall have brass, malleable iron, or aluminum alloy case and frame, clear protective face, permanently stabilized glass tube with indicating-fluid column, white face, black numbers, and a 9 inch scale. Thermometers shall have rigid stems with straight, angular, or inclined pattern.

#### 2.11.2.17 Pipe Nipples

Pipe nipples shall be in accordance with ASTM A 733 and be of material to match adjacent piping.

#### 2.11.2.18 Pipe Unions

Pipe unions shall be in accordance with ASME B16.39 and be of material to match adjacent piping.

#### 2.11.2.19 Solder

Solder for water piping shall be in accordance with ASTM B 32, alloy grade 50B.



#### 2.11.6 Escutcheons

Escutcheons shall be chromium-plated iron or chromium-plated brass, either one piece or split pattern, held in place by internal spring tension or set screws.

#### 2.11.7 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69.

### 2.12 FABRICATION

#### 2.12.1 Factory Coating

Unless otherwise specified, equipment and component items, when fabricated from ferrous metal, shall be factory finished with the manufacturer's standard finish, except that items located outside of buildings shall have weather resistant finishes that will withstand 500 hours exposure to the salt spray test specified in ASTM B 117 using a 5 percent sodium chloride solution. Immediately after completion of the test, the specimen shall show no signs of blistering, wrinkling, cracking, or loss of adhesion and no sign of rust creepage beyond 1/8 inch on either side of the scratch mark. Cut edges of galvanized surfaces where hot-dip galvanized sheet steel is used shall be coated with a zinc-rich coating conforming to ASTM D 520, Type I.

#### 2.12.2 Field Painting

Painting required for surfaces not otherwise specified, and finish painting of items only primed at the factory are specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL.

##### 2.12.2.1 Color Coding

Color coding for piping identification is specified in Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL.

##### 2.12.2.2 Color Coding Scheme

A color coding scheme for locating hidden piping shall be in accordance with Section 15400 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE

### 2.14 SUPPLEMENTAL COMPONENTS/SERVICES

#### 2.14.1 Drain and Makeup Water Piping

Piping shall comply with the requirements of Section 15400 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE. Drains which connect to sanitary sewer system shall be connected by means of an indirect waste.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

All work shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's published diagrams, recommendations, and equipment warranty requirements. Where equipment is specified to conform to the requirements of ASME BPV VIII Div 1 and ASME BPV IX, the design, fabrication, and installation of the system shall conform to ASME BPV VIII Div 1 and ASME BPV IX.

### 3.1.1 Refrigeration System

#### 3.1.1.1 Equipment

Necessary supports shall be provided for all equipment, appurtenances, and pipe as required, including frames or supports for pumps and similar items.

Floor-mounted equipment shall be set on not less than a 6 inch concrete pad doweled in place. Concrete foundations for floor mounted pumps shall have a mass equivalent to three times the weight of the components, pump, base plate, and motor to be supported. Lines connected to pumps shall be provided with flexible connectors. Foundation drawings, bolt-setting information, and foundation bolts shall be furnished prior to concrete foundation construction for all equipment indicated or required to have concrete foundations. Concrete for foundations shall be as specified in Section 03300 CAST-IN-PLACE STRUCTURAL CONCRETE. Equipment shall be properly leveled, aligned, and secured in place in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### 3.1.1.4 Automatic Controls

Automatic controls for the central refrigeration system specified in paragraph REFRIGERATION SYSTEM shall be provided with the central refrigeration equipment. These controls shall operate automatically to balance the equipment capacity with the load on the air conditioning system, and shall be fully coordinated with and integrated into the temperature control system specified in Section 15895 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM and 15951 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC.

### 3.1.2 General Piping Installation

#### 3.1.2.1 Brazed Joints

Before brazing copper joints, both the outside of the tube and the inside of the fitting shall be cleaned with a wire fitting brush until the entire joint surface is bright and clean. Brazing flux shall not be used. Surplus brazing material shall be removed at all joints. Steel tubing joints shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Joints in steel tubing shall be painted with the same material as the baked-on coating within 8 hours after joints are made. Tubing shall be protected against oxidation during brazing by continuous purging of the inside of the piping using nitrogen. All piping shall be supported prior to brazing and shall not be sprung or forced.

#### 3.1.2.2 Threaded Joints

Threaded joints shall be made with tapered threads and made tight with PTFE tape complying with ASTM D 3308 or equivalent thread-joint compound applied to the male threads only. Not more than three threads shall show after the joint is made.

#### 3.1.2.3 Welded Joints

Welding shall be in accordance with qualified procedures using qualified welders and welding operators. Procedures and welders shall be qualified in accordance with ASME BPV IX. Welding procedures qualified by others, and welders and welding operators qualified by another employer may be accepted as permitted by ASME B31.1. Contracting Officer shall be notified

24 hours in advance of welding tests and the tests shall be performed at the work site if practical. A permanent mark shall be applied near each weld to identify the welder who made that weld. Welded joints in steel refrigerant piping shall be fusion-welded. Changes in direction of piping shall be made with welded fittings only; mitering or notching pipe or other similar construction to form elbows or tees will not be permitted. Branch connections shall be made with welding tees or forged welding branch outlets. Steel pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned of all scale and foreign matter before the piping is assembled. During welding the pipe and fittings shall be filled with an inert gas, such as nitrogen, to prevent the formation of scale. Beveling, alignment, heat treatment, and inspection of weld shall conform to ASME B31.1. Weld defects shall be removed and rewelded at no additional cost to the Government. Electrodes shall be stored and dried in accordance with AWS D1.1 or as recommended by the manufacturer. Electrodes that have been wetted or that have lost any of their coating shall not be used.

#### 3.1.2.4 Flanged Joints

Flanged joints shall be faced true, provided with gaskets suitable for use with refrigerants and made square and tight. When steel refrigerant piping is used, union or flange joints shall be provided in each line immediately preceding the connection to each piece of equipment requiring maintenance, such as compressors, coils, chillers, control valves, and other similar items.

#### 3.1.2.5 Flared Connections

When flared connections are used, a suitable lubricant shall be used between the back of the flare and the nut in order to avoid tearing the flare while tightening the nut.

#### 3.1.2.6 Thermometers

Thermometers shall be located specifically on, but not limited to the following: the sensing element of each automatic temperature control device where a thermometer is not an integral part thereof the liquid line leaving receiver and the suction line at each evaporator or liquid cooler.

#### 3.1.2.7 Supports

- a. General: All refrigerant pipe supports shall be in accordance with ASME B31.5. Hangers used to support piping 2 inches and larger shall be fabricated to permit adequate adjustment after erection while still supporting the load. Pipe guides and anchors shall be installed to keep pipes in accurate alignment, to direct the expansion movement, and to prevent buckling, swaying, and undue strain. Piping subjected to vertical movement, when operating temperatures exceed ambient temperatures, shall be supported by variable spring hangers and supports or by constant support hangers.
- b. Structural Attachments: Structural steel brackets required to support piping, headers, and equipment, but not shown, shall be provided under this section. Material and installation shall be as specified under Section 05120 STRUCTURAL STEEL.

#### 3.1.2.8 Pipe Hangers, Inserts, and Supports

Pipe hangers, inserts, and supports shall conform to MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-69, except as modified herein. Pipe hanger types 5, 12, and 26 shall not be used.

- a. Hangers: Type 3 shall not be used on insulated piping.
- b. Inserts: Type 18 inserts shall be secured to concrete forms before concrete is placed. Continuous inserts which allow more adjustments may be used if they otherwise meet the requirements for Type 18 inserts.
- c. C-Clamps: Type 19 and 23 C-clamps shall be torqued per MSS SP-69 and have both locknuts and retaining devices, furnished by the manufacturer. Field-fabricated C-clamp bodies or retaining devices are not acceptable.
- d. Angle Attachments: Type 20 attachments used on angles and channels shall be furnished with an added malleable-iron heel plate or adapter.
- e. Hangers: Type 24 may be used only on trapeze hanger systems or on fabricated frames.
- f. Saddles and Shields: Where Type 39 saddle or Type 40 shield are permitted for a particular pipe attachment application, the Type 39 saddle, connected to the pipe, shall be used on all pipe 4 inches and larger when the temperature of the medium is 60 degrees F or higher. Type 40 shields shall be used on all piping less than 4 inches and all piping 4 inches and larger carrying medium less than 60 degrees F. A high density insulation insert of cellular glass shall be used under the Type 40 shield for piping 2 inches and larger.
- g. Horizontal Pipe Supports: Horizontal pipe supports shall be spaced as specified in MSS SP-69 and a support shall be installed not over 1 foot from the pipe fitting joint at each change in direction of the piping. Pipe supports shall be spaced not over 5 feet apart at valves. Pipe hanger loads suspended from steel joist with hanger loads between panel points in excess of 50 pounds shall have the excess hanger loads suspended from panel points.
- h. Vertical Pipe Supports: Vertical pipe shall be supported at each floor, except at slab-on-grade, and at intervals of not more than 15 feet, not more than 8 feet from end of risers, and at vent terminations.
- i. Pipe Guides: Type 35 guides using, steel, reinforced polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) or graphite slides shall be provided where required to allow longitudinal pipe movement. Lateral restraints shall be provided as required. Slide materials shall be suitable for the system operating temperatures, atmospheric conditions, and bearing loads encountered.
- j. Steel Slides: Where steel slides do not require provisions for restraint of lateral movement, an alternate guide method may be used. On piping 4 inches and larger, a Type 39 saddle shall be used. On piping under 4 inches, a Type 40 protection shield may be attached to the pipe or insulation and freely rest on a steel

slide plate.

- k. Multiple Pipe Runs: In the support of multiple pipe runs on a common base member, a clip or clamp shall be used where each pipe crosses the base support member. Spacing of the base support members shall not exceed the hanger and support spacing required for an individual pipe in the multiple pipe run.

#### 3.1.2.11 Pipe Sleeves

Sleeves shall not be installed in structural members except where indicated or approved. Rectangular and square openings shall be as detailed. Each sleeve shall extend through its respective wall, floor, or roof, and shall be cut flush with each surface. Pipes passing through concrete or masonry wall or concrete floors or roofs shall be provided with pipe sleeves fitted into place at the time of construction. Unless otherwise indicated, sleeves shall be of such size as to provide a minimum of 1/4 inch all-around clearance between bare pipe and sleeves or between jacketed-insulation and sleeves. Sleeves in bearing walls, waterproofing membrane floors, and wet areas shall be steel pipe or cast iron pipe. Sleeves in non-bearing walls, floors, or ceilings may be steel pipe, cast iron pipe, galvanized sheet metal with lock-type longitudinal seam and of the metal thickness indicated, or moisture resistant fiber or plastic. Except in pipe chases or interior walls, the annular space between pipe and sleeve or between jacket over-insulation and sleeve shall be sealed as indicated and specified in Section 07900 JOINT SEALING. Pipes passing through wall waterproofing membrane shall be sleeved as specified above, and a waterproofing clamping flange shall be installed.

- a. Fire-Rated Walls and Partitions: Penetration of fire-rated walls and partitions shall be sealed as specified in Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING.

#### 3.1.2.12 Escutcheons

Finished surfaces where exposed piping, bare or insulated, pass through floors, walls, or ceilings, except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms, shall be provided with escutcheons. Where sleeves project slightly from floors, special deep-type escutcheons shall be used. Escutcheon shall be secured to pipe or pipe covering.

#### 3.1.2.13 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided for all concealed valves, vents, controls, and items requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 05500 MISCELLANEOUS METALS.

#### 3.1.3 Water Piping

Pipe and fitting installation shall conform to the requirements of ASME B31.1. Pipe shall be cut accurately to measurements established at the jobsite, and worked into place without springing or forcing, completely clearing all windows, doors, and other openings. Cutting or other weakening of the building structure to facilitate piping installation will not be permitted without written approval. Pipe or tubing shall be cut square, shall have burrs removed by reaming, and shall permit free expansion and contraction without causing damage to the building structure,

pipe, joints, or hangers.

#### 3.1.3.1 Directional Changes

Changes in direction shall be made with fittings, except that bending of pipe 4 inches and smaller will be permitted, provided a pipe bender is used and wide weep bends are formed. The centerline radius of bends shall not be less than 6 diameters of the pipe. Bent pipe showing kinks, wrinkles, flattening, or other malformations will not be accepted.

#### 3.1.3.2 Functional Requirements

Horizontal supply mains shall pitch down in the direction of flow as indicated. The grade shall not be less than 1 inch in 40 feet. Reducing fittings shall be used for changes in pipe sizes. Open ends of pipelines and equipment shall be capped or plugged during installation to keep dirt or other foreign materials out of the system. Pipe not otherwise specified shall be uncoated. Connections to appliances shall be made with malleable iron unions for steel pipe 2-1/2 inches or less in diameter, and with flanges for pipe 3 inches and above in diameter. Connections between ferrous and copper piping shall be electrically isolated from each other with dielectric unions or flanges. All piping located in air plenums shall conform to NFPA 90A requirements. Pipe and fittings installed in inaccessible conduits or trenches under concrete floor slabs shall be welded.

#### 3.1.3.3 Valves

Isolation gate or ball valves shall be installed on each side of each piece of equipment, at the midpoint of all looped mains, and at any other points indicated or required for draining, isolating, or sectionalizing purpose. Isolation valves may be omitted where balancing cocks are installed to provide both balancing and isolation functions. Each valve except check valves shall be identified. Valves in horizontal lines shall be installed with stems horizontal or above.

#### 3.1.3.4 Air Vents

Air vents shall be provided at all high points, on all water coils, and where indicated to ensure adequate venting of the piping system.

#### 3.1.3.5 Drains

Drains shall be provided at all low points and where indicated to ensure complete drainage of the piping. Drains shall be accessible, and shall consist of nipples and caps or plugged tees unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.1.3.6 Flexible Pipe Connectors

Preinsulated flexible pipe connectors shall be attached to other components in strict accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Hangers, when required to suspend the connectors, shall be of the type recommended by the flexible pipe connector manufacturer and shall be provided at the intervals recommended.

#### 3.1.3.7 Flanges and Unions

Except where copper tubing is used, union or flanged joints shall be

provided in each line immediately preceding the connection to each piece of equipment or material requiring maintenance such as coils, pumps, control valves, and other similar items.

#### 3.1.3.8 Grooved Mechanical Joints

Grooves shall be prepared in accordance with the coupling manufacturer's instructions. Pipe and groove dimensions shall comply with the tolerances specified by the coupling manufacturer. The diameter of grooves made in the field shall be measured using a "go/no-go" gauge, vernier or dial caliper, or narrow-land micrometer. Groove width and dimension of groove from end of pipe shall be measured and recorded for each change in grooving tool setup to verify compliance with coupling manufacturer's tolerances.

#### 3.1.5 Mechanical Room Ventilation

Mechanical rooms containing a central refrigerated air-conditioning system shall be ventilated to the outdoors. The ventilation system shall be in accordance with Section 15895 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM.

#### 3.1.6 Field Applied Insulation

Field applied insulation other than that specified for water boxes and headers shall be as specified in Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

#### 3.1.7 Factory Applied Insulation

##### 3.1.7.2 Liquid Coolers

Liquid coolers (including chilled water headers or boxes), which may have factory or field applied insulation, shall be insulated with unicellular plastic foam. Insulation shall be not less than 3/4 inch thick or have a maximum thermal conductivity of 0.28 Btu/(hr.)(sq. ft.)(degree F.)). In lieu of the above insulation, a 2 inch thickness of urethane foam may be used. Urethane foam shall be completely covered and sealed with a sheet metal jacket not lighter than 20 gauge. Insulation on heads of coolers shall be constructed to provide easy removal and replacement of heads without damage to the insulation.

### 3.2 TESTS

#### 3.2.1 Field Tests

Tests shall be conducted in the presence of the Contracting Officer. Water and electricity required for the tests will be furnished by the Government.

Any material, equipment, instruments, and personnel required for the test shall be provided by the Contractor. The services of a qualified technician shall be provided as required to perform all tests and procedures indicated herein. Field tests shall be coordinated with Section 15990 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS.

##### 3.2.1.1 Water Pipe Testing

After cleaning, water piping shall be hydrostatically tested at a pressure equal to 150 percent of the total system operating pressure for period of time sufficient to inspect every joint in the system and in no case less than 2 hours. Leaks shall be repaired and piping retested until test is

successful. No loss of pressure shall be allowed. Leaks shall be repaired by rewelding or replacing pipe or fittings. Caulking of joints will not be permitted. Concealed and insulated piping shall be tested in place before concealing.

### 3.2.2 System Performance Tests

After the foregoing tests have been completed and before each refrigeration system is accepted, tests to demonstrate the general operating characteristics of all equipment shall be conducted by a registered professional engineer or an approved manufacturer's startup representative experienced in system startup and testing, at such times as directed. Tests shall cover a period of not less than 2 days for each system and shall demonstrate that the entire system is functioning in accordance with the drawings and specifications. Corrections and adjustments shall be made as necessary and tests shall be re-conducted to demonstrate that the entire system is functioning as specified.

### 3.3 INSPECTIONS

At the conclusion of the one year period, the cooling tower and condenser shall be inspected for problems due to corrosion, scale, and biological growth. If the cooling tower and condenser are found not to conform to the manufacturers recommended conditions, and the water treatment company recommendations have been followed; the water treatment company shall provide all chemicals and labor for cleaning or repairing the equipment as required by the manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.4 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICE

The services of a factory-trained representative shall be provided for 1 day. The representative shall advise on the following:

#### a. Hermetic machines:

- (1) Testing hermetic water-chilling unit under pressure for refrigerant leaks; evacuation and dehydration of machine to an absolute pressure of not over 300 microns.
- (2) Charging the machine with refrigerant.
- (3) Starting the machine.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

#### 3.5.1 Piping

Pipes shall be cleaned free of scale and thoroughly flushed of all foreign matter. A temporary bypass shall be provided for all water coils to prevent flushing water from passing through coils. Strainers and valves shall be thoroughly cleaned. Prior to testing and balancing, air shall be removed from all water systems by operating the air vents. Temporary measures, such as piping the overflow from vents to a collecting vessel shall be taken to avoid water damage during the venting process. Air vents shall be plugged or capped after the system has been vented.

#### 3.5.2 Equipment

Equipment shall be wiped clean, with all traces of oil, dust, dirt, or



paint spots removed. Temporary filters shall be provided for all fans that are operated during construction, and new filters shall be installed after all construction dirt has been removed from the building. System shall be maintained in this clean condition until final acceptance. Bearings shall be properly lubricated with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Belts shall be tightened to proper tension. Control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment shall be adjusted to setting indicated or directed. Fans shall be adjusted to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATIONS

Contractor shall conduct a training course for the operating staff as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period shall consist of a total 8 hours of normal working time and start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests. The field instructions shall cover all of the items contained in the Operation and Maintenance Manuals as well as demonstrations of routine maintenance operations.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15895

## AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM

**02/94**

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 COORDINATION OF TRADES Ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories shall be furnished as required to provide a complete installation and to eliminate interference with other construction.
- 1.3 DELIVERY AND STORAGE
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS
- 2.2 ASBESTOS PROHIBITION
- 2.3 NAMEPLATES
- 2.5 PIPING COMPONENTS
  - 2.5.7 Chilled Water System
  - 2.5.8 Water Heating System
  - 2.5.10 Backflow Preventers
  - 2.5.17 Insulation
  - 2.5.18 Condensate Drain Lines
- 2.6 ELECTRICAL WORK
- 2.7 CONTROLS
- 2.8 DUCTWORK COMPONENTS
  - 2.8.1 Metal Ductwork
    - 2.8.1.1 Transitions
    - 2.8.1.3 Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts
    - 2.8.1.4 General Service Duct Connectors
  - 2.8.3 Ductwork Accessories
    - 2.8.3.1 Duct Access Doors
    - 2.8.3.2 Fire Dampers
    - 2.8.3.3 Manual Balancing Dampers
    - 2.8.3.4 Branch Connections
  - 2.8.4 Duct Sleeves, Framed Prepared Openings, Closure Collars
    - 2.8.4.1 Duct Sleeves
    - 2.8.4.2 Framed Prepared Openings
    - 2.8.4.3 Closure Collars
  - 2.8.7 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles
    - 2.8.7.1 Diffusers
    - 2.8.7.2 Registers and Grilles
  - 2.8.9 Air Vents, and Roof Caps
  - 2.8.10 Bird Screens and Frames
- 2.9 AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT
  - 2.9.1 Fans
    - 2.9.1.7 Propeller Type Power Roof Ventilators
    - 2.9.1.9 Ceiling Exhaust Fans

- 2.9.2 Coils
  - 2.9.2.2 Water Coils
- 2.9.3 Air Filters
  - 2.9.3.1 Extended Surface Pleated Panel Filters
- 2.9.4 Variable Frequency Drive Unit
  - 2.9.4.1 Variable Frequency Drive Units Shall have the following features:
    - 2.9.4.2 Controllers shall have circuitry to initiate an orderly shutdown after the motor stops spinning and when conditions are corrected. The controller shall not be damaged by the following electrical disturbances:
  - 2.9.4.3 Units shall have the following door mounted accessories:
- 2.10 AIR HANDLING UNITS
  - 2.10.1 Field-Fabricated Air Handling Units
  - 2.10.2 Factory-Fabricated Air Handling Units
    - 2.10.2.1 Casings
    - 2.10.2.2 Heating and Cooling Coils
    - 2.10.2.4 Air Filters
    - 2.10.2.5 Fans
    - 2.10.2.6 Access Sections and Filter/Mixing Boxes
    - 2.10.2.8 Dampers
- 2.11 TERMINAL UNITS
  - 2.11.3 Variable Air Volume (VAV) and Dual Duct Terminal Units
    - 2.11.3.2 Variable Volume, Single Duct
- 2.13 FACTORY PAINTING

### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION
  - 3.1.4.2 Fire Seal
  - 3.1.4.3 Escutcheons
  - 3.1.5 Condensate Drain Lines
  - 3.1.9 Equipment and Installation
  - 3.1.10 Access Panels
  - 3.1.11 Flexible Connectors
  - 3.1.12 Sleeved and Framed Openings
  - 3.1.13 Metal Ductwork
  - 3.1.19 Insulation
  - 3.1.20 Duct Test Holes
- 3.3 PIPING HYDROSTATIC TEST
- 3.4 DUCTWORK LEAK TEST
- 3.5 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING
- 3.6 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING
- 3.7 PERFORMANCE TESTS
- 3.8 FIELD TRAINING

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 15895

AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM  
**02/94**

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AIR CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE (ARI)

ARI 410	(1991) Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils
ARI 430	(1989) Central-Station Air-Handling Units
ARI 880	(1990) Air Terminals
ARI Guideline D	(1987) Application and Installation of Central Station Air-Handling Units

## AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION (AMCA)

AMCA 210	(1985) Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating
AMCA 300	(1996) Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans

## AMERICAN BEARING MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (ABEMA)

ABEMA 9	(1990) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings
ABEMA 11	(1990) Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Roller Bearings

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

ASTM A 53	(1993a) Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless
ASTM A 123	(1989a) Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A 924	(1994) General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
ASTM B 117	(1994) Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Testing Apparatus

ASTM C 1071	(1991) Thermal and Acoustical Insulation (Glass Fiber, Duct Lining Material)
ASTM D 520	(1984; R 1989) Zinc Dust Pigment
ASTM D 1654	(1992) Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments
ASTM D 3359	(1995) Measuring Adhesion by Tape Test
ASTM E 437	(1992) Industrial Wire Cloth and Screens (Square Opening Series)

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING  
ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE 52.1	(1992) Gravimetric and Dust-Spot Procedures for Testing Air-Cleaning Devices Used in General Ventilation for Removing Particulate Matter
ASHRAE 68	(1986) Laboratory Method of Testing In-Duct Sound Power Measurement Procedures for Fans
ASHRAE 70	(1991) Method of Testing Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA MG 1	(1993; Rev 1; Rev 2) Motors and Generators
-----------	--

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A	(1993) Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
----------	--

SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION  
(SMACNA)

SMACNA-05	(1992) Fire, Smoke and Radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC Systems
SMACNA-06	(1995) HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible
SMACNA-10	(1985) HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL-01	(1996; Supple) Building Materials Directory
UL-05	(1996; Supple) Fire Resistance Directory (3 Vol.)
UL 181	(1996; Rev Oct 1996) Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors

UL 214	(1993) Tests for Flame-Propagation of Fabrics and Films
UL 555	(1995) Fire Dampers
UL 586	(1996) High-Efficiency, Particulate, Air Filter Units
UL 900	(1994) Test Performance of Air Filter Units

1.2 COORDINATION OF TRADES Ductwork, piping offsets, fittings, and accessories shall be furnished as required to provide a complete installation and to eliminate interference with other construction.

### 1.3 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be stored with protection from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, or other contaminants.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-01 Data

Components and Equipment Data; GA.

Manufacturer's catalog data shall be included with the detail drawings for the following items. The data shall be highlighted to show model, size, options, etc., that are intended for consideration. Data shall be adequate to demonstrate compliance with contract requirements for the following:

- a. Ductwork Components
- b. Air Systems Equipment
- c. Air Handling Units
- d. Energy Recovery Devices
- e. Terminal Units

#### SD-04 Drawings

Air Supply, Distribution, Ventilation, and Exhaust Equipment; GA.

Drawings shall consist of equipment layout including assembly and installation details and electrical connection diagrams; ductwork layout showing the location of all supports and hangers, typical hanger details, gauge reinforcement, reinforcement spacing rigidity classification, and static pressure and seal classifications; and piping layout showing the location of all guides and anchors, the load imposed on each support or anchor, and typical support details. Drawings shall include any information required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated

and will properly function as a unit and shall show equipment relationship to other parts of the work, including clearances required for operation and maintenance.

#### SD-06 Instructions

Test Procedures; FIO.

Proposed test procedures for ductwork leak test and performance tests of systems, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing.

#### SD-07 Schedules

Test Schedules; FIO.

Proposed test schedules for hydrostatic test of piping, ductwork leak test, and performance tests, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related testing.

Field Training Schedule; GA.

Proposed schedule for field training, at least 2 weeks prior to the start of related training.

#### SD-08 Statements

Similar Services; FIO.

Statement demonstrating successful completion of similar services on at least 5 projects of similar size and scope, at least 2 weeks prior to submittal of other items required by this section.

#### SD-09 Reports

Test Reports; GA.

Test reports for the and performance tests in booklet form, upon completion of testing. Reports shall document phases of tests performed including initial test summary, repairs/adjustments made, and final test results.

#### SD-19 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Air Supply, Distribution, Ventilation, and Exhaust Manuals; GA.

Six manuals listing step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, shutdown, and routine maintenance, at least 2 weeks prior to field training. The manuals shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, parts list, list of parts and tools that should be kept in stock by the owner for routine maintenance including the name of a local supplier, simplified wiring and controls diagrams, troubleshooting guide, and recommended service organization (including address and telephone number) for each item of equipment. Each service organization submitted shall be capable of providing 4 hour onsite response to a service call on an emergency basis.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 STANDARD PRODUCTS

Components and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of products that are of a similar material, design and workmanship. The standard products shall have been in satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years before bid opening. The 2-year experience shall include applications of components and equipment under similar circumstances and of similar size. The 2 years must be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2-year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. The equipment items shall be supported by a service organization.

## 2.2 ASBESTOS PROHIBITION

Asbestos and asbestos-containing products shall not be used.

## 2.3 NAMEPLATES

Equipment shall have a nameplate that identifies the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, model or serial number, and catalog number.

## 2.5 PIPING COMPONENTS

### 2.5.7 Chilled Water System

Chilled water system shall be as specified in Section 15650 CENTRAL REFRIGERATED AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM.

### 2.5.8 Water Heating System

Water heating system shall be as specified in Section 15569 WATER HEATING; GAS UP TO 20 MBTUH.

### 2.5.10 Backflow Preventers

Backflow preventers shall be according to Section 15400 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

### 2.5.17 Insulation

Shop and field applied insulation shall be as specified in Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

### 2.5.18 Condensate Drain Lines

Condensate drainage shall be provided for each item of equipment that generates condensate as specified for drain, waste, and vent piping systems in Section 15400 PLUMBING, GENERAL PURPOSE.

## 2.6 ELECTRICAL WORK

Electrical motor-driven equipment specified shall be provided complete with motor, motor starter, and controls. Unless otherwise specified, electric equipment, including wiring and motor efficiencies, shall be according to Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Electrical characteristics and enclosure type shall be as shown. Unless otherwise indicated, motors of 1 hp and above shall be high efficiency type. Motor starters shall be



provided complete with thermal overload protection and other appurtenances necessary. Each motor shall be according to NEMA MG 1 and shall be of sufficient size to drive the equipment at the specified capacity without exceeding the nameplate rating of the motor. Manual or automatic control and protective or signal devices required for the operation specified, and any control wiring required for controls and devices, but not shown, shall be provided. Where two-speed or variable-speed motors are indicated, solid-state variable-speed controller may be provided to accomplish the same function. Solid-state variable-speed controllers shall be utilized for motors rated 10 hp or less. Adjustable frequency drives shall be used for larger motors.

## 2.7 CONTROLS

Controls shall be provided as specified in Section 15951 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC.

## 2.8 DUCTWORK COMPONENTS

### 2.8.1 Metal Ductwork

All aspects of metal ductwork construction, including all fittings and components, shall comply with SMACNA-06 unless otherwise specified. Elbows shall be radius type with a centerline radius of 1-1/2 times the width or diameter of the duct where space permits. Otherwise, elbows having a minimum radius equal to the width or diameter of the duct or square elbows with factory fabricated turning vanes may be used. Static pressure Class 1/2, 1, and 2 inch w.g. ductwork shall meet the requirements of Seal Class C. Class 3 through 10 inch shall meet the requirements of Seal Class A. Sealants shall conform to fire hazard classification specified in Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Pressure sensitive tape shall not be used as a sealant. Spiral lock seam duct, and flat oval shall be made with duct sealant and locked with not less than 3 equally spaced drive screws or other approved methods indicated in SMACNA-06. The sealant shall be applied to the exposed male part of the fitting collar so that the sealer will be on the inside of the joint and fully protected by the metal of the duct fitting. One brush coat of the sealant shall be applied over the outside of the joint to at least 2 inch band width covering all screw heads and joint gap. Dents in the male portion of the slip fitting collar will not be acceptable. Outdoor air intake ducts and plenums shall be fabricated with watertight soldered or brazed joints and seams.

#### 2.8.1.1 Transitions

Diverging air flow transitions shall be made with each side pitched out a maximum of 15 degrees, for an included angle of 30 degrees. Transitions for converging air flow shall be made with each side pitched in a maximum of 30 degrees, for an included angle of 60 degrees, or shall be as indicated. Factory-fabricated reducing fittings for systems using round duct sections when formed to the shape of the ASME short flow nozzle, need not comply with the maximum angles specified.

#### 2.8.1.3 Insulated Nonmetallic Flexible Duct Runouts

Flexible duct runouts shall be used only where indicated. Runout length shall be as shown on the drawings, but shall in no case exceed 10 feet. Runouts shall be preinsulated, factory fabricated, and shall comply with NFPA 90A and UL 181. Either field or factory applied vapor barrier shall be provided. Where coil induction or high velocity units are supplied with

vertical air inlets, a streamlined and vaned and mitered elbow transition piece shall be provided for connection to the flexible duct or hose. The last elbow to these units, other than the vertical air inlet type, shall be a die-stamped elbow and not a flexible connector. Insulated flexible connectors may be used as runouts. The insulated material and vapor barrier shall conform to the requirements of Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. The insulation material surface shall not be exposed to the air stream.

#### 2.8.1.4 General Service Duct Connectors

A flexible duct connector approximately 6 inches in width shall be provided where sheet metal connections are made to fans or where ducts of dissimilar metals are connected. For round/oval ducts, the flexible material shall be secured by stainless steel or zinc-coated, iron clinch-type draw bands. For rectangular ducts, the flexible material locked to metal collars shall be installed using normal duct construction methods. The composite connector system shall comply with UL 214 and be classified as "flame-retarded fabrics" in UL-01.

#### 2.8.3 Ductwork Accessories

##### 2.8.3.1 Duct Access Doors

Access doors shall be provided in ductwork and plenums where indicated and at all air flow measuring primaries, automatic dampers, fire dampers, coils, thermostats, and other apparatus requiring service and inspection in the duct system, and unless otherwise shown, shall conform to SMACNA-06. Access doors shall be provided upstream and downstream of air flow measuring primaries and heating and cooling coils. Doors shall be minimum 15 x 18 inches, unless otherwise shown. Where duct size will not accommodate this size door, the doors shall be made as large as practicable. Doors 24 x 24 inches or larger shall be provided with fasteners operable from both sides. Doors in insulated ducts shall be the insulated type.

##### 2.8.3.2 Fire Dampers

Fire dampers shall be 1-1/2 hour fire rated unless otherwise indicated. Fire dampers shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 90A and UL 555. Fire dampers shall be automatic operating type and shall have a dynamic rating suitable for the maximum air velocity and pressure differential to which it will be subjected. Fire dampers shall be approved for the specific application, and shall be installed according to their listing. Fire dampers shall be equipped with a steel sleeve or adequately sized frame installed in such a manner that disruption of the attached ductwork, if any, will not impair the operation of the damper. Sleeves or frames shall be equipped with perimeter mounting angles attached on both sides of the wall or floor opening. Ductwork in fire-rated floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly systems with air ducts that pierce the ceiling of the assemblies shall be constructed in conformance with UL-05. Fire dampers shall be curtain type with damper blades out of the air stream or single blade type or multi-blade type. Dampers shall not reduce the duct or the air transfer opening cross-sectional area. Dampers shall be installed so that the centerline of the damper depth or thickness is located in the centerline of the wall, partition or floor slab depth or thickness. Unless otherwise indicated, the installation details given in SMACNA-05 and in manufacturer's instructions for fire dampers shall be followed.

### 2.8.3.3 Manual Balancing Dampers

Manual balancing dampers shall be furnished with accessible operating mechanisms. Manual volume control dampers shall be operated by locking-type quadrant operators. Dampers shall be 2 gauges heavier than the duct in which installed. Unless otherwise indicated, multileaf dampers shall be opposed blade type with maximum blade width of 12 inches. Access doors or panels shall be provided for all concealed damper operators and locking setscrews. Unless otherwise indicated, the locking-type quadrant operators for dampers, when installed on ducts to be thermally insulated, shall be provided with stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters to provide clearance between the duct surface and the operator not less than the thickness of the insulation. Stand-off mounting items shall be integral with the operator or standard accessory of the damper manufacturer. Volume dampers shall be provided where indicated.

### 2.8.3.4 Branch Connections

Branch take offs shall be made by conical branch connections or 45 degree entry connections as indicated.

## 2.8.4 Duct Sleeves, Framed Prepared Openings, Closure Collars

### 2.8.4.1 Duct Sleeves

Duct sleeves shall be provided for round ducts 15 inches in diameter or less passing through floors, walls, ceilings, or roof, and installed during construction of the floor, wall, ceiling, or roof. Round ducts larger than 15 inches in diameter and square, rectangular, and oval ducts passing through floors, walls, ceilings, or roof shall be installed through framed prepared openings. The Contractor shall be responsible for the proper size and location of sleeves and prepared openings. Sleeves and framed openings are also required where grilles, registers, and diffusers are installed at the openings. Framed prepared openings shall be fabricated from 20 gauge galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated. Where sleeves are installed in bearing walls or partitions, black steel pipe, ASTM A 53, Schedule 20 shall be used. Sleeve shall provide 1 inch clearance between the duct and the sleeve or 1 inch clearance between the insulation and the sleeve for insulated ducts.

### 2.8.4.2 Framed Prepared Openings

Openings shall have 1 inch clearance between the duct and the opening or 1 inch clearance between the insulation and the opening for insulated ducts.

### 2.8.4.3 Closure Collars

Collars shall be fabricated of galvanized sheet metal not less than 4 inches wide, unless otherwise indicated, and shall be installed on exposed ducts on each side of walls or floors where sleeves or prepared openings are provided. Collars shall be installed tight against surfaces. Collars shall fit snugly around the duct or insulation. Sharp edges of the collar around insulated duct shall be ground smooth to preclude tearing or puncturing the insulation covering or vapor barrier. Collars for round ducts 15 inches in diameter or less shall be fabricated from 20 gauge galvanized steel. Collars for round ducts larger than 15 inches and square, and rectangular ducts shall be fabricated from 18 gauge galvanized steel. Collars shall be installed with fasteners on maximum 6 inch centers, except that not less than 4 fasteners shall be used.

### 2.8.7 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles

Units shall be factory-fabricated of steel, corrosion-resistant steel, or aluminum and shall distribute the specified quantity of air evenly over space intended without causing noticeable drafts, air movement faster than 50 fpm in occupied zone, or dead spots anywhere in the conditioned area. Outlets for diffusion, spread, throw, and noise level shall be as required for specified performance. Performance shall be certified according to ASHRAE 70. Inlets and outlets shall be sound rated and certified according to ASHRAE 70. Sound power level shall be as indicated. Diffusers and registers shall be provided with volume damper with accessible operator, unless otherwise indicated; or if standard with the manufacturer, an automatically controlled device will be acceptable. Volume dampers shall be opposed blade type for all diffusers and registers, except linear slot diffusers. Linear slot diffusers shall be provided with round or elliptical balancing dampers. Where the inlet and outlet openings are located less than 7 feet above the floor, they shall be protected by a grille or screen according to NFPA 90A.

#### 2.8.7.1 Diffusers

Diffuser types shall be as indicated. Ceiling mounted units shall be furnished with anti-smudge devices, unless the diffuser unit minimizes ceiling smudging through design features. Diffusers shall be provided with air deflectors of the type indicated. Ceiling mounted units shall be installed with rims tight against ceiling. Sponge rubber gaskets shall be provided between ceiling and surface mounted diffusers for air leakage control. Suitable trim shall be provided for flush mounted diffusers. Duct collar connecting the duct to diffuser shall be airtight and shall not interfere with volume controller. Return or exhaust units shall be similar to supply diffusers.

#### 2.8.7.2 Registers and Grilles

Units shall be four-way directional-control type, except that return and exhaust registers may be fixed horizontal or vertical louver type similar in appearance to the supply register face. Registers shall be provided with sponge-rubber gasket between flanges and wall or ceiling. Wall supply registers shall be installed at least 6 inches below the ceiling unless otherwise indicated. Return and exhaust registers shall be located 6 inches above the floor unless otherwise indicated. Four-way directional control may be achieved by a grille face which can be rotated in 4 positions or by adjustment of horizontal and vertical vanes. Grilles shall be as specified for registers, without volume control damper.

#### 2.8.9 Air Vents, and Roof Caps

Air vents and roof caps shall be fabricated from galvanized steel or aluminum sheets with galvanized or aluminum structural shapes. Sheet metal thickness, reinforcement, and fabrication shall conform to SMACNA-06. Louver blades shall be accurately fitted and secured to frames. Edges of louver blades shall be folded or beaded for rigidity and baffled to exclude driving rain. Air vents and roof caps shall be provided with bird screen.

#### 2.8.10 Bird Screens and Frames

Bird screens shall conform to ASTM E 437, Type I, Class 1, 2 by 2 mesh, 0.063 inch diameter aluminum wire or 0.031 inch diameter stainless steel

wire. Frames shall be removable type or stainless steel or extruded aluminum.

## 2.9 AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT

### 2.9.1 Fans

Fans shall be tested and rated according to AMCA 210. Fans may be connected to the motors either directly or indirectly with V-belt drive. V-belt drives shall be designed for not less than [150] [140] [120] percent of the connected driving capacity. Motor sheaves shall be variable pitch for 15 hp and below and fixed pitch as defined by ARI Guideline D. Variable pitch sheaves shall be selected to drive the fan at a speed which will produce the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. When fixed pitch sheaves are furnished, a replaceable sheave shall be provided when needed to achieve system air balance. Motors for V-belt drives shall be provided with adjustable rails or bases. Removable metal guards shall be provided for all exposed V-belt drives, and speed-test openings shall be provided at the center of all rotating shafts. Fans shall be provided with personnel screens or guards on both suction and supply ends, except that the screens need not be provided, unless otherwise indicated, where ducts are connected to the fan.

Fan and motor assemblies shall be provided with vibration-isolation supports or mountings as indicated. Vibration-isolation units shall be standard products with published loading ratings. Each fan shall be selected to produce the capacity required at the fan static pressure indicated. Sound power level shall be as indicated. The sound power level values shall be obtained according to AMCA 300. Standard AMCA arrangement, rotation, and discharge shall be as indicated.

#### 2.9.1.7 Propeller Type Power Roof Ventilators

Fans shall be direct or V-belt driven. Fan housing shall be hinged or removable weathertight, fitted with framed rectangular base constructed of aluminum or galvanized steel. Motors shall be totally enclosed fan cooled type. Motors shall be provided with nonfusible, horsepower rated, manual disconnect mount on unit. Fans shall be provided with birdscreen and roof curb. Lubricated bearings shall be provided.

#### 2.9.1.9 Ceiling Exhaust Fans

Suspended cabinet-type ceiling exhaust fans shall be centrifugal type, direct-driven. Fans shall have acoustically insulated housing. Integral backdraft damper shall be chatter-proof. The integral face grille shall be of egg-crate design or louver design. Fan motors shall be mounted on vibration isolators. Unit shall be provided with mounting flange for hanging unit from above. Fans shall be U.L. listed.

### 2.9.2 Coils

Coils shall be fin-and-tube type constructed of seamless copper tubes and aluminum fins mechanically bonded or soldered to the tubes. Copper tube wall thickness shall be a minimum of 0.020 inches. Aluminum fins shall be 0.0075 inch minimum thickness. Casing and tube support sheets shall be not lighter than 16 gauge galvanized steel, formed to provide structural strength. When required, multiple tube supports shall be provided to prevent tube sag. Each coil shall be tested at the factory under water at not less than 400 psi air pressure and shall be suitable for 200 psi working pressure. Coils shall be mounted for counterflow service. Coils

shall be rated and certified according to ARI 410.

#### 2.9.2.2 Water Coils

Water coils shall be installed with a pitch of not less than 1/8 inch per foot of the tube length toward the drain end. Headers shall be constructed of cast iron, welded steel or copper. Each coil shall be provided with a plugged vent and drain connection extending through the unit casing.

#### 2.9.3 Air Filters

Air filters shall be listed according to requirements of UL 900, except high efficiency particulate air filters of 99.97 percent efficiency by the DOP Test method shall be as listed under the Label Service and shall meet the requirements of UL 586.

##### 2.9.3.1 Extended Surface Pleated Panel Filters

Filters shall be 2 inch depth, sectional, disposable type of the size indicated and shall have an average efficiency of 25 to 30 percent when tested according to ASHRAE 52.1. Initial resistance at 500 feet per minute shall not exceed 0.36 inches water gauge. Filters shall be UL Class 2. Media shall be nonwoven cotton and synthetic fiber mat. A wire support grid bonded to the media shall be attached to a moisture resistant fiberboard frame. All four edges of the filter media shall be bonded to the inside of the frame to prevent air bypass and increase rigidity.

#### 2.9.4 Variable Frequency Drive Unit

Unit shall be solid state with adjustable frequency and voltage, three-phase output capable of driving standard NEMA class B induction motors. The drives shall utilize diode bridge rectifying circuitry with either variable voltage or pulse width modulation DA to AC convertors. Silicon controlled rectifiers (SCR) that are phased back shall not be used in rectifying circuitry. The drives shall be designed to be used on variable torque loads and shall be capable of providing sufficient torque to allow the motor to break away from rest upon first application of power. Unit shall be rated for 60 Hz, three-phase systems, shall be capable of operating within voltage parameters of plus 10 to minus 15 percent of rated line voltage, and be suitably rated for the full load amps of the maximum HP within its class. Each unit shall be factory tested at a maximum HP, rated full load current and at an ambient of 104 degrees F for a period of not less than 24 hours. If a component fails, it shall be replaced and the test restarted for the full time period. A certified copy of the factory test report shall be furnished to the Contracting Officer prior to shipping the unit to the job site. The unit shall not add any current or voltage transients to the input AC power distribution system nor shall the controller be affected by transients from other devices on the AC power distribution system. Unit shall be protected to comply with ANSI C37.90.1, Guide for Surge Withstand Capability (SWC) Test (2,500 volts for 1 minute) and UL 508 Electrical Industrial Control Equipment.

##### 2.9.4.1 Variable Frequency Drive Units Shall have the following features:

- a. Isolated power for control circuits.
- b. Manually resettable motor overload protection for each phase.
- c. Adjustable current limiting circuitry to provide soft motor starting.

Maximum starting current shall not exceed 200 percent of motor full load current.

d. Independent acceleration and deceleration time adjustment, manually adjustable from 2 to 30 seconds. Set timers to the equipment manufacturer's recommended time in the above range.

e. Provide 4 to 20 mA current follower circuitry for interface with pressure sensor and transmitter devices.

f. Automatic frequency adjustment from 20 Hz to 60 Hz.

g. By-pass starter with circuitry to protect and isolate the variable speed controller. When the variable speed controller is in the by-pass mode the solid-state components shall be isolated from the power supply on both the line and motor side.

h. Controller efficiency at any speed shall be not less than 92 percent.

i. At 100 percent speed, the input power factor shall be less than 0.95 and shall not be less than 0.90 at any other speed.

j. Door interlocked fused safety disconnect or door interlocked circuit breaker switch which will disconnect all input power.

k. Two N.O. and two N.C. dry contacts rated 120 volts, 10 amperes, 60 Hz for remote indication of the following: controller system shutdown with auto restart, system shutdown without auto restart and system running.

l. Limit harmonic distortion produced by the unit to no more than 3 percent voltage at 100 percent current at any speed.

2.9.4.2 Controllers shall have circuitry to initiate an orderly shutdown after the motor stops spinning and when conditions are corrected. The controller shall not be damaged by the following electrical disturbances:

a. Incorrect phase sequence.

b. Single phasing.

c. Over voltage in excess of 10 percent.

d. Under voltage in excess of 15 percent.

e. Running overcurrent above 150 percent (shall not automatically reset for this condition).

f. Instantaneous overcurrent above 150 percent (shall not automatically reset for this condition).

g. Surge voltage in excess of 1,000 volts.

h. Short duration power outages of 12 cycles or less (i.e. distribution line switching, generator testing, automatic transfer switch operations).

2.9.4.3 Units shall have the following door mounted accessories:

a. AC power light.

- b. Ammeter (RMS motor current).
- c. Hand-Off-Automatic switch.
- d. Manual speed HAND mode.
- e. System protection light indicating that the system has a shutdown and will not automatically restart.
- f. System protection light indicating that the system has shutdown but will restart when conditions retrain to normal.
- g. Manual variable speed controller by-pass switch when required.
- h. Diagnostic shutdown indicator lights for each shutdown condition.

## 2.10 AIR HANDLING UNITS

### 2.10.1 Field-Fabricated Air Handling Units

Built-up units shall be as specified in paragraph DUCTWORK COMPONENTS. Fans, coils spray-coil dehumidifiers, and air filters shall be as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT for types indicated.

### 2.10.2 Factory-Fabricated Air Handling Units

Units shall be variable volume draw-through type as indicated. Units shall include fans, variable frequency drives, coils, airtight insulated casing, adjustable V-belt drives, belt guards for externally mounted motors, access sections where indicated, mixing box combination sectional filter-mixing box, pan, vibration-isolators, and appurtenances required for specified operation. Each air handling unit shall have physical dimensions suitable to fit space allotted to the unit and shall have the capacity indicated. Air handling unit shall have published ratings based on tests performed according to ARI 430.

#### 2.10.2.1 Casings

Casing sections shall be 2 inch double wall type constructed of a minimum 18 gauge galvanized steel, or 18 gauge steel outer casing protected with a corrosion resistant paint finish according to paragraph FACTORY PAINTING. Inner casing of double-wall units shall be minimum 20 gauge solid galvanized steel. Casing shall be designed and constructed with an integral structural steel frame such that exterior panels are non-load bearing. Exterior panels shall be individually removable. Removal shall not affect the structural integrity of the unit. Casings shall be provided with inspection doors, access sections, and access doors. Inspection and access doors shall be insulated, fully gasketed, double-wall type, of a minimum 18 gauge outer and 20 gauge inner panels. Doors shall be rigid and provided with heavy duty hinges and latches. Inspection doors shall be a minimum 12 inches wide by 12 inches high. Access doors shall be minimum 24 inches wide and shall be the full height of the unit casing. Access Sections shall be according to paragraph AIR HANDLING UNITS. Drain pan shall be double-bottom type constructed of 16 gauge stainless steel, pitched to the drain connection. Drain pans shall be constructed water tight, treated to prevent corrosion, and designed for positive condensate drainage. Intermediate drain pans or condensate collection channels and downspouts shall be provided, as required to carry condensate to the unit drain pan out of the air stream and without moisture carryover. Each



casing section handling conditioned air shall be insulated with not less than 1 inch thick, 1-1/2 pound density coated fibrous glass material having a thermal conductivity not greater than 0.23 Btu/hr-sf-F. Factory applied fibrous glass insulation shall conform to ASTM C 1071, except that the minimum thickness and density requirements do not apply, and shall meet the requirements of NFPA 90A. Foam-type insulation is not acceptable. Foil-faced insulation shall not be an acceptable substitute for use on double-wall equipment. Duct liner material, coating, and adhesive shall conform to fire-hazard requirements specified in Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Exposed insulation edges and joints where insulation panels are butted together shall be protected with a metal nosing strip or shall be coated to conform to meet erosion resistance requirements of ASTM C 1071. A latched and hinged inspection door, shall be provided in the fan, mixing box and coil sections.

#### 2.10.2.2 Heating and Cooling Coils

Coils shall be provided as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT, for types indicated.

#### 2.10.2.4 Air Filters

Air filters shall be as specified in paragraph AIR SYSTEMS EQUIPMENT for types and thickness indicated.

#### 2.10.2.5 Fans

Fans shall be double-inlet, centrifugal type with each fan in a separate scroll. Fans and shafts shall be dynamically balanced prior to installation into air handling unit, then the entire fan assembly shall be statically and dynamically balanced at the factory after it has been installed in the air handling unit. Fans shall be mounted on steel shafts accurately ground and finished. Fan bearings shall be sealed against dust and dirt and shall be precision self-aligning ball or roller type. Bearing life shall be L50 rated at not less than 200,000 hours as defined by ABEMA 9 and ABEMA 11. Bearings shall be permanently lubricated or lubricated type with lubrication fittings readily accessible at the drive side of the unit.

Bearings shall be supported by structural shapes, or die formed sheet structural members, or support plates securely attached to the unit casing.

Bearings may not be fastened directly to the unit sheet metal casing. Fans and scrolls shall be furnished with coating indicated. Fans shall be driven by a unit-mounted or a floor-mounted motor connected to fans by V-belt drive complete with belt guard for externally mounted motors. Belt guards shall be the three sided enclosed type with solid or expanded metal face. Belt drives shall be designed for not less than a 1.3 service factor based on motor nameplate rating. Motor sheaves shall be variable pitch for 25 hp and below and fixed pitch above 25 hp as defined by ARI Guideline D.

Where fixed sheaves are required, variable pitch sheaves may be used during air balance, but shall be replaced with an appropriate fixed sheave after air balance is completed. Variable pitch sheaves shall be selected to drive the fan at a speed that will produce the specified capacity when set at the approximate midpoint of the sheave adjustment. Motors for V-belt drives shall be provided with adjustable bases. Fan motors shall have open enclosures. Motor starters shall be magnetic across-the-line type with general-purpose enclosure. Unit fan or fans shall be selected to produce the required capacity at the fan static pressure. Sound power level shall be as indicated. The sound power level values shall be obtained according to AMCA 300 or ASHRAE 68.

#### 2.10.2.6 Access Sections and Filter/Mixing Boxes

Access sections shall be provided where indicated and shall be furnished with access doors as shown. Access sections and filter/mixing boxes shall be constructed in a manner identical to the remainder of the unit casing and shall be equipped with access doors. Mixing boxes shall be designed to minimize air stratification and to promote thorough mixing of the air streams.

#### 2.10.2.8 Dampers

Dampers shall be as specified in paragraph CONTROLS.

### 2.11 TERMINAL UNITS

#### 2.11.3 Variable Air Volume (VAV) and Dual Duct Terminal Units

VAV terminal units shall be the type, size, and capacity shown and shall be mounted in the ceiling or wall cavity and shall be suitable for single or dual duct system applications. Actuators and controls shall be as specified in paragraph CONTROLS. Unit enclosures shall be constructed of galvanized steel not lighter than 22 gauge or aluminum sheet not lighter than 18 gauge. Single or multiple discharge outlets shall be provided as required. Units with flow limiters are not acceptable. Unit air volume shall be factory preset and readily field adjustable without special tools.

Reheat coils shall be provided as indicated. A flow chart shall be attached to each unit. Acoustic performance of the terminal units shall be based upon units tested according to ARI 880. Sound power level shall be as indicated. Discharge sound power shall be shown for minimum and 1-1/2 inches water gauge inlet static pressure. Acoustical lining shall be according to NFPA 90A.

##### 2.11.3.2 Variable Volume, Single Duct

Variable volume, single duct, terminal units shall be provided with a calibrated air volume sensing device, air valve or damper, actuator, and accessory relays. Units shall control air volume to within plus or minus 5 percent of each air set point volume as determined by the thermostat with variations in inlet pressures from 3/4 to 6 inch water gauge. Internal resistance of units shall be as indicated. External differential pressure taps separate from the control pressure taps shall be provided for air flow measurement with a 0 to 1 inch water gauge range.

### 2.13 FACTORY PAINTING

Units which are not of galvanized construction according to ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 924 shall be factory painted with a corrosion resisting paint finish. Internal and external ferrous metal surfaces shall be cleaned, phosphatised and coated with a paint finish which has been tested according to ASTM B 117, ASTM D 1654, and ASTM D 3359. Evidence of satisfactory paint performance for a minimum of 125 hours for units to be installed indoors and 500 hours for units to be installed outdoors shall be submitted. Rating of failure at the scribe mark shall be not less than 6, average creepage not greater than 1/8 inch. Rating of the inscribed area shall not be less than 10, no failure. On units constructed of galvanized steel which have been welded, exterior surfaces of welds or welds that have burned through from the interior shall receive a final shop docket of zinc-rich protective paint according to ASTM D 520 Type I.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

Work shall be installed as shown and according to the manufacturer's diagrams and recommendations.

#### 3.1.4.2 Fire Seal

Where pipes pass through firewalls, fire partitions, or floors, a fire seal shall be provided as specified in Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING.

#### 3.1.4.3 Escutcheons

Escutcheons shall be provided at finished surfaces where exposed piping, bare or insulated, passes through floors, walls, or ceilings except in boiler, utility, or equipment rooms. Where sleeves project slightly from floors, special deep-type escutcheons shall be used. Escutcheons shall be secured to pipe or pipe covering.

#### 3.1.5 Condensate Drain Lines

Water seals shall be provided in the condensate drain from all units. The depth of each seal shall be 2 inches plus the number of inches, measured in water gauge, of the total static pressure rating of the unit to which the drain is connected. Water seals shall be constructed of 2 tees and an appropriate U-bend with the open end of each tee plugged. Pipe cap or plug cleanouts shall be provided where indicated. Drains indicated to connect to the sanitary waste system shall be connected by an indirect waste fitting. Air conditioner drain lines shall be insulated as specified in Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.

#### 3.1.9 Equipment and Installation

Frames and supports shall be provided for air handling units. Air handling units shall be floor mounted or ceiling hung, as indicated. The method of anchoring and fastening shall be as detailed. Floor-mounted equipment, unless otherwise indicated, shall be set on not less than 6 inch concrete pads

#### 3.1.10 Access Panels

Access panels shall be provided for concealed controls, dampers, and items requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced and maintained or completely removed and replaced. Access panels shall be as specified in Section 05500 MISCELLANEOUS METALS.

#### 3.1.11 Flexible Connectors

Pre-insulated flexible connectors and flexible duct shall be attached to other components in accordance with the latest printed instructions of the manufacturer to ensure a vapor tight joint. Hangers, when required to suspend the connectors, shall be of the type recommended by the connector or duct manufacturer and shall be provided at the intervals recommended.

#### 3.1.12 Sleeved and Framed Openings

Space between the sleeved or framed opening and the duct or the duct

insulation shall be packed as specified in Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING for fire rated penetrations. For non-fire rated penetrations, the space shall be packed as specified in Section 07920 JOINT SEALING.

### 3.1.13 Metal Ductwork

Installation shall be according to SMACNA-06 unless otherwise indicated. Duct supports for sheet metal ductwork shall be according to SMACNA-06, unless otherwise specified. Friction beam clamps indicated in SMACNA-06 shall not be used. Risers on high velocity ducts shall be anchored in the center of the vertical run to allow ends of riser to move due to thermal expansion. Supports on the risers shall allow free vertical movement of the duct. Supports shall be attached only to structural framing members and concrete slabs. Supports shall not be anchored to metal decking unless a means is provided and approved for preventing the anchor from puncturing the metal decking. Where supports are required between structural framing members, suitable intermediate metal framing shall be provided. Where C-clamps are used, retainer clips shall be provided.

### 3.1.19 Insulation

Thickness and application of insulation materials for ductwork, piping, and equipment shall be according to Section 15250 THERMAL INSULATION FOR MECHANICAL SYSTEMS. Outdoor air intake ducts and plenums shall be externally insulated up to the point where the outdoor air reaches the conditioning unit.

### 3.1.20 Duct Test Holes

Holes with closures or threaded holes with plugs shall be provided in ducts and plenums as indicated or where necessary for the use of pitot tube in balancing the air system. Extensions, complete with cap or plug, shall be provided where the ducts are insulated.

## 3.3 PIPING HYDROSTATIC TEST

After cleaning, water piping shall be hydrostatically tested at a pressure equal to 150 percent of the total system operating pressure for period of time sufficient to inspect every joint in the system and in no case less than 2 hours. Leaks shall be repaired and piping retested until test is successful. No loss of pressure will be allowed. Leaks shall be repaired by re-welding or replacing pipe or fittings. Caulking of joints will not be permitted. Concealed and insulated piping shall be tested in place before covering or concealing.

## 3.4 DUCTWORK LEAK TEST

Ductwork leak test shall be performed for the entire air distribution system, including fans, coils, filters, etc.. Test procedure, apparatus, and report shall conform to SMACNA-10. The maximum allowable leakage rate is 10% of indicated cfm. Ductwork leak test shall be completed with satisfactory results prior to applying insulation to ductwork exterior.

## 3.5 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

Equipment shall be wiped clean, with traces of oil, dust, dirt, or paint spots removed. Temporary filters shall be provided prior to startup of all fans that are operated during construction, and new filters shall be installed after all construction dirt has been removed from the building,

and the ducts, plenums, casings, and other items specified have been vacuum cleaned. System shall be maintained in this clean condition until final acceptance. Bearings shall be properly lubricated with oil or grease as recommended by the manufacturer. Belts shall be tightened to proper tension. Control valves and other miscellaneous equipment requiring adjustment shall be adjusted to setting indicated or directed. Fans shall be adjusted to the speed indicated by the manufacturer to meet specified conditions.

### 3.6 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

Testing, adjusting, and balancing shall be as specified in Section 15990 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS. Testing, adjusting, and balancing shall begin only when the air supply and distribution, including controls, has been completed, with the exception of performance tests.

### 3.7 PERFORMANCE TESTS

After testing, adjusting, and balancing has been completed as specified, each system shall be tested as a whole to see that all items perform as integral parts of the system and temperatures and conditions are evenly controlled throughout the building. Corrections and adjustments shall be made as necessary to produce the conditions indicated or specified. Capacity tests and general operating tests shall be conducted by an experienced engineer. Tests shall cover a period of not less than 2 days for each system and shall demonstrate that the entire system is functioning according to the specifications. Coincidental chart recordings shall be made at points indicated on the drawings for the duration of the time period and shall record the temperature at space thermostats or space sensors, the humidity at space humidistats or space sensors and the ambient temperature and humidity in a shaded and weather protected area.

### 3.8 FIELD TRAINING

The Contractor shall conduct a training course for operating and maintenance personnel as designated by the Contracting Officer. Training shall be provided for a period of 8 hours of normal working time and shall start after the system is functionally complete but prior to the performance tests. The field instruction shall cover all of the items contained in the approved Operating and Maintenance Instructions.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

## SECTION 15951

## DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC

01/94

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.2.1 Nameplates, Lens Caps, and Tags
  - 1.2.2 Verification of Dimensions
  - 1.2.3 Drawings
  - 1.2.4 Power-Line Surge Protection
  - 1.2.5 Surge Protection for Transmitter and Control Wiring
  - 1.2.6 Power-Line Conditioners (PLC)
  - 1.2.7 System Overall Reliability Requirement
  - 1.2.8 Multiple DDC Panel Requirement
  - 1.2.9 System Accuracy and Display
    - 1.2.9.1 Space Temperature
    - 1.2.9.2 Duct Temperature
    - 1.2.9.3 Outside Air Temperature
    - 1.2.9.4 Water Temperature
    - 1.2.9.5 High Temperature
    - 1.2.9.6 Relative Humidity
    - 1.2.9.7 Pressure
    - 1.2.9.8 Flow
    - 1.2.9.9 KWh and kW Demand
    - 1.2.9.10 Analog Value Input
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- 1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE
- 1.5 TESTING
  - 1.5.1 Site Testing
  - 1.5.2 Control System Calibration, Adjustments, and Commissioning
  - 1.5.3 Performance Verification Test
  - 1.5.4 Endurance Test
  - 1.5.5 Coordination with HVAC System Balancing
  - 1.5.6 Posted Instructions
- 1.6 TRAINING
  - 1.6.1 General
  - 1.6.2 Training Course Content
- 1.7 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE
  - 1.7.1 General Requirements
  - 1.7.2 Description of Work
  - 1.7.3 Personnel
  - 1.7.4 Scheduled Inspections
  - 1.7.5 Scheduled Work
  - 1.7.6 Emergency Service
  - 1.7.7 Operation
  - 1.7.8 Records and Logs
  - 1.7.9 Work Requests
  - 1.7.10 System Modifications

## 1.7.11 Software

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS
  - 2.1.1 Electronic Devices
  - 2.1.3 Ambient Temperature Limits
- 2.2 WIRING
  - 2.2.1 Terminal Blocks
  - 2.2.2 Control Wiring for 24-Volt Circuits
  - 2.2.3 Wiring for 120-Volt Circuits
  - 2.2.4 Instrumentation Cable
- 2.3 ACTUATORS
  - 2.3.1 General Requirements
  - 2.3.2 Damper Actuators
  - 2.3.3 Valve Actuators
- 2.4 AUTOMATIC CONTROL VALVES
  - 2.4.1 Butterfly-Valve Assembly
  - 2.4.2 Three-Way Valves
  - 2.4.3 Terminal-Unit Coil Valves
  - 2.4.4 Valves for Chilled Water
  - 2.4.5 Valves for Hot Water
- 2.5 DAMPERS
  - 2.5.1 Damper Assembly
  - 2.5.2 Operating Links
  - 2.5.3 Damper Types
    - 2.5.3.1 Outside Air, Return Air, and Relief Air Dampers
    - 2.5.3.2 Mechanical and Electrical Space Ventilation Dampers
    - 2.5.3.3 Smoke Dampers
  - 2.5.4 Damper End Switches
- 2.6 SMOKE DETECTORS
- 2.7 INSTRUMENTATION
  - 2.7.1 Measurements
  - 2.7.2 Temperature Instruments
    - 2.7.2.1 Resistance Temperature Detectors (RTD)
    - 2.7.2.2 Continuous Averaging RTD
  - 2.7.3 Electronic Airflow Measurement Stations and
    - 2.7.3.1 Stations
  - 2.7.4 Pitot Tube Airflow Measurement Stations and
    - 2.7.4.1 Stations
  - 2.7.5 Differential Pressure Instruments
  - 2.7.6 Thermowells
  - 2.7.7 Sunshields
- 2.8 THERMOSTATS
  - 2.8.1 General
  - 2.8.2 Nonmodulating Room Thermostats
  - 2.8.3 Modulating Room Thermostats
  - 2.8.4 Nonmodulating Capillary Thermostats and Aquastats
  - 2.8.5 Freezestats
  - 2.8.6 Modulating Capillary Thermostats
- 2.9 PRESSURE SWITCHES AND SOLENOID VALVES
  - 2.9.1 Pressure Switches
  - 2.9.2 Differential Pressure Switches
- 2.10 INDICATING DEVICES
  - 2.10.1 Insertion Thermometers
  - 2.10.2 Thermometer Stems
  - 2.10.3 Air Duct Thermometers
  - 2.10.4 Averaging Thermometers
  - 2.10.5 Accuracy

- 2.10.6 Pressure Gauges
  - 2.10.6.1 Hydronic System Gauges
  - 2.10.6.2 Low-Differential Pressure Gauges
- 2.11 RELAYS
- 2.12 FIELD HARDWARE
  - 2.12.1 Direct Digital Control (DDC) Panel Hardware
    - 2.12.1.1 Sealed Battery Backup
    - 2.12.1.2 Electrical Service Outlet for use with Test Equipment
    - 2.12.1.3 Locking Type Mounting Cabinets
    - 2.12.1.4 Failure Mode
    - 2.12.1.5 Portable Tester
    - 2.12.1.6 I/O Functions
  - 2.12.2 Variable Air Volume (VAV) Terminal Unit Controls
    - 2.12.2.1 Box Control Device
    - 2.12.2.2 Communication and Programming Device
  - 2.12.3 Command Entry Device
    - 2.12.3.1 Communications
    - 2.12.3.2 Keyboard
    - 2.12.3.3 Printer
    - 2.12.3.4 Hard Disk
    - 2.12.3.5 Floppy Disk
  - 2.12.4 DDC Panel Portable Tester
  - 2.12.5 DDC Panel Test Set
  - 2.12.6 Communication Equipment
  - 2.12.7 Dial Up Modem
- 2.13 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL PANEL SOFTWARE
  - 2.13.1 Command Priorities
  - 2.13.2 DDC Panel Startup
  - 2.13.3 DDC Panel Operating Mode
  - 2.13.4 DDC Panel Failure Mode
  - 2.13.5 DDC Panel Functions
  - 2.13.6 Analog Monitoring
  - 2.13.7 Logic (Virtual) Points
  - 2.13.8 I/O Point Definition
  - 2.13.9 Parameter Definition
  - 2.13.10 Alarm Processing
    - 2.13.10.1 Digital Alarms Definition
    - 2.13.10.2 Analog Alarms Definition
    - 2.13.10.3 Pulse Accumulator Alarms Definition
    - 2.13.10.4 Equipment Constraints Definitions
    - 2.13.10.5 Constraint Checks
  - 2.13.11 DDC Panel Diagnostics
  - 2.13.12 Summer/Winter Operation Monitoring
  - 2.13.13 Control Sequences and Control Loops
    - 2.13.13.1 Control Functions
    - 2.13.13.2 DDC Panel Resident Applications Software
  - 2.13.14 Communication Programs
- 2.14 WIRE AND CABLE
  - 2.14.1 Digital Functions
  - 2.14.2 Analog Functions
  - 2.14.3 Sensor Wiring
  - 2.14.4 Class 2 Low Energy Conductors

## PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION CRITERIA
  - 3.1.1 HVAC Control System
  - 3.1.2 Software Installation
  - 3.1.3 Device-Mounting Criteria



- 3.1.4 Wiring Criteria
  - 3.2 CONTROL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION
    - 3.2.1 Damper Actuators
    - 3.2.2 Local Gauges for Actuators
    - 3.2.3 Room-Instrument Mounting
    - 3.2.4 Freezestats
    - 3.2.5 Averaging-Temperature Sensing Elements
    - 3.2.6 Foundations and Housekeeping Pads
    - 3.2.7 Duct Static-Pressure Sensing Elements and Transmitters
    - 3.2.8 Indication Devices Installed in Piping and Liquid Systems
  - 3.3 COMMISSIONING PROCEDURES
    - 3.3.1 Evaluations
      - 3.3.1.1 Item Check
      - 3.3.1.2 Weather-Dependent Test Procedures
      - 3.3.1.3 Two-Point Accuracy Check
      - 3.3.1.4 Insertion and Immersion Temperatures
      - 3.3.1.5 Averaging Temperature
    - 3.3.2 Unit Heater
    - 3.3.3 Single Building Hydronic Heating with Hot Water Boiler
    - 3.3.4 Variable Air Volume Control System
- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 15951

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL FOR HVAC  
**01/94**

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AIR MOVEMENT AND CONTROL ASSOCIATION (AMCA)

AMCA 500 (1989) Test Methods for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters

## AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

ANSI X3.64 (1979; R 1990) Additional Controls for Use with American National Standard Code for Information Interchange

ANSI X3.154 (1988; R 1994) Office Machines and Supplies - Alphanumeric Machines-Keyboards Arrangement

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (ASHRAE)

ASHRAE-03 (1993) Handbook, Fundamentals I-P Edition

## AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS (ASME)

ASME B40.1 (1991) Gauges - Pressure Indicating Dial Type - Elastic Element

ASME PTC 19.3 (1974; R 1986) Instruments and Apparatus: Part 3 Temperature Measurement

## CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS (CFR)

47 CFR 15 Radio Frequency Devices

## INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41 (1991) Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits

IEEE Std 142 (1991) IEEE Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems

## NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA 250 (1991) Enclosures for Electrical Equipment  
(1000 Volts Maximum)

NEMA ICS 1 (1993) Industrial Controls and Systems

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 90A (1993) Installation of Air Conditioning  
and Ventilating Systems

SHEET METAL & AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS' NATIONAL ASSOCIATION  
(SMACNA)

SMACNA-07 (1993) HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting  
and Balancing

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 555S (1996) Leakage Rated Dampers for Use in  
Smoke-Control Systems

UL 916 (1994; Rev thru May 1996) Energy  
Management Equipment

## 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

The direct digital control (DDC) shall be a complete system suitable for the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) system. All hardware and software must be year 2000 compliant.

### 1.2.1 Nameplates, Lens Caps, and Tags

Nameplates and lens caps bearing legends as shown and tags bearing device-unique identifiers as shown shall have engraved or stamped characters. Nameplates shall be mechanically attached to Direct Digital Control (DDC) panel interior doors. A plastic or metal tag shall be mechanically attached directly to each device or attached by a metal chain or wire. Each airflow measurement station shall have a tag showing flow rate range for signal output range, duct size, and identifier as shown.

### 1.2.2 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become familiar with all details of the work, shall verify all dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing any work.

### 1.2.3 Drawings

Because of the small scale of the drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, and accessories that may be required. The Contractor shall investigate the mechanical, electrical, and finish conditions that could affect the work to be performed, shall arrange such work accordingly, and shall furnish all work necessary to meet such conditions.

### 1.2.4 Power-Line Surge Protection

Equipment connected to ac circuits shall be protected from power-line

surges. Equipment protection shall meet the requirements of IEEE C62.41. Fuses shall not be used for surge protection.

#### 1.2.5 Surge Protection for Transmitter and Control Wiring

DDC system control-panel equipment shall be protected against surges induced on control and transmitter wiring installed outside and as shown. The equipment protection shall be tested in the normal mode and in the common mode, using the following two waveforms:

- a. A 10 microsecond by 1,000 microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1,500 volts and a peak current of 60 amperes.
- b. An 8 microsecond by 20 microsecond waveform with a peak voltage of 1,000 volts and a peak current of 500 amperes.

#### 1.2.6 Power-Line Conditioners (PLC)

PLCs shall be furnished for each DDC panel. The PLCs shall provide both voltage regulation and noise rejection. The PLCs shall be of the ferro-resonant design, with no moving parts and no tap switching while electrically isolating the secondary from the power-line side. The PLCs shall be sized for 125 percent of the actual connected kVA load. Characteristics of the PLC shall be as follows:

- a. At 85 percent load, the output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 1 percent of nominal when the input voltage fluctuates between minus 20 percent to plus 10 percent of nominal.
- b. During load changes of zero to full load, the output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 3 percent of nominal. Full correction of load switching disturbances shall be accomplished within 5 cycles, and 95 percent correction shall be accomplished within two cycles of the onset of the disturbance.
- c. Total harmonic distortion shall not exceed 3-1/2 percent at full load.

#### 1.2.7 System Overall Reliability Requirement

The system shall be configured and installed to yield a mean time between failure (MTBF) of at least 40,000 hours. Each DDC panel shall be designed, configured, installed and programmed to provide for stand alone operation with minimal performance degradation on failure of other system components to which it is connected or with which it communicates.

#### 1.2.8 Multiple DDC Panel Requirement

Where the system to be controlled by the DDC system is located in multiple mechanical rooms, each mechanical room shall have at least one DDC panel. DDC panels shall not control equipment located in a different mechanical room. DDC panels shall be located in the same room as the equipment being controlled or in an adjacent space which has direct access to the equipment room.

#### 1.2.9 System Accuracy and Display

The system shall maintain an end-to-end accuracy for 1 year from sensor to operator's console display for the applications specified and shall display

the value as specified. Each temperature shall be displayed and printed to nearest 0.1 degree F.

#### 1.2.9.1 Space Temperature

Space temperature with a range of 50 to 85 degrees F plus or minus 0.75 degree F for conditioned space; 30 to 130 degrees F plus or minus 1 degree F for unconditioned space.

#### 1.2.9.2 Duct Temperature

Duct temperature with a range of 40 to 140 degrees F plus or minus 2 degrees F.

#### 1.2.9.3 Outside Air Temperature

Outside air (OA) temperature with a range of minus 30 to plus 130 degrees F plus or minus 2 degrees F; with a subrange of 30 to 100 degrees F plus or minus 1 degree F.

#### 1.2.9.4 Water Temperature

Water temperature with a range of 30 to 100 degrees F plus or minus 0.75 degree F; the range of 100 to 250 degrees F plus or minus 2 degrees F; and water temperatures for the purpose of performing Btu calculations using differential temperatures to plus or minus 0.5 degrees F using matched sensors.

#### 1.2.9.5 High Temperature

High temperature with a range of 200 to 500 degrees F plus or minus 2.0 degrees F.

#### 1.2.9.6 Relative Humidity

Relative humidity with a range of 20 to 80 percent plus or minus 6.0 percent of range (display and print to nearest 1.0 percent).

#### 1.2.9.7 Pressure

Pressure with a range for the specific application plus or minus 2.0 percent of range (display and print to nearest psi).

#### 1.2.9.8 Flow

Flow with a range for the specific application plus or minus 3.0 percent of range, and flows for the purpose of thermal calculations to plus or minus 2.0 percent of actual flow (display and print to nearest unit, such as gallons per minute).

#### 1.2.9.9 KWh and kW Demand

KWh and kW demand with a range for the specific application plus or minus 1.0 percent of reading (display and print to nearest kWh or kW).

#### 1.2.9.10 Analog Value Input

An analog value input to the system's equipment via an AI with a maximum error of 0.50 percent of range, not including the sensor or error. This

accuracy shall be maintained over the specified environmental conditions.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-01 Data

Equipment Data; GA.

The equipment data shall be in booklet form, indexed to the unique identifiers, shall consist of data sheets that document compliance with the specification and shall include a copy of each HVAC control system bill of materials. Catalog cuts shall be in booklet form indexed by device type. Where multiple components are shown on a catalog cut, the application specific component shall be marked. Data shall include a list of qualified service organizations and their qualifications. Service organizations shall be reasonably convenient to the equipment on a regular and emergency basis, during the warranty period.

System Descriptions and Analyses; [GA.

System descriptions, analyses, and calculations used in required sizing equipment. Descriptions and calculations shall show how the equipment will operate as a system to meet the specified performance. The data package shall include the following:

- a. DDC panel memory size.
- b. DDC panel automatic start up operations.
- c. Database update procedure.
- d. DDC panel expansion capability and method of implementation.
- e. DDC panel operation.
- f. Database entry forms or data listings.

Software; GA.

Descriptions of software, including the control algorithm for PID control and explanation as required.

System Overall Reliability Calculations; GA.

Manufacturer's reliability data and calculations required to show compliance with the specified reliability. Instrumentation and controls shall not be included in the calculations.

Training Data; GA.

A training course in the maintenance and operation of the HVAC control systems, approved 60 days prior to the start of training. Lesson plans and training manuals for the training, including type of training to be provided, with a list of reference material. The training shall be

oriented to the specific systems being installed. One training manual shall be furnished for each trainee, plus two additional copies for archival storage at the project site. The manuals shall include the agenda, the defined objectives for each lesson, and a detailed description of the subject matter for each lesson. Two copies of audiovisual materials shall be included, for archival storage at the project site, either as a part of the printed training manuals or on the same media as that to be used during the training session.

Data Entry Forms; GA.

The completed data entry forms or data summaries, if data entry is done through interactive computer interfacing, utilizing all data required by the contract documents and other pertinent information required for complete installation of the database. Additional data to provide a complete and operational control system shall be identified and requested from the Government. The proposed forms shall be provided at least 90 days prior to the Contractor's scheduled need date.

SD-04 Drawings

System Drawings; GA.

The system drawings shall include the following:

- a. A drawing index.
- b. A list of symbols.
- c. A series of drawings for each HVAC control system using abbreviations, symbols, nomenclature and identifiers as shown on the contract drawings. Each control-system element on a drawing shall have a unique identifier as shown.

Each series of drawings for an HVAC control system shall include a schematic as shown on the contract drawings, a wiring diagram, a list of equipment with manufacturer and model number, a DDC panel arrangement drawing and an HVAC control-system sequence of operation. The sequence of operation for each HVAC control system shall be in the language and format of this specification. No operational deviations from specified sequences will be permitted without prior written approval of the Contracting Officer. The sequence of operation shall refer to each device by its unique identifier.

The wiring diagram shall show the interconnection of wires and cables to DDC panel terminal blocks and to the identified terminals of starters and packaged equipment, with all necessary jumpers and ground connections. The wiring diagram shall show the labels of all conductors. All sources of power required for HVAC control systems and for packaged equipment control systems shall be identified back to the panelboard circuit breaker number, DDC panel, magnetic starter, or packaged control equipment circuit. Each power supply and transformer not integral to a starter or packaged equipment shall be shown. The connected volt-ampere load and the power supply volt-ampere rating shall be shown.

- a. A system block diagram.
- b. DDC panel/DTC installation, block diagrams, and wiring diagrams.

- c. DDC panel/DTC physical layout and schematics.
- d. Details of surge protection device installations.
- e. Valve schedules.

The valve schedule shall include each valve's unique identifier, size, flow coefficient (Cv), pressure drop at specified flow rate, spring range, positive-positioner range, and actuator size, supported by close-off pressure data, dimensions, operation rate, and access and clearance requirements data.

- f. Damper schedules.

The damper schedule shall contain each damper's and each actuator's identifier, nominal and actual sizes, orientation of axis and frame, direction of blade rotation, spring ranges, operation rate, positive-positioner ranges, locations of actuators and damper end switches, arrangement of sections in multisection dampers, and methods of connecting dampers, actuators, and linkages. The damper schedule shall include the maximum expected velocity through the damper at the intended location and the maximum leakage rate at the operating static-pressure differential. The damper schedule shall contain actuator selection data, supported by calculations of the torque required to move and seal the dampers; and access and clearance requirements.

#### SD-08 Statements

##### Site Testing; GA.

Six copies of the test procedures for the site testing. The site testing procedures shall identify each item to be tested and shall clearly describe each test. The test procedures shall include a list of the test equipment to be used for site testing, manufacturer and model number, and the date of calibration and accuracy of calibration, within 6 months of the test date.

##### Performance Verification Testing and Endurance Testing; FIO.

Six copies of the test procedures for the performance verification test and the endurance test. The test procedures shall explain in detail, step-by-step actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with the specified requirements. Written approval by the Government of the performance verification test procedures shall be one of the prerequisites for commencing the performance verification test.

##### Commissioning Procedures; FIO.

Commissioning procedures for each HVAC control system, and for each type of terminal unit control system. The procedures shall reflect the language and format of this specification. The commissioning procedures shall refer to the devices by their unique identifiers as shown and shall include step-by-step configuration procedures for each system. The configuration procedures shall include a configuration check sheet showing all configuration parameters.

Six copies of Commissioning Procedures, in booklet form and indexed, for



each system, 60 days prior to system commissioning. Commissioning procedures shall include general instructions on how to set control parameters including setpoints; proportional, integral, and derivative mode constants; contact output settings for the specific devices provided. Commissioning procedures shall be specific to each HVAC system, shall detail the steps involved, and shall refer to the procedures in the booklet for specific devices.

#### SD-09 Reports

Test Reports; GA.

Six copies of the site testing data. Original copies of all data produced during site testing, including results of each test procedure, after approval of the site tests.

Performance Verification and Endurance Report; FIO.

Six copies of the performance verification and endurance test report after completion of a successful test.

Documentation of test results for the entire HVAC control system complete, in booklet form and indexed, within 30 days after each test.

Control System Calibration, Adjustments, and Commissioning; FIO.

Six copies of the calibration, adjustment and commissioning report which shall include setpoints and proportional, integral and derivative mode constant settings, calibration data for all instruments and controls, and all the data resulting from adjusting the control system devices and commissioning HVAC control system.

#### SD-19 Operation and Maintenance Manuals

Operation and Maintenance Manuals; GA.

The Group III Technical Data Package consisting of the operation and maintenance data in manual format. Final copies of the manuals bound in hardback, loose leaf binders, within 30 days after completing the endurance test. The manuals shall have a table of contents and tab sheets. Tab sheets shall be placed at the beginning of each chapter or section and at the beginning of each appendix. Each manual's contents shall be identified on the cover. The manuals shall include the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of each subcontractor installing equipment and systems, and of the nearest service representatives for each item of equipment and each system. The draft copy used during site testing shall be updated with any changes required, prior to final submission of the manual. The final copies delivered after completion of the endurance test shall include modifications made during installation checkout and acceptance. Manuals shall include:

Functional Design Manual; FIO.

Two copies of the functional design manual which shall identify the operational requirements for the system and explain the theory of operation, design philosophy, and specific functions. A description of hardware and software functions, interfaces, and requirements shall be included for all system operating modes.

Hardware Manual; FIO.

Two copies of the hardware manual which shall describe equipment furnished, including:

- a. General description and specifications.
- b. Installation and checkout procedures.
- c. Equipment electrical schematics and layout drawings.
- d. System schematics and I/O device wiring lists.
- e. Alignment and calibration procedures.
- f. Manufacturer's repair parts list indicating sources of supply.

Software Manual; FIO.

Two copies of the software manual which shall describe the functions of all software, and shall include all other information necessary to enable proper loading, testing and operation including, but not limited to the following:

- a. Definitions of terms and functions.
- b. Operator commands.
- c. System access requirements.
- d. Data entry requirements.
- e. Descriptions of application software.
- f. Description of database structure and interface with programs.
- g. Alarms.

Operator's Manual; GA.

Six complete copies of operation manuals for each HVAC control system, in booklet form and indexed, outlining the step-by-step procedures required for each HVAC control system's startup, operation, and shutdown. The manuals shall include all detail drawings, equipment data, and manufacturer supplied operation manuals for all equipment.

Maintenance Manual; GA.

Six complete copies of maintenance manuals, indexed in booklet form listing maintenance procedures. The maintenance instructions shall include a maintenance check list for each HVAC control system. Maintenance manuals shall include spare parts data and recommended maintenance tool kits for all control devices. Maintenance instructions shall include recommended repair methods, either field repair, factory repair, or whole-item replacement. The manual shall contain a list of service organizations qualified to service the HVAC control system, including the service organization name and telephone number. If operation and maintenance manuals are provided in a common volume, they shall be clearly differentiated and separately indexed.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

Products shall be stored with protection from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt and dust, and other contaminants, within the storage-condition limits published by the equipment manufacturer. Dampers shall be stored so that seal integrity, blade alignment and frame alignment are maintained.

#### 1.5 TESTING

##### 1.5.1 Site Testing

Personnel, equipment, instrumentation, and supplies shall be provided as necessary to perform site testing, adjusting, calibration and commissioning. The tests shall not be conducted during scheduled seasonal off periods of base heating and cooling systems. Wiring shall be tested for continuity and for ground, open, and short circuits. Tubing systems shall be tested for leaks. Ground rods installed by the Contractor shall be tested as specified in IEEE Std 142. Written Government approval of the specific site testing procedures shall be obtained prior to any test. Written notification of any planned site testing, commissioning or tuning shall be given at least 14 calendar days prior to any test.

##### 1.5.2 Control System Calibration, Adjustments, and Commissioning

Instrumentation and controls shall be calibrated and the specified accuracy shall be verified using test equipment with calibration traceable to NIST standards. Mechanical control devices shall be adjusted to operate as specified. Control parameters and logic (virtual) points including control loop setpoints, gain constants, and integral constraints, shall be adjusted before the system is placed on line. Communications requirements shall be as indicated. Control system commissioning shall be performed for each HVAC system. The report describing results of functional tests, diagnostics, and calibrations, including written certification, shall state that the installed complete system has been calibrated, tested, and is ready to begin performance verification testing. The report shall also include a copy of the approved performance verification test procedure.

##### 1.5.3 Performance Verification Test

Compliance of the HVAC control system with the contract documents shall be demonstrated. Using test plans and procedures previously approved, physical and functional requirements of the project, including communication requirements shall be demonstrated. The performance verification test procedures shall explain, step-by-step, the actions and expected results that will demonstrate that the control systems perform in accordance with the sequences of operation. The performance verification test shall not be started until after receipt of written permission by the Government, based on the Contractor's written certification of successful completion of site testing and training.

##### 1.5.4 Endurance Test

The endurance test shall be used to demonstrate the specified overall system reliability requirement of the completed system. The endurance test shall not be started until the Government notifies the Contractor in writing that the performance verification test is satisfactorily completed.

The Government may terminate the testing at any time when the system fails

to perform as specified. Upon termination of testing by the Government or by the Contractor, the Contractor shall commence an assessment period as described for Phase II. Upon successful completion of the endurance test, the Contractor shall deliver test reports and other documentation as specified to the Government prior to acceptance of the system.

a. Phase I (Testing)

The test shall be conducted 24 hours per day, 7 days per week, for 15 consecutive calendar days, including holidays, and the system shall operate as specified. The Contractor shall make no repairs during this phase of testing unless authorized by the Government in writing.

b. Phase II (Assessment)

After the conclusion of Phase I, the Contractor shall identify failures, determine causes of failures, repair failures, and deliver a written report to the Government. The report shall explain in detail the nature of each failure, corrective action taken, results of tests performed, and shall recommend the point at which testing should be resumed. After delivering the written report, the Contractor shall convene a test review meeting at the jobsite to present the results and recommendations to the Government. As a part of this test review meeting, the Contractor shall demonstrate that all failures have been corrected by performing appropriate portions of the performance verification test. Based on the Contractor's report and test review meeting, the Government may require that the Phase I test be totally or partially rerun. After the conclusion of any retesting which the Government may require, the Phase II assessment shall be repeated as if Phase I had just been completed.

1.5.5 Coordination with HVAC System Balancing

The HVAC control system shall be tuned after all air-system and hydronic-system balancing has been completed, minimum damper positions set and a report issued. Commissioning may be performed prior to or simultaneous with HVAC system balancing.

1.5.6 Posted Instructions

Instructions on letter-size sheets and half-size plastic laminated drawings for each system, showing the final installed conditions, shall be placed in each HVAC control panel. The posted instructions shall include the control sequence, control schematic, ladder diagram, wiring diagram, valve schedules, damper schedules, commissioning procedures, and preventive maintenance instructions.

1.6 TRAINING

1.6.1 General

The training course shall be conducted for 8 operating staff members designated by the Contracting Officer in the maintenance and operation of the system, including specified hardware and software. A training day is defined as 8 hours of classroom instruction, including breaks and lunchtime, Monday through Friday, during the daytime shift in effect at the training facility. For guidance in planning the required instruction, the Contractor shall assume that the attendees will have a high school education or equivalent, and are familiar with HVAC systems. No training shall be scheduled until training manuals and O&M manuals have been

approved by the Government.

#### 1.6.2 Training Course Content

The course shall be taught at the project site for a period of 4 training days. The training course shall cover all the material contained in the Operating and Maintenance Instructions, the layout and location of each HVAC control panel, the layout of one of each type of unitary equipment and the locations of each, the location of each system-control device external to the panels, the location of the compressed-air station, preventive maintenance, troubleshooting, diagnostics, calibration, adjustment, commissioning, tuning, and repair procedures. Typical systems and similar systems may be treated as a group, with instruction on the physical layout of one such system. The results of the performance verification test and the calibration, adjustment and commissioning report shall be presented as benchmarks of HVAC control-system performance by which to measure operation and maintenance effectiveness.

### 1.7 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICE

#### 1.7.1 General Requirements

Services, materials and equipment shall be provided as necessary to maintain the entire system in an operational state as specified for a period of 1 year after successful completion and acceptance of the Performance Verification Test. Impacts on facility operations shall be minimized.

#### 1.7.2 Description of Work

The adjustment and repair of the system shall include the manufacturer's required adjustments of computer equipment, software updates, transmission equipment and instrumentation and control devices.

#### 1.7.3 Personnel

Service personnel shall be qualified to accomplish work promptly and satisfactorily. The Government shall be advised in writing of the name of the designated service representative, and of any changes in personnel.

#### 1.7.4 Scheduled Inspections

Two inspections shall be performed at 6 month intervals (or less if required by the manufacturer), and all work required shall be performed. Inspections shall be scheduled in June and December. These inspections shall include:

- a. Visual checks and operational tests of all equipment.
- b. Fan checks and filter changes for all control system equipment.
- c. Clean all control system equipment including interior and exterior surfaces.
- d. Check and calibrate each field device. Check and calibrate 50 percent of the total analog points during the first inspection. Check and calibrate the remaining 50 percent of the analog points during the second major inspection. Certify analog test instrumentation accuracy to be twice that of the device being

calibrated. Randomly check at least 25 percent of all digital points for proper operation during the first inspection. Randomly check at least 25 percent of the remaining digital points during the second inspection.

- e. Run all system software diagnostics and correct all diagnosed problems.
- f. Resolve any previous outstanding problems.

#### 1.7.5 Scheduled Work

This work shall be performed during regular working hours, Monday through Friday, excluding legal holidays.

#### 1.7.6 Emergency Service

The Government will initiate service calls when the system is not functioning properly. Qualified personnel shall be available to provide service to the system. A telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times shall be provided. Service personnel shall be at the site within 3 hours after receiving a request for service. The control system shall be restored to proper operating condition within 2 calendar days after receiving a request for service.

#### 1.7.7 Operation

Scheduled adjustments and repairs shall include verification of the control system operation as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.

#### 1.7.8 Records and Logs

Dated records and logs shall be kept of each task, with cumulative records for each major component, and for the complete system chronologically. A continuous log shall be maintained for all devices. The log shall contain all initial analog span and zero calibration values and all digital points.

Complete logs shall be kept and shall be available for inspection onsite, demonstrating that planned and systematic adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the control system.

#### 1.7.9 Work Requests

Each service call request shall be recorded as received and shall include the serial number identifying the component involved, its location, date and time the call was received, nature of trouble, names of the service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials to be used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. A record of the work performed shall be submitted within 5 days after work is accomplished.

#### 1.7.10 System Modifications

Recommendations for system modification shall be submitted in writing. System modifications, including operating parameters and control settings, shall not be made without prior approval of the Government. Any modifications made to the system shall be incorporated into the operations and maintenance manuals, and other documentation affected.

### 1.7.11 Software

Updates to the software shall be provided for system; operating and application software shall be updated and operation in the system shall be verified. Updates shall be incorporated into operations and maintenance manuals, and software documentation. There shall be at least one scheduled update near the end of the first year's warranty period, at which time the latest released version of the Contractor's software shall be installed and validated.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

Units of the same type of equipment shall be products of a single manufacturer. Each major component of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name and address, and the model and serial number in a conspicuous place. Materials and equipment shall be standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products, which are of a similar material, design and workmanship. The standard products shall have been in a satisfactory commercial or industrial use for 2 years prior to use on this project. The 2 years use shall include applications of equipment and materials under similar circumstances and of similar size.

The 2 years experience shall be satisfactorily completed by a product which has been sold or is offered for sale on the commercial market through advertisements, manufacturers' catalogs, or brochures. Products having less than a 2 year field service record will be acceptable if a certified record of satisfactory field operation, for not less than 6,000 hours exclusive of the manufacturer's factory tests, can be shown. The equipment items shall be supported by a service organization. Items of the same type and purpose shall be identical, including equipment, assemblies, parts and components. Automatic temperature controls shall be direct digital controls that will provide the required sequence of operation. No pneumatics will be allowed except for valve or damper actuators.

#### 2.1.1 Electronic Devices

Electronic devices not located within an HVAC control panel shall have a NEMA ICS 1 enclosure in accordance with NEMA 250 unless otherwise shown.

#### 2.1.3 Ambient Temperature Limits

DDC panels shall have ambient condition ratings of plus 35 to 120 degrees F and 10 to 95 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Devices installed outdoors shall operate within limit ratings of minus 35 to 150 degrees F. Instrumentation and control elements shall be rated for continuous operation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified or normally encountered for the installed location.

## 2.2 WIRING

### 2.2.1 Terminal Blocks

Terminal blocks shall be insulated, modular, feed-through, clamp style with recessed captive screw-type clamping mechanism, shall be suitable for rail mounting, and shall have end plates and partition plates for separation or

shall have enclosed sides.

#### 2.2.2 Control Wiring for 24-Volt Circuits

Control wiring for 24-volt circuits shall be 18 AWG minimum and shall be rated for 300-volt service. All control wiring shall be installed in conduit per section 16415 Electrical Work, Interior.

#### 2.2.3 Wiring for 120-Volt Circuits

Wiring for 120-volt circuits shall be 14 AWG minimum and shall be rated for 600-volt service. All control wiring shall be installed in conduit per section 16415 Electricla Work, Interior.

#### 2.2.4 Instrumentation Cable

Instrumentation cable shall be 18 AWG, stranded copper, single- or multiple-twisted, minimum 2 inch lay of twist, 100 percent shielded pairs, and shall have a 300-volt insulation. Each pair shall have a 20 AWG tinned-copper drain wire and individual overall pair insulation. Cables shall have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape, overall 20 AWG tinned-copper cable drain wire, and overall cable insulation.

### 2.3 ACTUATORS

#### 2.3.1 General Requirements

Actuators shall be electronic. Actuators shall fail to their spring-return positions on signal or power failure and shall have a visible position indicator. Actuators shall open or close the devices to which they are applied within 60 seconds after a full scale input signal change. Electronic actuators operating in parallel or in sequence shall have an auxiliary actuator driver.

#### 2.3.2 Damper Actuators

The actuators shall be provided with mounting and connecting hardware. Actuators shall smoothly operate the devices to which they are applied. Actuators shall fully open and close the devices to which they are applied and shall have a full stroke response time of 60 seconds or less. The actuator stroke shall be limited by an adjustable stop in the direction of power stroke.

#### 2.3.3 Valve Actuators

Valve actuators shall be selected to provide a minimum of 125 percent of the motive power necessary to operate the valve over its full range of operation.

### 2.4 AUTOMATIC CONTROL VALVES

Valves shall have stainless-steel stems and stuffing boxes with extended necks to clear the piping insulation. Valve bodies shall be designed for not less than 125 psig working pressure or 150 percent of the system operating pressure, whichever is greater. Valve leakage rating shall be 0.01 percent of rated Cv. Unless otherwise specified, bodies for valves 1-1/2 inches and smaller shall be brass or bronze, with threaded or union ends; bodies for 2 inch valves shall have threaded ends; and bodies for



valves 2 to 3 inches shall be of brass, bronze or iron. Bodies for valves 2-1/2 inches and larger shall be provided with flanged-end connections. Valve Cv shall be within 100 to 125 percent of the Cv shown.

#### 2.4.1 Butterfly-Valve Assembly

Butterfly valves shall be threaded lug type suitable for dead-end service and modulation to the fully-closed position, with carbon-steel bodies and noncorrosive discs, stainless steel shafts supported by bearings, and EPDM seats suitable for temperatures from 20 to 250 degrees F. Valves shall have a manual means of operation independent of the actuator.

#### 2.4.2 Three-Way Valves

Three-way valves shall provide linear flow control with constant total flow throughout full plug travel.

#### 2.4.3 Terminal-Unit Coil Valves

Control valves with either flare-type or solder-type ends shall be provided for duct or terminal-unit coils. Flare nuts shall be furnished for each flare-type end valve.

#### 2.4.4 Valves for Chilled Water

Internal valve trim shall be bronze except that valve stems may be type 316 stainless steel. Valve Cv shall be within 100 to 125 percent of the Cv shown. Valves 4 inches and larger shall be butterfly.

#### 2.4.5 Valves for Hot Water

For hot water service below 250 degrees F and Dual Temperature Service, internal trim (including seats, seat rings, modulating plugs, and springs) of valves controlling water hotter than 210 degrees F shall be Type 316 stainless steel. Internal trim for valves controlling water 210 degrees F or less shall be brass or bronze. Nonmetallic parts of hot-water control valves shall be suitable for a minimum continuous operating temperature shall be suitable for a minimum continuous operating temperature of 250 degrees F or 50 degrees F above the system design temperature, whichever is higher. Valves 4 inches and larger shall be butterfly valves.

### 2.5 DAMPERS

#### 2.5.1 Damper Assembly

A single damper section shall have blades no longer than 48 inches and shall be no higher than 72 inches. Maximum damper blade width shall be 8 inches. Larger sizes shall be made from a combination of sections. Dampers shall be steel, or other materials where shown. Flat blades shall be made rigid by folding the edges. Blade-operating linkages shall be within the frame so that blade-connecting devices within the same damper section shall not be located directly in the air stream. Damper axles shall be 0.5 inch minimum, plated steel rods supported in the damper frame by stainless steel or bronze bearings. Blades mounted vertically shall be supported by thrust bearings. Pressure drop through dampers shall not exceed 0.04 inch water gauge at 1,000 feet per minute in the wide-open position. Frames shall not be less than 2 inches in width. Dampers shall be tested in accordance with AMCA 500.

### 2.5.2 Operating Links

Operating links external to dampers, such as crankarms, connecting rods, and line shafting for transmitting motion from damper actuators to dampers, shall withstand a load equal to at least twice the maximum required damper-operating force. Rod lengths shall be adjustable. Links shall be brass, bronze, zinc-coated steel, or stainless steel. Working parts of joints and clevises shall be brass, bronze, or stainless steel. Adjustments of crankarms shall control the open and closed positions of dampers.

### 2.5.3 Damper Types

Dampers shall be parallel blade type.

#### 2.5.3.1 Outside Air, Return Air, and Relief Air Dampers

Outside air, return air and relief air dampers shall be provided where shown. Blades shall have interlocking edges and shall be provided with compressible seals at points of contact. The channel frames of the dampers shall be provided with jamb seals to minimize air leakage. Dampers shall not leak in excess of 20 cfm per square foot at 4 inches water gauge static pressure when closed. Seals shall be suitable for an operating temperature range of minus 40 degrees F to 200 degrees F. Dampers shall be rated at not less than 2,000 feet per minute air velocity.

#### 2.5.3.2 Mechanical and Electrical Space Ventilation Dampers

Mechanical and electrical space ventilation dampers shall be as shown. Dampers shall not leak in excess of 80 cfm per square foot at 4 inches water gauge static pressure when closed. Dampers shall be rated at not less than 1,500 feet per minute air velocity.

#### 2.5.3.3 Smoke Dampers

Smoke damper and actuator assembly required per NFPA 90A shall meet the Class II leakage requirements of UL 555S. Dampers shall be rated at not less than 2000 feet per minute air velocity.

### 2.5.4 Damper End Switches

Each end switch shall be a hermetically sealed switch with a trip lever and over-travel mechanism. The switch enclosure shall be suitable for mounting on the duct exterior and shall permit setting the position of the trip lever that actuates the switch. The trip lever shall be aligned with the damper blade.

## 2.6 SMOKE DETECTORS

Smoke detectors shall be provided as specified in Section 16721 FIRE DETECTION, ALARM AND RADIO TYPE REPORTING SYSTEM and installed under section 15951.

## 2.7 INSTRUMENTATION

### 2.7.1 Measurements

- a. Conditioned space temperature, from 50 to 85 degrees F.

- b. Duct temperature, from 40 to 140 degrees F except that return air temperature for economizer operation shall be minus 30 to plus 130 degrees F.
- c. Chilled water temperature, from 30 to 100 degrees F.
- d. Heating hot water temperature, from 100 to 250 degrees F.
- e. Outside air temperature, from minus 30 to plus 130 degrees F.
- f. Relative humidity, 0 to 100 percent for high limit applications; from 20 to 80 percent for space applications.
- g. Differential pressure for VAV supply duct static pressure from 0 to 2.0 inches water gauge.
- h. Pitot tube air flow measurement station from 0 to 0.1 inch water gauge for flow velocities of 500 to 1,200 fpm; 0 to 0.25 inch water gauge for velocities of 500 to 1,800 fpm; or 0 to 0.5 inch water gauge for velocities of 500 to 2,500 fpm.
- i. Electronic air flow measurement station and from 125 to 2,500 fpm.

## 2.7.2 Temperature Instruments

### 2.7.2.1 Resistance Temperature Detectors (RTD)

Each RTD shall be platinum with a tolerance of plus or minus 0.1 percent at 32 degrees F, and shall be encapsulated in epoxy, series 300 stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or copper. Each RTD shall be furnished with an RTD 1000 ohm as specified, integrally mounted unless otherwise shown.

### 2.7.2.2 Continuous Averaging RTD

Continuous averaging RTDs shall have a tolerance of plus or minus 1.0 degree F at the reference temperature, and shall be of sufficient length to ensure that the resistance represents an average over the cross section in which it is installed. The sensing element shall have a bendable copper sheath. Each averaging RTD shall be furnished to match the resistance range of the averaging RTD.

## 2.7.3 Electronic Airflow Measurement Stations and

### 2.7.3.1 Stations

Each station shall contain an array of velocity sensing elements and straightening vanes inside a flanged sheet metal casing. The velocity sensing elements shall be of the RTD or thermistor type, with linearizing means. The sensing elements shall be distributed across the duct cross section in the quantity and pattern set forth for measurements and instruments of ASHRAE-03 and SMACNA-07 for the traversing of ducted air flows. The resistance to air flow through the airflow measurement station shall not exceed 0.08 inch water gauge at an airflow of 2,000 fpm. Station construction shall be suitable for operation at airflows of up to 5,000 fpm over a temperature range of 40 to 120 degrees F, and accuracy shall be plus or minus 3 percent over a range of 125 to 2,500 fpm scaled to air volume.

## 2.7.4 Pitot Tube Airflow Measurement Stations and

### 2.7.4.1 Stations

Each station shall contain an array of velocity sensing elements and straightening vanes inside a flanged sheet metal casing. The velocity sensing elements shall be of the multiple pitot tube type with averaging manifolds. The sensing elements shall be distributed across the duct cross section in the quantity and pattern set forth for measurements and instruments of ASHRAE-03 or SMACNA-07 for the traversing of ducted airflows. The resistance to airflow through the airflow measurement station shall not exceed 0.08 inch water gauge at an airflow of 2,000 fpm. Station construction shall be suitable for operation at airflows of up to 5,000 fpm over a temperature range of 40 to 120 degrees F, and accuracy shall be plus or minus 3 percent over a range of 500 to 2,500 fpm scaled to air volume. This device shall not be used if the required velocity measurement is below 700 fpm.

## 2.7.5 Differential Pressure Instruments

The instrument shall be a pressure sensor with an integral sensing element.

The instrument over pressure rating shall be 300 percent of the operating pressure. The sensor/transmitter assembly accuracy shall be plus or minus 2 percent of full scale. The sensor shall be a 2-wire, loop powered device.

## 2.7.6 Thermowells

Thermowells shall be Series 300 stainless steel with threaded brass plug and chain, 2 inch lagging neck and extension type well. Inside diameter and insertion length shall be as required for the application.

## 2.7.7 Sunshields

Sunshields for outside air temperature sensing elements shall prevent the sun from directly striking the temperature sensing elements. The sunshields shall be provided with adequate ventilation so that the sensing element responds to the ambient temperature of the surroundings. The top of each sunshield shall have a galvanized metal rainshield projecting over the face of the sunshield. The sunshields shall be painted white.

## 2.8 THERMOSTATS

### 2.8.1 General

Thermostat ranges shall be selected so that the setpoint is adjustable without tools between plus or minus 10 degrees F of the setpoint shown. Thermostats shall be electric or low-voltage electronic.

### 2.8.2 Nonmodulating Room Thermostats

Contacts shall be single-pole double-throw (SPDT), hermetically sealed, and wired to identified terminals. Maximum differential shall be 5 degrees F. Room thermostats shall be enclosed with separate locking covers (guards).

### 2.8.3 Modulating Room Thermostats

Modulating room thermostats shall have either one output signal, two output signals operating in unison, or two output signals operating in sequence, as required for the application. Each thermostat shall have an adjustable throttling range of 4 to 8 degrees F for each output. Room thermostats shall be enclosed with separate locking covers (guards).

#### 2.8.4 Nonmodulating Capillary Thermostats and Aquastats

Each thermostat shall have a capillary length of at least 5 feet, shall have adjustable direct reading scales for both setpoint and differential, and shall have a differential adjustable from 6 to 16 degrees F. Aquastats shall be of the strap-on type, with 10 degrees F fixed differential.

#### 2.8.5 Freezestats

Freezestats shall be manual reset, low temperature safety thermostats, with NO and NC contacts and a 20 foot element which shall respond to the coldest 18 inch segment.

#### 2.8.6 Modulating Capillary Thermostats

Each thermostat shall have either one output signal, two output signals operating in unison, or two output signals operating in sequence, as required for the application. Thermostats shall have adjustable throttling ranges of 4 to 8 degrees F for each output.

### 2.9 PRESSURE SWITCHES AND SOLENOID VALVES

#### 2.9.1 Pressure Switches

Each switch shall have an adjustable setpoint with visible setpoint scale. Range shall be as shown. Differential adjustment shall span 20 to 40 percent of the range of the device.

#### 2.9.2 Differential Pressure Switches

Each switch shall be an adjustable diaphragm-operated device with two SPDT contacts, with taps for sensing lines to be connected to duct pressure fittings designed to sense air pressure. These fittings shall be of the angled-tip type with tips pointing into the air stream. Range shall be 5.0 to 6.0 inches water gauge. Differential shall be a maximum of 0.15 inch water gauge at the low end of the range and 0.35 inch water gauge at the high end of the range.

### 2.10 INDICATING DEVICES

#### 2.10.1 Insertion Thermometers

Thermometers for insertion in ductwork and piping systems shall have brass, malleable iron, or aluminum alloy case and frame, clear protective face, permanently stabilized glass tube with indicating-fluid column, white face, black numbers, and a 9 inch scale. Thermometers for piping systems shall have rigid stems with straight, angular, or inclined pattern, and shall conform to ASME PTC 19.3.

#### 2.10.2 Thermometer Stems

Thermometer stems shall have expansion heads as required to prevent breakage at extreme temperatures. On rigid-stem thermometers, the space

between bulb and stem shall be filled with a heat-transfer medium.

#### 2.10.3 Air Duct Thermometers

Air duct thermometers shall have perforated stem guards and 45 degree adjustable duct flanges with locking mechanism.

#### 2.10.4 Averaging Thermometers

Averaging thermometers shall have 3-1/2 inch(nominal) dial, with black legend on white background, and pointer traveling through a 270 degree arc.

#### 2.10.5 Accuracy

Thermometers shall have an accuracy of plus or minus 1 percent of scale range. Thermometers shall have the following ranges:

- a. Mixed air, return air, cooling-coil discharge, chilled water, condenser water, and glycol cooling temperatures: 0 to 100 degrees F in 1 degree graduations.
- b. Heating-coil discharge temperature: 30 to 180 degrees F in 2 degree graduations.
- c. Hydronic heating systems below 220 degrees F: 40 to 240 degrees F in 2 degree graduations.
- d. Glycol heating service temperature: 40 to 240 degrees F in 2 degree F degree graduations.
- e. High-temperature hot water: 100 to 550 degrees F in 5 degree graduations.

#### 2.10.6 Pressure Gauges

Gauges shall be 2 inch (nominal) size, back connected, suitable for field or panel mounting as required, shall have black legend on white background, and shall have a pointer traveling through a 270 degree arc. Accuracy shall be plus or minus 3 percent of scale range. Gauges shall meet requirements of ASME B40.1.

##### 2.10.6.1 Hydronic System Gauges

Gauges for hydronic system applications shall have ranges and graduations as shown.

##### 2.10.6.2 Low-Differential Pressure Gauges

Gauges for low-differential pressure measurements shall be a minimum of 3.5 inch (nominal) size with two sets of pressure taps, and shall have a diaphragm-actuated pointer, white dial with black figures, and pointer zero adjustment. Gauges shall have ranges and graduations as shown. Accuracy shall be plus or minus 2 percent of scale range.

#### 2.11 RELAYS

Control relay contacts shall have utilization category and ratings selected for the application, with a minimum of two sets of contacts (two normally open, two normally closed) enclosed in a dustproof enclosure. Relays shall be rated for a minimum life of one million operations. Operating time

shall be 20 milliseconds or less. Relays shall be equipped with coil transient suppression devices to limit transients to 150 percent of rated coil voltage. Time delay relays shall be 2 PDT with 8-pin connectors, dust cover, and a matching rail mounted socket. Adjustable timing range shall be 0 to 3 minutes. Power consumption shall not be greater than 3 watts.

## 2.12 FIELD HARDWARE

### 2.12.1 Direct Digital Control (DDC) Panel Hardware

DDC panels shall be microcomputer based with sufficient memory to perform specified DDC panel functions and operations. The panel shall not be dependent on logic or data from an external computer. The panel shall contain necessary I/O functions to connect to field sensors and control devices. The DDC panel shall include:

- a. Main power switch.
- b. Power on indicator.
- c. Portable tester connector.
- d. On-Off-Auto switches for each digital output. The status of these switches will be available to the DDC panel for further processing.
- e. Minimum-Maximum-Auto switches, or Auto-Manual switches with manual potentiometer, for each analog output. The status of these switches will be available to the DDC panel for further processing.

#### 2.12.1.1 Sealed Battery Backup

A sealed battery backup for the DDC panel memory and real time clock function sufficient to maintain them for a minimum period of 8 hours shall be provided. Automatic charging of batteries shall be provided, or alternately, lithium batteries sized to provide a minimum of 30 days operation and a shelf life of 2 years shall be provided. A low battery alarm with indication for each DDC panel shall be provided. Alternatively, capacitors may be provided to maintain memory and clock function for a minimum of 8 hours.

#### 2.12.1.2 Electrical Service Outlet for use with Test Equipment

A single phase, 120 Vac electrical service outlet for use with test equipment shall be furnished inside the DDC panel enclosure.

#### 2.12.1.3 Locking Type Mounting Cabinets

Locking type mounting cabinets, with common keying and door switch wired to and DDC panel input for intrusion alarm annunciation, shall be furnished.

#### 2.12.1.4 Failure Mode

Upon failure of the DDC panel, all connected points shall be forced to the failure mode shown in the I/O summary tables.

#### 2.12.1.5 Portable Tester

Provisions for connection of a portable tester shall be furnished at each DDC panel location.

#### 2.12.1.6 I/O Functions

I/O functions shall be provided as part of the DDC panel and shall be in accordance with the following:

- a. The Analog Input (AI) function shall monitor each analog input, perform A-to-D conversion, and hold the digital value in a buffer for interrogation. The A-to-D conversion shall have a minimum resolution of 10 bits plus sign. Signal conditioning shall be provided for each analog input. Analog inputs shall be individually calibrated for zero and span, in hardware or in software. The AI shall incorporate common mode noise rejection of 50 dB from 0 to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal mode noise rejection of 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10,000 ohms.
- b. The Analog Output (AO) function shall accept digital data, perform D-to-A conversion. D-to-A conversion shall have a minimum resolution of 8 bits plus sign. Analog outputs shall be individually calibrated for zero and span. Short circuit protection on voltage outputs and open circuit protection on current outputs shall be provided. An individual gradual switch for manual override of each analog output and means of physically securing access to these switches shall be provided. Each AO shall have a three-position switch for selection of the DDC control signal, no control, or a locally generated control signal for connection to the controlled device. Feedback shall be provided to the system as to the status of the output (manual control or automatic). Switches for pneumatic control outputs shall provide a connection for an externally generated pneumatic signal. All switches shall be either of a key operated design with the same keying system used for other outputs or otherwise suitably protected from unauthorized access.
- c. The Digital Input (DI) function shall accept on-off, open-close, or other change of state (two state data) indications. Isolation and protection against an applied steady-state voltage up to 180 Vac peak shall be provided.
- d. The Digital Output (DO) function shall provide contact closures for momentary and maintained operation of output devices. Closures shall have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. DO relays shall have an initial breakdown voltage between contacts and coil of at least 500 V peak. Electromagnetic interference suppression shall be furnished on all output lines to limit transients to nondamaging levels. Protection against an applied steady-state voltage up to 180 Vac peak shall be provided. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 ampere at 24 Vac. Key locked HOA switches shall be provided for manual override of each digital output. Feedback shall be provided to the system as to the status of the output (manual control or automatic). All switches shall be common keyed.
- e. Signal conditioning for sensors shall be provided as specified.

#### 2.12.2 Variable Air Volume (VAV) Terminal Unit Controls

The VAV terminal units shall be as specified in Section 15895 AIR SUPPLY,



DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION AND EXHAUST SYSTEM. Terminal unit controls shall consist of individual box controllers which shall be fully interfaced to the control system through dedicated DDC panels.

#### 2.12.2.1 Box Control Device

Controls for pressure independent boxes shall consist of a velocity-sensing device in the primary air entering the box, a room temperature sensing element, a damper actuator, and an adjustable microprocessor-based VAV box controller. Each controller shall operate a damper for cooling and a duct coil for heating. Actuator shall open or close the device to which it is applied within 6 minutes. Terminal unit controls shall meet the requirements of UL 916 and 47 CFR 15.

Controls for pressure independent boxes with recirculating fans shall consist of a velocity-sensing device in the primary air entering the box, a room temperature sensing element, an adjustable microprocessor-based VAV box controller, a damper with actuator, and a duct pressure switch to operate the recirculation fan. Each controller shall operate the damper for cooling and the recirculation fan and duct coil for heating.

Each VAV box controller shall have a provision for occupancy sensing overrides. Based upon the contact status of either a manual wall switch or an occupancy sensing device, the VAV box controller shall automatically select either an economy or a comfort mode.

VAV box controllers shall provide an auxiliary binary output to serve as the interface to an associated lighting relay. Based upon the status of either an occupancy sensing device or a manual wall switch, the VAV box controller shall provide a contact output to automatically turn on or off lights. Power and associated transformers, as needed, shall be provided from the nearest lighting circuit to the VAV box controller.

#### 2.12.2.2 Communication and Programming Device

One hand-held communication and programming device with instruction manual, plus 1 additional hand-held communicating device and instruction manual per 100 terminal units, shall be provided. The communication and programming device shall connect to the controller directly. The communication and programming device shall be used to read and set minimum velocity, maximum velocity, heating setpoint, and cooling setpoint, and to read velocity and space temperature.

#### 2.12.3 Command Entry Device

A command entry device shall be provided for use with DDC panels. The command entry device shall include a keyboard and display for local programming and setup. A printer and disk system shall also be provided. The command entry device shall be provided with communications interfaces to each DDC panel, and shall:

- a. Allow for entry of database information, including parameters and constraints from the keyboard.
- b. Display any digital, analog, and pulse accumulator input.
- c. Control any digital and analog output.
- d. Provide operator interface in alphanumeric and decimal.

- e. Disable/enable any DDC panel.

#### 2.12.3.1 Communications

A port and proper cabling shall be provided to allow for communications between the command entry device and the DDC panel.

#### 2.12.3.2 Keyboard

A keyboard shall be furnished with the command entry device panel. The keyboard shall include a 64-character standard ASCII character set based on ANSI X3.64 and ANSI X3.154. The keyboard shall also include a 10-key numeric keypad and 10 programmable function keys, light pen, or mouse. The keyboard shall provide a means for the operator to interact with all command and applications software.

#### 2.12.3.3 Printer

A printer shall be provided for use with the command entry device panel. The printer will be Hewlett Packard Laserjet 5, or equal.

#### 2.12.3.4 Hard Disk

The command entry device shall include a hard disk system having a maximum average access time no greater than 19 milliseconds, and a minimum of 4 gigabytes of formatted storage. The device shall allow each DDC panel database to be stored as a separate file suitable for transfer to floppy disk.

#### 2.12.3.5 Floppy Disk

The command entry device shall include a 5-1/4 inch high density or a 3.5 inch high density floppy disk system as part of the command entry device providing a minimum of 1.2 megabytes of formatted storage. Must have a tape backup drive.

#### 2.17.3.6 Processor

Processor must be pentium 2, with a minimum of 200 megahertz and a minimum 32 megabytes of ram.

#### 2.17.3.7 Monitor

Monitor will have a minimum 15 inch screen with a minimum of 256 burst cache.

#### 2.17.3.8 Software

Software to be included are Windows 95 and ICS monitoring software.

#### 2.17.3.9 All hardware and software must be Year 2000 compliant.

#### 2.12.4 DDC Panel Portable Tester

Either as part of the command entry device or as a separate portable device capable of connection to any DDC panel, a portable test device shall be provided which includes a keyboard, display, and built-in mouse processor must be a minimum of 200 megahertz, with a minimum of 32 megabytes of ram. Harddrive must be a minimum of 2 gigabytes of storage. Must contain a

3-1/2 inch disk driver and a 56K modem, to perform the following functions through the portable tester.:

- a. Load all DDC panel software and information, including parameters and constraints.
- b. Display the status or value of all points connected to the DDC panel.
- c. Control the outputs connected to the DDC panel.
- d. Perform DDC panel diagnostic testing.
- e. Provide operator interface in alphanumerics and decimal (hexadecimal, octal, and binary display shall not be utilized).
- f. Accept DDC panel software and information from the command entry device panel for subsequent loading into a specific DDC panel. Provide all necessary software and hardware required to support this function.

2.17.4.1 All hardware and software must be Year 2000 compliant.

#### 2.12.5 DDC Panel Test Set

A DDC panel test set, consisting of a DDC panel and I/O simulator, shall be provided for use, located as shown, connected via a separate data transmission media (DTM) circuit. The I/O simulator shall manually generate the values or status for all I/O functions specified. The I/O simulator shall receive, display, and send different types of signals. Cables, connectors, test jacks, controls, indicators, and equipment required to simulate the I/O sensors and control devices and display the operation of all types of DDC panels used by the system shall be included. Indicators and controls shall be installed in a control panel. Test jacks for input and output signal of the I/O simulator shall be front panel mounted for use in diagnostics and evaluation. The I/O functions mix, including indicators and controls, shall be at least:

- a. 4 AI.
- b. 4 AO.
- c. 16 DI.
- d. 16 DO.
- e. 2 pulse accumulator inputs.
- f. One each of any other type utilized in the system.

#### 2.12.6 Communication Equipment

The DDC panel shall be equipped with hardware to allow for communication over Data Transmission Media (DTM) using the communication network as shown.

#### 2.12.7 Dial Up Modem

Hayes Compatible Modem operating at 9,600 to 19,200 killo BPS with automatic/selectable fall back operation with automatic answer and

automatic dial capability shall be connected to the control system and to the telephone system and shall be certified to meet the requirements of CFR 47 Part 68.

## 2.13 DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL PANEL SOFTWARE

Each DDC panel, shall contain an operating system that controls and schedules that DDC panel's activities in real time. The DDC panel shall maintain a point database in its RAM that includes all parameters, constraints, and the latest value or status of all points connected to that DDC panel. The operating system shall include a real time clock function that maintains the seconds, minutes, hours, date and month, including day of the week. The operating system shall allow local loading of software and data files from the portable tester and from an operator interface panel.

### 2.13.1 Command Priorities

A scheme of priority levels shall be provided to prevent interaction of a command of low priority with a command of higher priority. The system shall require the latest highest priority command addressed to a single point to be stored for a period of time longer than the longest time constraint in the on and off states, ensuring that the correct command will be issued when the time constraint is no longer in effect or report the rejected command. Override command entered by the operator shall have higher priority than those emanating from application programs.

### 2.13.2 DDC Panel Startup

The DDC panel shall have startup software that causes automatic commencement of operation without human intervention, including startup of all connected I/O functions. A DDC panel restart program based on detection of power failure at the DDC panel shall be included in the DDC panel software. Upon restoration of power to the DDC panel, the program shall restart all equipment and restore all loads to the state at time of power failure, or to the state as commanded by time programs or other overriding programs. The restart program shall include start time delays between successive commands to prevent demand surges or overload trips. The startup software shall initiate operation of self-test diagnostic routines. Upon failure of the DDC panel and if the database and application software are no longer resident, or if the clock cannot be read, the DDC panel shall not restart and systems shall remain in the failure mode until the necessary repairs are made. If the database and application programs are resident, the DDC panel shall resume operation after an adjustable time delay of from 0 to 600 seconds. The startup sequence for each DDC panel shall include a unique time delay setting when system operation is initiated.

### 2.13.3 DDC Panel Operating Mode

Each DDC panel shall control and monitor all functions independent of communication with any other source. The software shall perform DDC panel functions and DDC panel resident application programs using data obtained from I/O functions and based upon the DDC panel real time clock function. The DDC panel software shall execute commands after performing constraint checks in the DDC panel.

### 2.13.4 DDC Panel Failure Mode

Upon failure for any reason, the system shall perform an orderly shutdown and force all DDC panel outputs to a predetermined state, consistent with the failure modes defined in the I/O summary tables and the associated controlled devices.

#### 2.13.5 DDC Panel Functions

Software necessary to accomplish the following functions, as appropriate, fully implemented and operational, within the DDC panel shall be provided:

- a. Scanning of inputs.
- b. Control of outputs.
- c. Store alarms for reporting when requested.
- d. Maintain real time.
- e. Execute DDC panel resident application programs.
- f. Averaging or filtering of each analog input.
- g. Constraint checks, prior to command issuance.
- h. DDC panel diagnostics.
- i. DDC panel portable tester operation.

#### 2.13.6 Analog Monitoring

The DDC panel shall measure analog values and shall be capable of transmitting analog values for display. An analog change in value is defined as a change exceeding a preset differential value as specified. Displays and reports shall express analog values in proper engineering units with polarity sign. The system shall accommodate up to 255 different sets of engineering unit conversions. Each engineering unit conversion shall include range, span, and conversion equation.

#### 2.13.7 Logic (Virtual) Points

Logic (virtual) points shall be software points entered in the point database which are not directly associated with a physical I/O function. This value shall be created by calculating it from any combination of digital and analog points, or other data. Logic points shall be analog or digital points having all the properties of real points, including alarms, without the associated hardware. Logic points shall be defined or calculated and entered into the database by the Contractor as required. The calculated analog point shall have point identification in the same format as any other analog point. The calculated point shall be used in any program where the real value is not obtainable directly. Calculated point values shall be current for use by the system within 30 seconds of the time any input value changes and shall include:

- a. Control loop setpoints.
- b. Control loop gain constants.
- c. Control loop integral constants.

- d. Summer/winter operation.
- e. Real time.
- f. Scheduled on/off times.
- g. Equipment run-time targets.
- h. Calculated point values.

#### 2.13.8 I/O Point Definition

Each I/O point shall be defined in a database in the DDC panel. The definition shall include all physical parameters and constraints associated with each point.

#### 2.13.9 Parameter Definition

Each I/O point shall be defined and entered into the database by the Contractor, including as applicable:

- a. Name.
- b. Device or sensor type (i.e., sensor, control, motors).
- c. Point identifications number.
- d. Area.
- e. Sensor range.
- f. Controller range.
- g. Sensor span.
- h. Controller span.
- i. Engineering units conversion (scale factor).
- j. High and low reasonableness value (analog).
- k. High and low alarm limit (analog).
- l. High and low alarm limit differential (return to normal).
- m. Analog change differential (for reporting).
- n. High accumulator limit (pulse).
- o. Status description (digital inputs).

#### 2.13.10 Alarm Processing

Each DDC panel shall have alarm processing software for digital, analog, and pulse accumulator alarms for all input and virtual points connected to that DDC panel.

##### 2.13.10.1 Digital Alarms Definition

Digital alarms are those abnormal conditions indicated by digital inputs as specified in the I/O Summary Tables and elsewhere.

#### 2.13.10.2 Analog Alarms Definition

Analog alarms are those conditions higher or lower than a defined value, as measured by an analog input as specified in the I/O Summary Tables and elsewhere. Analog readings shall be compared to predefined high and low limits, and alarmed each time a value enters or returns from a limit condition. Unique high and low limits shall be assigned to each analog point in the system. Analog alarm limits shall be stored in the DDC panel database. Each analog alarm limit shall have an associated unique limit differential specifying the amount by which a variable must return to the proper operating range before being declared as a return-to-normal state. Limits and differentials shall be entered on line by the operator in limits or the measured variable, without interruption or loss of monitoring of the point concerned.

#### 2.13.10.3 Pulse Accumulator Alarms Definition

Pulse accumulator alarms are those conditions calculated from totalized values of accumulator inputs or pulse accumulator inputs rates that are outside defined limits as specified in the I/O Summary Tables and elsewhere. Pulse accumulator totalized values shall be compared to predefined limits and alarmed each time a value enters a limit condition. Unique limits shall be assigned to each pulse accumulator point in the system. Limits shall be stored in the DDC panel database.

#### 2.13.10.4 Equipment Constraints Definitions

Each control point in the database shall have DDC panel resident constraints defined and entered by the Contractor, including as applicable:

- a. Minimum off time.
- b. Minimum on time.
- c. High limit (value in engineering units).
- d. Low limit (value in engineering units).

#### 2.13.10.5 Constraint Checks

Control devices connected to the system shall have the DDC panel memory resident constraints checked before each command is issued to ensure that no equipment damage will result from improper operation. Each command shall be executed by the DDC panel only after all constraint checks have been passed. Each command point shall have unique constraints assigned. High and low "reasonableness" values or one differential "rate-of-change" value shall be assigned to each analog input. Values outside the reasonableness limits shall be rejected and an alarm generated. Status changes and analog point values shall be reported upon request, such as for reports, and application programs. Each individual point shall be capable of being selectively disabled by the operator. Disabling a point shall prohibit monitoring and automatic control of that point.

#### 2.13.11 DDC Panel Diagnostics

Each DDC panel shall have self-test diagnostic routines implemented in

firmware. The tests shall include routines that exercise memory. Diagnostic software shall be provided for use in the portable tester. The software shall display messages in plain language to inform the tester's operator of diagnosed problems.

#### 2.13.12 Summer/Winter Operation Monitoring

The system shall provide software to change the operating parameters, monitoring of alarm limits, and start-stop schedules for each mechanical system where such a change from summer to winter and vice versa is meaningful. The software shall provide commands to application programs to coordinate summer or winter operation.

#### 2.13.13 Control Sequences and Control Loops

Operator commands shall be used to create and execute control sequences and control loops for automated control of equipment based on operational parameters including times and events, defined in the database. Through the command entry device, the system shall prompt the operator for information necessary to create, modify, list, and delete control sequences and Proportional-plus-Integral-plus Derivative (PID) control loops. The system shall prompt the operator for confirmation that the control sequence and control loop addition/modification/deletion is correct, prior to placing it in operation. Mathematic functions required shall be available for use in creating the control sequences and control loops. Sufficient spare memory shall be provided to allow four control sequences and four control loops in addition to those necessary to implement the requirements specified for each DDC panel. Each control sequence shall accommodate up to eight terms or devices.

##### 2.13.13.1 Control Functions

The DDC panel shall provide the following control functions:

###### a. Two Position Control

This function shall provide control for two state device control by comparing a setpoint against a process variable and an established deadband.

###### b. Floating Point Control

This function shall exercise control when an error signal exceeds a selected deadband, and shall maintain control until the error is within the deadband limits.

###### c. Signal Selection

This function shall allow the selection of the highest or lowest analog value from a group of analog values as the basis of control. The function shall include the ability to cascade analog values so that large numbers of inputs, up to a maximum of 20, can be reduced to one or two outputs.

###### d. Reset Function

This function shall develop an analog output based on up to two analog inputs and one operator specified reset schedule.

###### e. Self Tuning



The controller shall provide self tuning operation to proportional, integral and derivative modes of control and shall modify the mode constants as required.

#### 2.13.13.2 DDC Panel Resident Applications Software

Application software required to achieve the sequences of operation, parameters, constraints, and interlocks necessary to provide control of the systems connected to the DDC system shall be provided. Application software shall be resident and executing in the DDC panel, and shall be coordinated to ensure that no conflicts or contentions remain unresolved.

The following Optimum Start/Stop Program software shall be provided in addition to that required elsewhere:

HVAC equipment which is required to be started and stopped based on a time schedule shall be subject to this program. The program shall take into account the thermal characteristics of the structure, indoor and outdoor air conditions using prediction software to determine the minimum time of HVAC system operation needed to satisfy space environmental requirements at the start of the occupied cycle, and determine the earliest time for stopping equipment at the day's end without allowing the space environmental conditions to drift out of the range specified for the occupied cycle before the start of the unoccupied cycle.

#### 2.13.14 Communication Programs

The DDC panels shall be equipped with software drivers and handlers which allow for communication with a base-wide EMCS/UMCS. The software drivers shall allow for communications via modems, line drivers, transmitters/receivers over LAN, wirelines, fiber optic or coaxial cables. The software shall be structured to support communication over a network with star, ring, radial, or a combination of topologies. Each communication program module shall be functionally independent of other Contractor-furnished software, to allow for future upgrade or replacement of communication modules without affecting other application programs and other software modules. Communication protocol for communication shall conform to a standard communication protocol.

### 2.14 WIRE AND CABLE

#### 2.14.1 Digital Functions

Control wiring for digital functions shall be 18 AWG minimum with 600-volt insulation. Multiconductor wire shall have an outer jacket of polyvinyl chloride (PVC).

#### 2.14.2 Analog Functions

Control wiring for analog functions shall be 18 AWG minimum with 600-volt insulation, twisted and shielded, 2-, 3-, or 4-wire to match analog function hardware. Multiconductor wire shall have an outer jacket of PVC.

#### 2.14.3 Sensor Wiring

Sensor wiring shall be 20 AWG minimum twisted and shielded, two-, three-, or four-wire to match analog function hardware. Multiconductor wire shall have an outer jacket of PVC.

#### 2.14.4 Class 2 Low Energy Conductors

The conductor sizes specified for digital and analog functions shall take precedence over any requirements for Class 2 low energy remote-controlled and signal-circuit conductors specified elsewhere.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION CRITERIA

##### 3.1.1 HVAC Control System

The HVAC control system shall be completely installed and ready for operation. Dielectric isolation shall be provided where dissimilar metals are used for connection and support. Penetrations through and mounting holes in the building exterior shall be made watertight. The HVAC control system installation shall provide clearance for control system maintenance by maintaining access space between coils, access space to mixed-air plenums, and other access space required to calibrate, remove, repair, or replace control system devices. The control system installation shall not interfere with the clearance requirements for mechanical and electrical system maintenance.

##### 3.1.2 Software Installation

Software shall be loaded for an operational system, including databases for all points, operational parameters, and system, command, and application software. The Contractor shall provide original and backup copies of source, excluding the general purpose operating systems and utility programs furnished by computer manufacturers and the non-job-specific proprietary code furnished by the system manufacturer, and object modules for all software on each type of media utilized, within 30 days of formal Government acceptance. In addition, a copy of individual floppy disks of all software for each DDC panel shall be provided.

##### 3.1.3 Device-Mounting Criteria

Devices mounted in or on piping or ductwork, on building surfaces, in mechanical/electrical spaces, or in occupied space ceilings shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and as shown. Control devices to be installed in piping and ductwork shall be provided with all required gaskets, flanges, thermal compounds, insulation, piping, fittings, and manual valves for shutoff, equalization, purging, and calibration. Strap-on temperature sensing elements shall not be used.

##### 3.1.4 Wiring Criteria

Wiring external to control panels, including low-voltage wiring, shall be installed in metallic raceways. Wiring shall be installed without splices between control devices and DDC panels. Instrumentation grounding shall be installed as necessary to prevent ground loops, noise, and surges from adversely affecting operation of the system. Cables and conductor wires shall be tagged at both ends, with the identifier shown on the shop drawings, in accordance with the requirements of Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR. Other electrical work shall be as specified in Section 16415 ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR and as shown.

#### 3.2 CONTROL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

### 3.2.1 Damper Actuators

Actuators shall not be mounted in the air stream. Multiple actuators operating a common damper shall be connected to a common drive shaft. Actuators shall be installed so that their action shall seal the damper to the extent required to maintain leakage at or below the specified rate and shall move the blades smoothly.

### 3.2.2 Local Gauges for Actuators

Pneumatic actuators shall have an accessible and visible receiver gauge installed in the tubing lines at the actuator as shown.

### 3.2.3 Room-Instrument Mounting

Room instruments shall be mounted so that their sensing elements are 5 feet above the finished floor unless otherwise shown. Temperature setpoint device shall be recess mounted.

### 3.2.4 Freezestats

For each 20 square feet of coil-face area, or fraction thereof, a freezestat shall be provided to sense the temperature at the location shown. Manual reset freezestats shall be installed in approved, accessible locations where they can be reset easily. The freezestat sensing element shall be installed in a serpentine pattern.

### 3.2.5 Averaging-Temperature Sensing Elements

Sensing elements shall have a total element minimum length equal to 1 linear foot per square foot of duct cross-sectional area.

### 3.2.6 Foundations and Housekeeping Pads

Foundations and housekeeping pads shall be provided for the HVAC control system air compressors.

### 3.2.7 Duct Static-Pressure Sensing Elements and Transmitters

The duct static-pressure sensing element and transmitter sensing point shall be located approximately two-thirds of the distance from the supply fan to the end of the duct with the greatest pressure drop.

### 3.2.8 Indication Devices Installed in Piping and Liquid Systems

Gauges in piping systems subject to pulsation shall have snubbers. Gauges for steam service shall have pigtail fittings with cock. Thermometers and temperature sensing elements installed in liquid systems shall be installed in thermowells.

## 3.3 COMMISSIONING PROCEDURES

### 3.3.1 Evaluations

The Contractor shall make the observations, adjustments, calibrations, measurements, and tests of the control systems, set the time schedule, and make any necessary control-system corrections to ensure that the systems function as described in the sequence of operation.

#### 3.3.1.1 Item Check

Signal levels shall be recorded for the extreme positions of each controlled device. An item-by-item check of the sequence of operation requirement shall be performed using Steps 1 through 4 in the specified control system commissioning procedures. Steps 1, 2, and 3 shall be performed with the HVAC system shut down; Step 4 shall be performed after the HVAC systems have been started. External input signals to the DDC panel (such as starter auxiliary contacts, and external systems) may be simulated in steps 1, 2, and 3. With each operational-mode signal change, DDC panel output relay contacts shall be observed to ensure that they function.

#### 3.3.1.2 Weather-Dependent Test Procedures

Weather-dependent test procedures that cannot be performed by simulation shall be performed in the appropriate climatic season. When simulation is used, the actual results shall be verified in the appropriate season.

#### 3.3.1.3 Two-Point Accuracy Check

A two-point accuracy check of the calibration of each HVAC control system sensing element and transmitter shall be performed by comparing the DDC panel readout to the actual value of the variable measured at the sensing element and transmitter or airflow measurement station location. Digital indicating test instruments shall be used, such as digital thermometers, motor-driven psychrometers, and tachometers. The test instruments shall be at least twice as accurate as the specified sensing element-to-DDC panel readout accuracy. The calibration of the test instruments shall be traceable to National Institute Of Standards And Technology standards. The first check point shall be with the HVAC system in the shutdown condition, and the second check point shall be with the HVAC system in an operational condition. Calibration checks shall verify that the sensing element-to-DDC panel readout accuracies at two points are within the specified product accuracy tolerances. If not, the device shall be recalibrated or replaced and the calibration check repeated.

#### 3.3.1.4 Insertion and Immersion Temperatures

Insertion temperature and immersion temperature sensing elements and transmitter-to-DDC panel readout calibration accuracy shall be checked at one physical location along the axis of the sensing element.

#### 3.3.1.5 Averaging Temperature

Averaging-temperature sensing element and transmitter-to-DDC panel readout calibration accuracy shall be checked every 2 feet along the axis of the sensing element in the proximity of the sensing element, for a maximum of 10 readings. These readings shall then be averaged.

#### 3.3.2 Unit Heater

The "OFF/AUTO" switch shall be placed in the "OFF" position. Each space-thermostat temperature setting shall be turned up so that it makes contact and turns on the unit heater fans. The unit heater fans shall not start. The "OFF/AUTO" switch shall be placed in the "AUTO" position. It shall be ensured that the unit-heater fans start. Each space thermostat temperature setting shall be turned down, and the unit-heater fans shall stop. The thermostats shall be set at their temperature setpoints. The

results of testing of one of each type of unit shall be logged.

### 3.3.3 Single Building Hydronic Heating with Hot Water Boiler

Steps for installation shall be as follows:

- a. Step 1 - System Inspection: The HVAC system shall be observed in its shutdown condition. It shall be verified that power and main air are available where required.
- b. Step 2 - Calibration Accuracy Check with HVAC System Shutdown: Readings shall be taken with a digital thermometer at each temperature-sensing element location. Each temperature shall be read at the DDC panel, and the thermometer and DDC panel readings logged. The calibration accuracy of the sensing element-to-DDC panel readout for outside air temperature and system supply temperature shall be checked.
- c. Step 3 - Actuator Range Adjustments: A signal shall be applied to the actuator through an operator entered value to the DDC panel. The proper operation of the actuators and positioners for all valves shall be verified visually. The signal shall be varied from live zero to full range, and it shall be verified that the actuators travel from zero stroke to full stroke within the signal range. It shall be verified that all sequenced actuators move from zero stroke to full stroke in the proper direction, and move the connected device in the proper direction from one extreme position to the other.
- d. Step 4 - Control-System Commissioning:
  - (1) The two-point calibration sensing element-to-DDC panel readout accuracy check for the outside air temperature shall be performed. Any necessary software adjustments to setpoints or parameters shall be made to achieve the outside air temperature schedule.
  - (2) The outside air temperature shall be simulated through an operator entered value to be above the setpoint. It shall be verified that pumps and boiler stop. A value shall be entered to simulate that the outside air temperature is below the setpoint as shown. It shall be verified that pumps start and boiler operates.
  - (3) The two-point calibration accuracy check of the sensing element-to-DDC panel readout for the system-supply temperature shall be performed. The system-supply temperature setpoint shall be set for the temperature schedule as shown. Signals of 8 ma and 16 ma shall be sent to the DDC panel from the outside air temperature sensor, to verify that the system-supply temperature setpoint changes to the appropriate values.
  - (4) The system shall be placed in the occupied mode. The calibration accuracy check of sensing element-to-DDC panel readout for each space temperature shall be performed, and the values logged. The setpoint shall be set for 70 degrees F at midrange, 55 degrees F at the low end, and 85 degrees F at the high end. The system shall be placed in the unoccupied-mode and it shall be verified that the space temperature setpoint changes to the unoccupied mode setting.

### 3.3.4 Variable Air Volume Control System

Steps for installation shall be as follows:

- a. Step 1 - System Inspection: The HVAC system shall be observed in its shutdown condition. The system shall be checked to see that power and main air are available where required, the outside air dampers are closed, the return air damper is open, and the cooling coil valve is closed.
- b. Step 2 - Calibration Accuracy Check with HVAC System in Shutdown: Readings shall be taken with a digital thermometer at each temperature sensing element location. Each temperature shall be read at the DDC panel, and the thermometer and DDC panel display readings logged. The calibration accuracy of the sensing element-to-DDC panel readout for outside air, return air, mixed-air, and the cooling-coil discharge air temperatures shall be checked.
- c. Step 3 - Actuator Range Adjustments: A signal shall be applied to the actuator through an operator entered value to the DDC panel. The proper operation of the actuators and positioners for all dampers and valves shall be visually verified. The signal shall be varied from live zero to full range, and it shall be verified that the actuators travel from zero stroke to full stroke within the signal range. It shall be verified that all sequenced and parallel-operated actuators move from zero stroke to full stroke in the proper direction, and move the connected device in the proper direction from one extreme position to the other.
- d. Step 4 - Control-System Commissioning:
  - (1) With the fan ready to start, the system shall be placed in the ventilation-delay mode and in the occupied mode through operator entered values. It shall be verified that supply fan starts. It shall be verified that the outside air damper is closed, the return air damper is open, and the heating and cooling coil valves are under control, by simulating a change in the fan discharge temperature. The system shall be placed out of the ventilation-delay mode, and it shall be verified that the outside air and return air dampers come under control, by simulating a change in the mixed air temperature.
  - (2) The minimum outside air mode signal shall be applied, and it shall be verified that the outside air damper opens to its minimum position.
  - (3) With supply fan running, a high static-pressure input signal shall be simulated at the device, by pressure input to the differential pressure switch sensing device. HVAC system shutdown shall be verified, it shall be verified that the high-static-pressure alarm is initiated. The differential pressure switch shall be set at the setpoint. The HVAC system shall be restarted by manual reset, and it shall be verified that the high static-pressure alarm returns to normal.
  - (4) The two-point calibration accuracy check for sensing element-to-DDC panel readout for the static pressure in the supply

duct shall be performed.

(5) The two-point calibration accuracy check of the sensing element-to-DDC panel readout for outside air, return air, and mixed-air temperatures shall be performed.

(6) The two-point calibration accuracy check of sensing element-to-DDC panel readout for the fan discharge temperature shall be performed. The setpoint for the fan discharge temperature shall be set as shown. A change shall be simulated in the discharge air temperature through an operator entered value and it shall be verified that the control valve is modulated.

(7) The system shall be placed in the unoccupied-mode and it shall be verified that the occupied-mode light turns off, the HVAC system shuts down, and the control system assumes the specified shutdown conditions. The space temperature shall be artificially changed to below the night setback temperature setpoint, and it shall be verified that the HVAC system starts; the space temperature shall be artificially changed to above the night setback setpoint, and it shall be verified that the HVAC system stops. The night setback temperature setpoint shall be set at the setpoint as shown.

(8) With the HVAC system running, a filter differential pressure switch input signal shall be simulated at the device. It shall be verified that the filter alarm is initiated. The differential pressure switch shall be set at the setpoint.

(9) With the HVAC system running, a freezestat trip input signal shall be simulated, at the device. HVAC system shutdown shall be verified. It shall be verified that a low temperature alarm is initiated. The freezestat shall be set at the setpoint. The HVAC system shall be restarted by manual restart and it shall be verified that the alarm returns to normal.

(10) With the HVAC system running, a smoke-detector trip input signal shall be simulated at each detector, and control-device actions and interlock functions as described in the Sequence of Operation shall be verified. Simulation shall be performed without false alarming any Life Safety systems. It shall be verified that the HVAC system shuts down and the smoke detector alarm is initiated. The detectors shall be reset. The HVAC system shall be restarted by manual reset, and it shall be verified that the alarm returns to normal.

(11) Velocity setpoints shall be set for minimum and maximum flow and temperature setpoints for the heating/cooling dead band, for each VAV terminal unit. The actions of the controller, the operation of the damper, and the operation of heating shall be verified. It shall be verified that space temperature is maintained.

-- End of Section --

SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 15 - MECHANICAL

SECTION 15990

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS

**08/97**

PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 SUBMITTALS
- 1.3 SIMILAR TERMS
- 1.4 TAB STANDARD
- 1.5 QUALIFICATIONS
  - 1.5.1 TAB Firm
  - 1.5.2 TAB Specialist
- 1.6 TAB SPECIALIST RESPONSIBILITIES

PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 DESIGN REVIEW
- 3.2 TAB RELATED HVAC SUBMITTALS
- 3.3 TAB SCHEMATIC DRAWINGS AND REPORT FORMS
- 3.4 DUCTWORK LEAK TESTING
- 3.5 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING
  - 3.5.1 TAB Procedures
  - 3.5.2 Systems Readiness Check
  - 3.5.3 Preparation of TAB Report
  - 3.5.4 TAB Verification
  - 3.5.5 Marking of Setting
  - 3.5.6 Identification of Test Ports

-- End of Section Table of Contents --



## SECTION 15990

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC SYSTEMS  
**08/97**

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL (AABC)

AABC MN-1 (1989) National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems

## NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL BALANCING BUREAU (NEBB)

NEBB-01 (1991) Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting Balancing of Environmental Systems

## 1.2 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having a "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

## SD-01 Data

TAB Related HVAC Submittals; FIO; .

A list of the TAB Related HVAC Submittals, no later than 7 days after the approval of the TAB Specialist.

## SD-04 Drawings

TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms; GA.

Three copies of the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms, no later than 21 days prior to the start of TAB field measurements.

## SD-06 Instructions

TAB Procedures; GA.

Proposed procedures for TAB, submitted with the TAB Schematic Drawings and Report Forms.

## SD-07 Schedules

Systems Readiness Check; FIO.

Proposed date and time to begin the Systems Readiness Check, no later than 7 days prior to the start of the Systems Readiness Check.

TAB Execution; GA.

Proposed date and time to begin field measurements, making adjustments, etc., for the TAB Report, submitted with the Systems Readiness Check Report.

TAB Verification; GA.

Proposed date and time to begin the TAB Verification, submitted with the TAB Report.

#### SD-08 Statements

TAB Firm; GA.

Certification of the proposed TAB Firm's qualifications by either AABC or NEBB to perform the duties specified herein and in other related Sections, no later than 21 days after the Notice to Proceed. The documentation shall include the date that the Certification was initially granted and the date that the current Certification expires. Any lapses in Certification of the proposed TAB Firm or disciplinary action taken by AABC or NEBB against the proposed TAB Firm shall be described in detail.

TAB Specialist; GA.

Certification of the proposed TAB Specialist's qualifications by either AABC or NEBB to perform the duties specified herein and in other related Sections, no later than 21 days after the Notice to Proceed. The documentation shall include the date that the Certification was initially granted and the date that the current Certification expires. Any lapses in Certification of the proposed TAB Specialist or disciplinary action taken by AABC or NEBB against the proposed TAB Specialist shall be described in detail.

Instrument Calibration; FIO.

List of each instrument to be used during TAB, stating calibration requirements required or recommended by both the TAB Standard and the instrument manufacturer and the actual calibration history of the instrument, submitted with the TAB Procedures. The calibration history shall include dates calibrated, the qualifications of the calibration laboratory, and the calibration procedures used.

#### SD-09 Reports

Design Review Report; GA.

A copy of the Design Review Report, no later than 14 days after approval of the TAB Firm and the TAB Specialist.

Systems Readiness Check Report; FIO.

A copy of completed checklists for each system, each signed by the TAB Specialist, at least 7 days prior to the start of TAB Execution. All items in the Systems Readiness Check Report shall be signed by the TAB Specialist and shall bear the seal of the Professional Society or National Association

used as the TAB Standard.

TAB Report; GA.

Three copies of the completed TAB Reports, no later than 7 days after the execution of TAB. All items in the TAB Report shall be signed by the TAB Specialist and shall bear the seal of the Professional Society or National Association used as the TAB Standard.

TAB Verification Report; GA.

Three copies of the completed TAB Verification Report, no later than 7 days after the execution of TAB Verification. All items in the TAB Verification Report shall be signed by the TAB Specialist and shall bear the seal of the Professional Society or National Association used as the TAB Standard.

#### SD-13 Certificates

Ductwork Leak Testing; FIO.

A written statement signed by the TAB Specialist certifying that the TAB Specialist witnessed the Ductwork Leak Testing, it was successfully completed, and that there are no known deficiencies related to the ductwork installation that will prevent TAB from producing satisfactory results.

### 1.3 SIMILAR TERMS

In some instances, terminology differs between the Contract and the TAB Standard primarily because the intent of this Section is to use the industry standards specified, along with additional requirements listed herein to produce optimal results. The following table of similar terms is provided for clarification only. Contract requirements take precedent over the corresponding AABC or NEBB requirements where differences exist.

#### SIMILAR TERMS

Contract Term	AABC Term	NEBB Term
TAB Standard Systems.	National Standards for Testing and Balancing Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Systems	Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting Balancing of Environmental
TAB Specialist	TAB Engineer	TAB Supervisor
Systems Readiness Check	Construction Phase Inspection	Field Readiness Check & Preliminary Field Procedures.

### 1.4 TAB STANDARD

TAB shall be performed in accordance with the requirements of the standard under which the TAB Firm's qualifications are approved, i.e., AABC MN-1or NEBB-01, unless otherwise specified herein. All recommendations and suggested practices contained in the TAB Standard shall be considered mandatory. The provisions of the TAB Standard, including checklists, report forms, etc., shall, as nearly as practical, be used to satisfy the

Contract requirements. The TAB Standard shall be used for all aspects of TAB, including qualifications for the TAB Firm and Specialist and calibration of TAB instruments. Where the instrument manufacturer calibration recommendations are more stringent than those listed in the TAB Standard, the manufacturer's recommendations shall be adhered to. All quality assurance provisions of the TAB Standard such as performance guarantees shall be part of this contract. For systems or system components not covered in the TAB Standard, TAB procedures shall be developed by the TAB Specialist. Where new procedures, requirements, etc., applicable to the Contract requirements have been published or adopted by the body responsible for the TAB Standard used (AABC or NEBB), the requirements and recommendations contained in these procedures and requirements shall be considered mandatory.

## 1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

### 1.5.1 TAB Firm

The TAB Firm shall be either a member of AABC or certified by the NEBB and certified in all categories and functions where measurements or performance are specified on the plans and specifications. The certification shall be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the firm loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Firm for approval. Any firm that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC or the NEBB within the five years preceding Contract Award shall not be eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections to be performed by the TAB Firm shall be considered invalid if the TAB Firm loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by an approved successor.

### 1.5.2 TAB Specialist

The TAB Specialist shall be either a member of AABC or an experienced technician of the Firm certified by the NEBB. The certification shall be maintained for the entire duration of duties specified herein. If, for any reason, the Specialist loses subject certification during this period, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Contracting Officer and submit another TAB Specialist for approval. Any individual that has been the subject of disciplinary action by either the AABC or the NEBB within the five years preceding Contract Award shall not be eligible to perform any duties related to the HVAC systems, including TAB. All work specified in this Section and in other related Sections performed by the TAB Specialist shall be considered invalid if the TAB Specialist loses its certification prior to Contract completion and must be performed by the approved successor.

## 1.6 TAB SPECIALIST RESPONSIBILITIES

All TAB work specified herein and in related sections shall be performed under the direct guidance of the TAB Specialist.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 DESIGN REVIEW

The TAB Specialist shall review the Contract Plans and Specifications and advise the Contracting Officer of any deficiencies that would prevent the HVAC systems from effectively operating in accordance with the sequence of operation specified or prevent the effective and accurate TAB of the system. The TAB Specialist shall provide a Design Review Report individually listing each deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation.

### 3.2 TAB RELATED HVAC SUBMITTALS

The TAB Specialist shall prepare a list of the submittals from the Contract Submittal Register that relate to the successful accomplishment of all HVAC TAB. The submittals identified on this list shall be accompanied by a letter of approval signed and dated by the TAB Specialist when submitted to the Government. The TAB Specialist shall also ensure that the location and details of ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB are identified on the submittals.

### 3.3 TAB SCHEMATIC DRAWINGS AND REPORT FORMS

A schematic drawing showing each system component, including balancing devices, shall be provided for each system. Each drawing shall be accompanied by a copy of all report forms required by the TAB Standard used for that system. Where applicable, the acceptable range of operation or appropriate setting for each component shall be included on the forms or as an attachment to the forms. The schematic drawings shall identify all testing points and cross reference these points to the report forms and procedures.

### 3.4 DUCTWORK LEAK TESTING

The TAB Specialist shall witness the Ductwork Leak Testing specified in Section 15895 AIR SUPPLY, DISTRIBUTION, VENTILATION, AND EXHAUST SYSTEM and approve the results as specified in Paragraph TAB RELATED HVAC SUBMITTALS.

### 3.5 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

#### 3.5.1 TAB Procedures

Step by step procedures for each measurement required during TAB Execution shall be provided. The procedures shall be oriented such that there is a separate section for each system. The procedures shall include measures to ensure that each system performs as specified in all operating modes, interactions with other components (such as exhaust fans, kitchen hoods, fume hoods, relief vents, etc.) and systems, and with all seasonal operating differences, diversity, simulated loads, and pressure relationships required.

#### 3.5.2 Systems Readiness Check

The TAB Specialist shall inspect each system to ensure that it is complete, including installation and operation of controls, and that all aspects of the facility that have any bearing on the HVAC systems, including installation of ceilings, walls, windows, doors, and partitions, are complete to the extent that TAB results will not be affected by any detail or touch-up work remaining. The TAB Specialist shall also verify that all items such as ductwork and piping ports, terminals, connections, etc., necessary to perform TAB shall be complete during the Systems Readiness Check.

### 3.5.3 Preparation of TAB Report

Preparation of the TAB Report shall begin only when the Systems Readiness Report has been approved. The Report shall be oriented so that there is a separate section for each system. The Report shall include a copy of the appropriate approved Schematic Drawings and TAB Related Submittals, such as pump curves, fan curves, etc., along with the completed report forms for each system. The operating points measured during successful TAB Execution and the theoretical operating points listed in the approved submittals shall be marked on the performance curves and tables. Where possible, adjustments shall be made using an "industry standard" technique which would result in the greatest energy savings, such as adjusting the speed of a fan instead of throttling the flow. Any deficiencies outside of the realm of normal adjustments and balancing during TAB Execution shall be noted along with a description of corrective action performed to bring the measurement into the specified range. If, for any reason, the TAB Specialist determines during TAB Execution that any Contract requirement cannot be met, the TAB Specialist shall immediately provide a written description of the deficiency and the corresponding proposed corrective action necessary for proper system operation to the Contracting Officer.

### 3.5.4 TAB Verification

The TAB Specialist shall recheck ten percent of the measurements listed in the Tab Report and prepare a TAB Verification Report. The measurements selected for verification and the individuals that witness the verification will be selected by the Contracting Officer's Representative (COR). The measurements will be recorded in the same manner as required for the TAB Report. All measurements that fall outside the acceptable operating range specified shall be accompanied by an explanation as to why the measurement does not correlate with that listed in the TAB Report and a description of corrective action performed to bring the measurement into the specified range. If over 20 percent of the measurements selected by the COR for verification fall outside of the acceptable operating range specified, the COR will select an additional ten percent for verification. If over 20 percent of the total tested (including both test groups) fall outside of the acceptable range, the TAB Report shall be considered invalid and all contract TAB work shall be repeated beginning with the Systems Readiness Check.

### 3.5.5 Marking of Setting

Following approval of TAB Verification Report, the setting of all HVAC adjustment devices including valves, splitters, and dampers shall be permanently marked by the TAB Specialist so that adjustment can be restored if disturbed at any time.

### 3.5.6 Identification of Test Ports

The TAB Specialist shall permanently and legibly identify the location points of duct test ports. If the ductwork has exterior insulation, the identification shall be made on the exterior side of the insulation. All penetrations through ductwork and ductwork insulation shall be sealed to prevent air leakage or to maintain integrity of vapor barrier.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 16 - ELECTRICAL

## SECTION 16415

## ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR

**08/96**

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 GENERAL
  - 1.2.1 Rules
  - 1.2.2 Coordination
  - 1.2.3 Special Environments
    - 1.2.3.1 Weatherproof Locations
    - 1.2.3.2 Ducts, Plenums and Other Air-Handling Spaces
  - 1.2.4 Standard Products
  - 1.2.5 NAMEPLATES
    - 1.2.5.1 Identification Nameplates
  - 1.2.6 As-Built Drawings
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- 1.4 WORKMANSHIP

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 CABLES AND WIRES
  - 2.1.1 Equipment Manufacturer Requirements
  - 2.1.2 Aluminum Conductors
  - 2.1.3 Insulation
  - 2.1.4 Bonding Conductors
  - 2.1.5 Cord Sets and Power-Supply Cords
- 2.2 TRANSIENT VOLTAGE SURGE PROTECTION
- 2.3 CIRCUIT BREAKERS
  - 2.3.1 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS
    - 2.3.1.1 Construction
    - 2.3.1.2 Ratings
- 2.4 MOTOR SHORT-CIRCUIT PROTECTOR (MSCP)
  - 2.4.1 Construction
  - 2.4.2 Ratings
- 2.5 CONDUIT AND TUBING
  - 2.5.1 Electrical, Zinc-Coated Steel Metallic Tubing (EMT)
  - 2.5.2 Flexible Conduit, Steel and Plastic
  - 2.5.3 Intermediate Metal Conduit
  - 2.5.4 PVC Coated Rigid Steel Conduit
  - 2.5.5 Rigid Metal Conduit
  - 2.5.6 Rigid Plastic
- 2.6 CONDUIT AND DEVICE BOXES AND FITTINGS
  - 2.6.1 Boxes, Metallic Outlet
  - 2.6.2 Boxes, Switch (Enclosed), Surface-Mounted
  - 2.6.3 Fittings for Conduit and Outlet Boxes
  - 2.6.4 Fittings, PVC, for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing
- 2.7 CONDUIT COATINGS PLASTIC RESIN SYSTEM
- 2.8 CONNECTORS, WIRE PRESSURE

- 2.8.1 For Use With Copper Conductors
- 2.9 ELECTRICAL GROUNDING AND BONDING EQUIPMENT
  - 2.9.1 Ground Rods
  - 2.9.2 Ground Bus
- 2.10 ENCLOSURES
  - 2.10.1 Cabinets and Boxes
  - 2.10.2 Circuit Breaker Enclosures
- 2.11 FIXTURES, LIGHTING AND FIXTURE ACCESSORIES/COMPONENTS
  - 2.11.1 Fixture, Auxiliary or Emergency
  - 2.11.2 Incandescent Fixture
  - 2.11.3 Fluorescent
  - 2.11.4 High-Intensity-Discharge
- 2.12 LOW-VOLTAGE FUSES AND FUSEHOLDERS
  - 2.12.1 Fuses, Low Voltage Cartridge Type
  - 2.12.2 Fuses, Class R
  - 2.12.3 Fuseholders
- 2.13 INSTRUMENTS, ELECTRICAL INDICATING
- 2.14 MOTORS, AC, FRACTIONAL AND INTEGRAL
  - 2.14.1 Rating
  - 2.14.2 Motor Efficiencies
- 2.15 MOTOR CONTROLS
  - 2.15.1 General
  - 2.15.2 Motor Starters
  - 2.15.3 Thermal-Overload Protection
  - 2.15.4 Low-Voltage Motor Overload Relays
    - 2.15.4.1 General
    - 2.15.4.2 Construction
    - 2.15.4.3 Ratings
  - 2.15.5 Automatic Control Devices
    - 2.15.5.1 Direct Control
    - 2.15.5.2 Pilot-Relay Control
    - 2.15.5.3 Manual/Automatic Selection
- 2.16 PANELBOARDS
- 2.17 RECEPTACLES
  - 2.17.1 Heavy Duty Grade
  - 2.17.2 Ground Fault Interrupters
  - 2.17.3 NEMA Standard Receptacle Configurations
- 2.18 Service Entrance Equipment
- 2.19 SPLICE, CONDUCTOR
- 2.20 SNAP SWITCHES
- 2.21 TAPES
  - 2.21.1 Plastic Tape
  - 2.21.2 Rubber Tape
- 2.22 WIRING DEVICES
  - 2.22.1 DIMMER SWITCHES
  - 2.22.2 OCCUPANCY SENSORS
  - 2.22.3 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 GROUNDING
  - 3.1.1 Ground Rods
  - 3.1.2 Grounding Conductors
- 3.2 WIRING METHODS
  - 3.2.1 Conduit and Tubing Systems
    - 3.2.1.1 Pull Wires
    - 3.2.1.2 Conduit Stub-Ups
    - 3.2.1.3 Below Slab-on-Grade or in the Ground
    - 3.2.1.4 Changes in Direction of Runs



- 3.2.1.5 Supports
- 3.2.1.6 Exposed Raceways
- 3.2.1.7 Communications Raceways
- 3.2.2 Cables and Conductors
  - 3.2.2.1 Sizing
  - 3.2.2.2 Use of Aluminum Conductors in Lieu of Copper
  - 3.2.2.3 Cable Splicing
  - 3.2.2.4 Conductor Identification and Tagging
- 3.3 BOXES AND SUPPORTS
  - 3.3.1 Box Applications
  - 3.3.2 Brackets and Fasteners
  - 3.3.3 Mounting in Walls, Ceilings, or Recessed Locations
  - 3.3.4 Installation in Overhead Spaces
- 3.4 DEVICE PLATES
- 3.5 RECEPTACLES
  - 3.5.1 Single and Duplex, 20-ampere, 125 volt
  - 3.5.2 Weatherproof Applications
    - 3.5.2.1 Damp Locations
    - 3.5.2.2 Wet Locations
  - 3.5.3 Receptacles, 30-Ampere, 250-Volt
  - 3.5.4 Receptacles, 50-Ampere, 125/250-Volt
  - 3.5.5 Receptacles, 50-Ampere, 250-Volt
- 3.6 WALL SWITCHES
- 3.7 SERVICE EQUIPMENT
- 3.8 PANELBOARDS
  - 3.8.1 Panelboards
- 3.9 FUSES
  - 3.9.1 Cartridge Fuses; Current-Limiting Type
  - 3.9.2 Continuous Current Ratings (600 Amperes and Smaller)
- 3.10 UNDERGROUND SERVICE
- 3.11 MOTORS
- 3.12 MOTOR CONTROL
  - 3.12.1 Contacts
  - 3.12.2 Safety Controls
- 3.13 MOTOR-DISCONNECT MEANS
- 3.14 LAMPS AND LIGHTING FIXTURES
  - 3.14.1 Lamps
    - 3.14.1.1 Incandescent
    - 3.14.1.2 Fluorescent
    - 3.14.1.3 High-Intensity-Discharge
  - 3.14.2 Fixtures
    - 3.14.2.1 Accessories
    - 3.14.2.2 Suspended Fixtures
    - 3.14.2.3 Ceiling Fixtures
    - 3.14.2.4 Sockets
- 3.15 EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS
  - 3.15.1 Motors and Motor Control
  - 3.15.2 Installation of Government-Furnished Equipment
  - 3.15.3 Food Service Equipment Provided Under Other Sections
- 3.16 CIRCUIT PROTECTIVE DEVICES
- 3.17 PAINTING AND FINISHING
- 3.18 REPAIR OF EXISTING WORK
- 3.19 FIELD TESTING
  - 3.19.1 Safety
  - 3.19.2 Ground-Resistance Tests
  - 3.19.3 Cable Tests
    - 3.19.3.1 Low Voltage Cable Tests
  - 3.19.4 Motor Tests
- 3.20 OPERATING TESTS

3.21 ACCEPTANCE

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 16415

ELECTRICAL WORK, INTERIOR  
**08/96**

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI)

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| ANSI C39.1 | (1981; R 1992) Requirements for Electrical Analog Indicating Instruments                          |
| ANSI C82.4 | (1992) Ballasts for High-Intensity-Discharge and Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps (Multiple-Supply Type) |

## AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM)

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| ASTM B 1   | (1990) Hard-Drawn Copper Wire  |
| ASTM B 8   | (1993) Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft |
| ASTM D 709 | (1992) Laminated Thermosetting Materials                                     |

## CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS (CFR)

- |           |   |
|-----------|---|
| 47 CFR 18 | Industrial, Scientific, and Medical Equipment |
|-----------|---|

## INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| IEEE C62.41 | (1991) Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits   |
| IEEE Std 81 | (1983) Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Ground System (Part 1) |

## NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| NEMA AB 1  | (1993) Molded Case Circuit Breakers and Molded Case Switches |
| NEMA FU 1  | (1986) Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses                           |
| NEMA ICS 1 | (1993) Industrial Control and Systems                        |
| NEMA ICS 2 | (1993) Industrial Control and Systems                        |

Controllers, Contactors, Overload Relays  
Rated Not More Than 2,000 Volts AC or 750  
DC

NEMA ICS 3	(1993) Industrial Control and Systems Factory Built Assemblies
NEMA ICS 6	(1993) Industrial Control and Systems Enclosures
NEMA LE 4	(1987) Recessed Luminaires, Ceiling Compatibility
NEMA MG 1	(1993; Rev 1; Rev 2; Rev 3) Motors and Generators
NEMA MG 10	(1994) Energy Management Guide for Selection and Use of Polyphase Motors
NEMA OS 1	(1989) Sheet-Steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers, and Box Supports
NEMA PB 1	(1990) Panelboards
NEMA RN 1	(1989) Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit
NEMA TC 2	(1990) Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Tubing (EPT) and Conduit (EPC-40 and EPC-80)
NEMA WD 1	(1983; R 1989) General Requirements for Wiring Devices
NEMA WD 6	(1988) Wiring Devices - Dimensional Requirements

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70	(1996) National Electrical Code
NFPA 101	(1997) Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings and Structures

UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL-03	(1996; Supple) Electrical Construction Materials Directory
UL 1	(1993; Rev thru Jan 1995) Flexible Metal Conduit
UL 6	(1993; Rev Mar 1996) Rigid Metal Conduit
UL 20	(1995; Rev thru Apr 1997) General-Use Snap Switches
UL 50	(1995; Rev Oct 1996) Enclosures for

## Electrical Equipment

UL 67	(1993; Rev thru Dec 1993) Panelboards
UL 83	(1996) Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables
UL 98	(1994; R Oct 1995) Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches
UL 198E	(1988; Rev Jul 1988) Class R Fuses
UL 360	(1996; Rev Mar 1997) Liquid-Tight Flexible Steel Conduit
UL 467	(1993; Rev thru Aug 1996) Grounding and Bonding Equipment
UL 486A	(1991; Rev Oct 1991) Wire Connectors and Soldering Lugs for Use with Copper Conductors
UL 486C	(1997) Splicing Wire Connectors
UL 486E	(1994; Rev thru Feb 1997) Equipment Wiring Terminals for Use with Aluminum and/or Copper Conductors
UL 489	(1996; Rev May 1997) Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches, and Circuit-Breaker Enclosures
UL 508	(1993) Industrial Control Equipment
UL 510	(1994) Insulating Tape
UL 512	(1993; R Dec 1995) Fuseholders
UL 514A	(1996) Metallic Outlet Boxes
UL 514B	(1996) Fittings for Conduit and Outlet Boxes
UL 514C	(1996) Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers
UL 542	(1994; Rev May 1997) Lampholders, Starters, and Starter Holders for Fluorescent Lamps
UL 651	(1995; Rev Jan 1997) Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit
UL 651A	(1995; Rev Sep 1996) Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and HDPE Conduit
UL 797	(1993; Rev thru Mar 1997) Electrical Metallic Tubing

UL 817	(1994; Rev thru Feb 1997) Cord Sets and Power-Supply Cords
UL 869A	(1993; Rev Apr 1994) Reference Standard for Service Equipment
UL 924	(1995; Rev thru May 95) Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment
UL 935	(1995; Rev thru Apr 1997) Fluorescent-Lamp Ballasts
UL 943	(1993; Rev thru Mar 1997) Ground-Fault Circuit Interrupters
UL 1004	(1994; Rev thru Feb 1997) Electric Motors
UL 1029	(1994; Rev Sep 1995) High-Intensity-Discharge Lamp Ballasts
UL 1242	(1996) Intermediate Metal Conduit
UL 1449	(1985; Errata Apr 1986) Transient Voltage Surge Suppressors
UL 1570	(1995) Fluorescent Lighting Fixtures
UL 1571	(1991; Rev thru Mar 95) Incandescent Lighting Fixtures
UL 1572	(1995; Rev thru Sep 96) High Intensity Discharge Lighting Fixtures
UL 1660	(1994) Liquid-Tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit

## 1.2 GENERAL

### 1.2.1 Rules

The installation shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70 and NFPA 101, unless more stringent requirements are indicated herein or shown.

### 1.2.2 Coordination

The drawings indicate the extent and the general location and arrangement of equipment, conduit, and wiring. The Contractor shall become familiar with all details of the work and verify all dimensions in the field so that the outlets and equipment shall be properly located and readily accessible.

Lighting fixtures, outlets, and other equipment and materials shall be located to avoid interference with mechanical or structural features; otherwise, lighting fixtures shall be symmetrically located according to the room arrangement when uniform illumination is required, or asymmetrically located to suit conditions fixed by design and shown. Raceways, junction and outlet boxes, and lighting fixtures shall not be supported from sheet metal roof decks. If any conflicts occur necessitating departures from the drawings, details of and reasons for departures shall be submitted and approved prior to implementing any change. The Contractor shall coordinate electrical work with the HVAC and

electrical drawings and specifications and provide power related wiring.

### 1.2.3 Special Environments

#### 1.2.3.1 Weatherproof Locations

Wiring, Fixtures, and equipment in designated locations shall conform to NFPA 70 requirements for installation in damp or wet locations.

#### 1.2.3.2 Ducts, Plenums and Other Air-Handling Spaces

Wiring and equipment in ducts, plenums and other air-handling spaces shall be installed using materials and methods in conformance with NFPA 70 unless more stringent requirements are indicated in this specification or on the contract drawings.

### 1.2.4 Standard Products

Material and equipment shall be a standard product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the product and shall essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening.

### 1.2.5 NAMEPLATES

#### 1.2.5.1 Identification Nameplates

Major items of electrical equipment and major components shall be permanently marked with an identification name to identify the equipment by type or function and specific unit number as indicated. Designation of motors shall coincide with their designation in the motor control center or panel. Unless otherwise specified, identification nameplates shall be made of laminated plastic in accordance with ASTM D 709 with black outer layers and a white core. Edges shall be chamfered. Plates shall be fastened with black-finished round-head drive screws, except motors, or approved nonadhesive metal fasteners. When the nameplate is to be installed on an irregular-shaped object, the Contractor shall devise an approved support suitable for the application and ensure the proper installation of the supports and nameplates. In all instances, the nameplate shall be installed in a conspicuous location. At the option of the Contractor, the equipment manufacturer's standard embossed nameplate material with black paint-filled letters may be furnished in lieu of laminated plastic. The front of each panelboard shall have a nameplate to indicate the phase letter, corresponding color and arrangement of the phase conductors. The following equipment, as a minimum, shall be provided with identification nameplates:

Minimum 1/4 inch  
High Letters

Panelboards  
Starters  
Safety Switches  
Equipment Enclosures  
Motors

Minimum 1/8 inch  
High Letters

Control Power Transformers  
Control Devices  
Instrument Transformers

Each panel or similar assemblies shall be provided with a nameplate in addition to nameplates listed above, which shall be provided for individual

compartments in the respective assembly, including nameplates which identify "future," "spare," and "dedicated" or "equipped spaces."

#### 1.2.6 As-Built Drawings

Following the project completion or turnover, within 30 days the Contractor shall furnish two sets of as-built drawings to the Contracting Officer.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FIO" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

##### SD-01 Data

Fault Current and Protective Device Coordination Study; GA.

The study shall be submitted along with protective device equipment submittals. No time extensions or similar contract modifications will be granted for work arising out of the requirements for this study. Approval of protective devices proposed shall be based on recommendations of this study. The Government shall not be held responsible for any changes to equipment, device ratings, settings, or additional labor for installation of equipment or devices ordered and/or procured prior to approval of the study.

Manufacturer's Catalog; FIO.

Data composed of catalog cuts, brochures, circulars, specifications, product data, and printed information in sufficient detail and scope to verify compliance with the requirements of the contract documents.

Material, Equipment, and Fixture Lists; FIO.

A complete itemized listing of equipment and materials proposed for incorporation into the work. Each entry shall include an item number, the quantity of items proposed, and the name of the manufacturer of each item.

##### SD-04 Drawings

Interior Electrical Equipment; FIO.

Detail drawings consisting of equipment drawings, illustrations, schedules, instructions, diagrams, and other information necessary to define the installation. Detail drawings shall show the rating of items and systems and how the components of an item and system are assembled, function together, and how they will be installed on the project. Data and drawings for component parts of an item or system shall be coordinated and submitted as a unit. Data and drawings shall be coordinated and included in a single submission. Multiple submissions for the same equipment or system are not acceptable except where prior approval has been obtained from the Contracting Officer. In such cases, a list of data to be submitted later shall be included with the first submission. Detail drawings shall show physical arrangement, construction details, connections, finishes, materials used in fabrication, provisions for conduit or busway entrance, access requirements for installation and maintenance, physical size, electrical characteristics, foundation and support details, and equipment



weight. Drawings shall be drawn to scale and/or dimensioned. Optional items shall be clearly identified as included or excluded. Detail drawings shall as a minimum include:

a. Motors and rotating machinery.

Structural drawings showing the structural or physical features of major equipment items, components, assemblies, and structures, including foundations or other types of supports for equipment and conductors. These drawings shall include accurately scaled or dimensioned outline and arrangement or layout drawings to show the physical size of equipment and components and the relative arrangement and physical connection of related components. Weights of equipment, components and assemblies shall be provided when required to verify the adequacy of design and proposed construction of foundations or other types of supports. Dynamic forces shall be stated for switching devices when such forces must be considered in the design of support structures. The appropriate detail drawings shall show the provisions for leveling, anchoring, and connecting all items during installation, and shall include any recommendations made by the manufacturer.

Electrical drawings including single-line and three-line diagrams, and schematics or elementary diagrams of each electrical system; internal wiring and field connection diagrams of each electrical device when published by the manufacturer; wiring diagrams of cabinets, panels, units, or separate mountings; interconnection diagrams that show the wiring between separate components of assemblies; field connection diagrams that show the termination of wiring routed between separate items of equipment; internal wiring diagrams of equipment showing wiring as actually provided for this project. Field wiring connections shall be clearly identified.

If departures from the contract drawings are deemed necessary by the Contractor, complete details of such departures, including changes in related portions of the project and the reasons why, shall be submitted with the detail drawings. Approved departures shall be made at no additional cost to the Government.

As-Built Drawings; FIO.

The as-built drawings shall be a record of the construction as installed. The drawings shall include all the information shown on the contract drawings, deviations, modifications, and changes from the contract drawings, however minor. The as-built drawings shall be kept at the job site and updated daily. The as-built drawings shall be a full-sized set of prints marked to reflect all deviations, changes, and modifications. The as-built drawings shall be complete and show the location, size, dimensions, part identification, and other information. Additional sheets may be added. The as-built drawings shall be jointly inspected for accuracy and completeness by the Contractor's quality control representative and by the Contracting Officer prior to the submission of each monthly pay estimate. Upon completion of the work, the Contractor shall submit three full sized sets of the marked prints to the Contracting Officer for approval. If upon review, the as-built drawings are found to contain errors and/or omissions, they will be returned to the Contractor for correction. The Contractor shall correct and return the as-built drawings to the Contracting Officer for approval within ten calendar days from the time the drawings are returned to the Contractor.

SD-08 Statements

On-Site Test; GA.

A detailed description of the Contractor's proposed procedures for on-site tests.

SD-09 Reports

Factory Test Reports; GA.

Six copies of the information described below in 8 1/2 x 11 inch binders having a minimum of 5 rings from which material may readily be removed and replaced, including a separate section for each test. Sections shall be separated by heavy plastic dividers with tabs.

- a. A list of equipment used, with calibration certifications.
- b. A copy of measurements taken.
- c. The dates of testing.
- d. The equipment and values to be verified.
- e. The conditions specified for the test.
- f. The test results, signed and dated.
- g. A description of adjustments made.

Field Test Plan; GA.

A detailed description of the Contractor's proposed procedures for on-site test submitted 30 days prior to testing the installed system. No field test will be performed until the test plan is approved. The test plan shall consist of complete field test procedures including tests to be performed, test equipment required, and tolerance limits.

Field Test Reports; GA.

Six copies of the information described below in 8 1/2 x 11 inch binders having a minimum of 5 rings from which material may readily be removed and replaced, including a separate section for each test. Sections shall be separated by heavy plastic dividers with tabs.

- a. A list of equipment used, with calibration certifications.
- b. A copy of measurements taken.
- c. The dates of testing.
- d. The equipment and values to be verified.
- e. The conditions specified for the test.
- f. The test results, signed and dated.
- g. A description of adjustments made.
- h. Final position of controls and device settings.

## SD-13 Certificates

Materials and Equipment; GA.

The label or listing of the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., will be accepted as evidence that the materials or equipment conform to the applicable standards of that agency. In lieu of this label or listing, a statement from a nationally recognized, adequately equipped testing agency indicating that the items have been tested in accordance with required procedures and that the materials and equipment comply with all contract requirements will be accepted. Materials and equipment will be approved based on the manufacturer's published data.

For other than equipment and materials specified to conform to UL publications, a manufacturer's statement indicating complete compliance with the applicable standard of the American Society for Testing and Materials, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, or other commercial standard, is acceptable.

## 1.4 WORKMANSHIP

Materials and equipment shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70, recommendations of the manufacturer, and as shown.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

Products shall conform to the respective publications and other requirements specified below. Materials and equipment not listed below shall be as specified elsewhere in this section. Items of the same classification shall be identical including equipment, assemblies, parts, and components.

## 2.1 CABLES AND WIRES

Conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter shall be stranded. Conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter shall be solid, except that conductors for remote control, alarm, and signal circuits, classes 1, 2, and 3, shall be stranded unless specifically indicated otherwise. Conductor sizes and ampacities shown are based on copper, unless indicated otherwise. All conductors shall be copper.

## 2.1.1 Equipment Manufacturer Requirements

When manufacturer's equipment requires copper conductors at the terminations or requires copper conductors to be provided between components of equipment, provide copper conductors or splices, splice boxes, and other work required to meet manufacturer's requirements.

## 2.1.2 Aluminum Conductors

Aluminum conductors shall not be used.

## 2.1.3 Insulation

Unless indicated otherwise, or required by NFPA 70, power and lighting wires shall be 600-volt, Type THWN, THHN, or THW conforming to UL 83, except that grounding wire may be type TW conforming to UL 83; remote-control and signal circuits shall be Type TW, THW or TF, conforming

to UL 83. Where lighting fixtures require 90-degree Centigrade (C) conductors, provide only conductors with 90-degree C insulation or better.

#### 2.1.4 Bonding Conductors

ASTM B 1, solid bare copper wire for sizes No. 8 AWG and smaller diameter; ASTM B 8, Class B, stranded bare copper wire for sizes No. 6 AWG and larger diameter.

#### 2.1.5 Cord Sets and Power-Supply Cords

UL 817.

### 2.2 TRANSIENT VOLTAGE SURGE PROTECTION

Transient voltage surge suppressors shall be provided as indicated. Surge suppressors shall meet the requirements of IEEE C62.41 and be UL listed and labeled as having been tested in accordance with UL 1449. Surge suppressor ratings shall be as indicated. Fuses shall not be used as surge suppression.

### 2.3 CIRCUIT BREAKERS

#### 2.3.1 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

Molded-case circuit breakers shall conform to NEMA AB 1 and UL 489. Circuit breakers may be installed in panelboards or combination motor controllers.

##### 2.3.1.1 Construction

Circuit breakers shall be suitable for mounting and operating in any position. Lug shall be listed for copper conductors only in accordance with UL 486E. Single-pole circuit breakers shall be full module size with not more than one pole per module. Multi-pole circuit breakers shall be of the common-trip type having a single operating handle such that an overload or short circuit on any one pole will result in all poles opening simultaneously. Sizes of 100 amperes or less may consist of single-pole breakers permanently factory assembled into a multi-pole unit having an internal, mechanical, nontamperable common-trip mechanism and external handle ties. All circuit breakers shall have a quick-make, quick-break overcenter toggle-type mechanism, and the handle mechanism shall be trip-free to prevent holding the contacts closed against a short-circuit or sustained overload. All circuit breaker handles shall assume a position between "ON" and "OFF" when tripped automatically. All ratings shall be clearly visible.

##### 2.3.1.2 Ratings

Voltage ratings shall be not less than the applicable circuit voltage. The interrupting rating of the circuit breakers shall be at least equal to the available short-circuit current at the line terminals of the circuit breaker and correspond to the UL listed integrated short-circuit current rating specified for the panelboards and switchboards. Molded-case circuit breakers shall have nominal voltage ratings, maximum continuous-current ratings, and maximum short-circuit interrupting ratings in accordance with NEMA AB 1. Ratings shall be coordinated with system X/R ratio.

### 2.4 MOTOR SHORT-CIRCUIT PROTECTOR (MSCP)

Motor short-circuit protectors shall conform to UL 508 and shall be provided as shown. Protectors shall be used only as part of a combination motor controller which provides coordinated motor branch-circuit overload and short-circuit protection, and shall be rated in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70.

#### 2.4.1 Construction

Motor short-circuit protector bodies shall be constructed of high temperature, dimensionally stable, long life, nonhygroscopic materials. Protectors shall fit special MSCP mounting clips and shall not be interchangeable with any commercially available fuses. Protectors shall have 100 percent one-way interchangeability within the A-Y letter designations. All ratings shall be clearly visible.

#### 2.4.2 Ratings

Voltage ratings shall be not less than the applicable circuit voltage. Letter designations shall be A through Y for motor controller Sizes 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, with 100,000 amperes interrupting capacity rating. Letter designations shall correspond to controller sizes as follows:

CONTROLLER SIZE	MSCP DESIGNATION
NEMA 0	A-N
NEMA 1	A-P
NEMA 2	A-S
NEMA 3	A-U
NEMA 4	A-W
NEMA 5	A-Y

#### 2.5 CONDUIT AND TUBING

##### 2.5.1 Electrical, Zinc-Coated Steel Metallic Tubing (EMT)

UL 797

##### 2.5.2 Flexible Conduit, Steel and Plastic

General-purpose type, UL 1; liquid tight, UL 360, and UL 1660.

##### 2.5.3 Intermediate Metal Conduit

UL 1242.

##### 2.5.4 PVC Coated Rigid Steel Conduit

NEMA RN 1.

##### 2.5.5 Rigid Metal Conduit

UL 6.

### 2.5.6 Rigid Plastic

NEMA TC 2, UL 651 and UL 651A.

## 2.6 CONDUIT AND DEVICE BOXES AND FITTINGS

### 2.6.1 Boxes, Metallic Outlet

NEMA OS 1 and UL 514C.

### 2.6.2 Boxes, Switch (Enclosed), Surface-Mounted

UL 98.

### 2.6.3 Fittings for Conduit and Outlet Boxes

UL 514B.

### 2.6.4 Fittings, PVC, for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing

UL 514B.

## 2.7 CONDUIT COATINGS PLASTIC RESIN SYSTEM

NEMA RN 1, Type A-40.

## 2.8 CONNECTORS, WIRE PRESSURE

### 2.8.1 For Use With Copper Conductors

UL 486A.

## 2.9 ELECTRICAL GROUNDING AND BONDING EQUIPMENT

UL 467.

### 2.9.1 Ground Rods

Ground rods shall be of copper-clad steel conforming to UL 467 not less than 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet in length of the sectional type driven full length into the earth.

### 2.9.2 Ground Bus

The ground bus shall be bare conductor or flat copper in one piece, if practicable.

## 2.10 ENCLOSURES

NEMA ICS 6 unless otherwise specified.

### 2.10.1 Cabinets and Boxes

Cabinets and boxes with volume greater than 100 cubic inches shall be in accordance with UL 50, hot-dip, zinc-coated, if sheet steel.

### 2.10.2 Circuit Breaker Enclosures

UL 489.

## 2.11 FIXTURES, LIGHTING AND FIXTURE ACCESSORIES/COMPONENTS

Refer to lighting fixture schedule and fixture details shown on contract drawings. Fixtures, accessories and components, including ballasts, lampholders, lamps, starters and starter holders, shall conform to industry standards specified below.

### 2.11.1 Fixture, Auxiliary or Emergency

UL 924.

### 2.11.2 Incandescent Fixture

NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility of recessed fixtures and UL 1571.

### 2.11.3 Fluorescent

- a. Fixture: NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility of recessed fixtures and UL 1570. Fixtures shall be plainly marked for proper lamp and ballast type to identify lamp diameter, wattage, color and start type. Marking shall be readily visible to service personnel, but not visible from normal viewing angles.

- b. Ballasts:

- (2) Electronic Ballast. Electronic ballasts shall consist of a rectifier, high frequency inverter, and power control and regulation circuitry. The ballasts shall be UL listed, Class P, with a Class A sound rating and shall contain no PCBs. Ballasts shall meet 47 CFR 18 for electromagnetic interference and shall not interfere with the operation of other electrical equipment. Design shall withstand line transients per IEEE C62.41, Category A. Unless otherwise indicated, the minimum number of ballasts shall be used to serve each individual fixture, using one, two, three or four lamp ballasts. A single ballast may be used to serve multiple fixtures if they are continuous mounted, factory manufactured for that installation with an integral wireway, and are identically controlled.

- (a) Light output regulation shall be +/- 10%.
    - (b) Voltage input regulation shall be +/- 10%.
    - (c) Lamp current crest factor shall be no more than 1.6.
    - (d) Ballast factor shall be not less than 85% nor more than 100%, unless otherwise indicated.
    - (e) A 60 Hz filter shall be provided. Flicker shall be no more than 10% with any lamp suitable for the ballast.
    - (f) Ballast case temperature shall not exceed 25 degree Celsius rise above 40 degree Celsius ambient, when tested in accordance with UL 935.
    - (g) Total harmonic distortion shall be in the range of 10-20%.
    - (h) Power factor shall not be less than 0.95.

- (i) Ballasts shall operate at a frequency of 20 kHz or more.
- (j) Operating filament voltage shall be 2.5 to 4.5 volts.
- (k) Warranty. Three year full warranty including a \$10 labor allowance.

(l) Ballast Efficacy Factor (BEF) shall be in accordance with the following table. Ballasts and lamps shall be matching rapid start or instant start as indicated on the following table. If 32W-F32-T8 lamps and ballasts are used, they must be either all rapid start or all instant start.

ELECTRONIC FLUORESCENT BALLAST EFFICACY FACTORS\*

LAMP TYPE	TYPE OF STARTER & LAMP	NOMINAL OPERATIONAL INPUT VOLTAGE	NUMBER OF LAMPS	MIN. BALLAST EFFICACY FACTOR
32W F32 T8	rapid or instant start	120 or 277 V	1	2.4
			2	1.4
			3	1.0
			4	0.8

\*For ballasts not specifically designed for use with dimming controls

The BEF is calculated using the formula:

BEF = Ballast Factor (in percent) / Power Input

Where Power Input = Total Wattage of Combined Lamps and Ballasts.

- a. Lampholders, Starters, and Starter Holders: UL 542.

#### 2.11.4 High-Intensity-Discharge

- a. Fixture: NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility of recessed fixtures and UL 1572.
- b. Ballasts: ANSI C82.4 for multiple supply types and UL 1029.

#### 2.12 LOW-VOLTAGE FUSES AND FUSEHOLDERS

##### 2.12.1 Fuses, Low Voltage Cartridge Type

NEMA FU 1.

##### 2.12.2 Fuses, Class R

UL 198E.

##### 2.12.3 Fuseholders

UL 512.



## 2.13 INSTRUMENTS, ELECTRICAL INDICATING

ANSI C39.1.

## 2.14 MOTORS, AC, FRACTIONAL AND INTEGRAL

Motors, ac, fractional and integral horsepower, 500 hp and smaller shall conform to NEMA MG 1 and UL 1004 for motors; NEMA MG 10 for energy management selection of polyphase motors.

## 2.14.1 Rating

The horsepower rating of motors should be limited to no more than 125 percent of the maximum load being served unless a NEMA standard size does not fall within this range. In this case, the next larger NEMA standard motor size should be used.

## 2.14.2 Motor Efficiencies

All permanently wired polyphase motors of 1 hp or more shall meet the minimum full-load efficiencies as indicated in the following table, and as specified in this specification. Motors of 1 hp or more with open, drip proof or totally enclosed fan cooled enclosures shall be high efficiency type, unless otherwise indicated. Motors provided as an integral part of motor driven equipment are excluded from this requirement if a minimum seasonal or overall efficiency requirement is indicated for that equipment by the provisions of another section.

Minimum Motor Efficiencies

HP Efficiency	Std. Efficiency	High
1	77.0	85.5
1.5	78.5	85.5
2	78.5	85.5
3	78.5	88.5
5	82.5	88.5
7.5	84.0	90.0
10	85.5	90.0
15	85.5	91.0
20	87.5	92.0
25	88.5	92.0
30	88.5	92.0
40	88.5	92.0
50	89.0	92.5
60	89.0	92.5
75	89.0	95.5
100	90.0	93.5
125	91.0	94.5
150	91.0	94.5
200	91.0	94.5
250	91.0	94.5
300	91.0	94.5
350	91.0	94.5
400	91.0	94.5
500	91.0	94.5

## 2.15 MOTOR CONTROLS

### 2.15.1 General

NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, NEMA ICS 3 and NEMA ICS 6, and UL 508.

### 2.15.2 Motor Starters

Motor starters for equipment furnished under Division 15 shall be furnished by Division 15 Contractor in accordance with this specification and installed by Division 16 Contractor. Combination starters shall be provided with circuit breakers.

### 2.15.3 Thermal-Overload Protection

Each motor of 1/8 hp or larger shall be provided with thermal-overload protection. Polyphase motors shall have overload protection in each ungrounded conductor. The overload-protection device shall be provided either integral with the motor or controller, or shall be mounted in a separate enclosure. Unless otherwise specified, the protective device shall be of the manually reset type. Single or double pole tumbler switches specifically designed for alternating-current operation only may be used as manual controllers for single-phase motors having a current rating not in excess of 80 percent of the switch rating.

### 2.15.4 Low-Voltage Motor Overload Relays

#### 2.15.4.1 General

Thermal overload relays shall conform to NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508. Overload protection shall be provided either integral with the motor or motor controller, and shall be rated in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 70. Standard units shall be used for motor starting times up to 7 seconds.

#### 2.15.4.2 Construction

Manual reset type thermal relay shall be melting alloy construction. Automatic reset type thermal relays shall be bimetallic construction. Magnetic current relays shall consist of a contact mechanism and a dash pot mounted on a common frame.

#### 2.15.4.3 Ratings

Voltage ratings shall be not less than the applicable circuit voltage. Trip current ratings shall be established by selection of the replaceable overload device and shall not be adjustable. Where the controller is remotely-located or difficult to reach, an automatic reset, non-compensated overload relay shall be provided. Manual reset overload relays shall be provided otherwise, and at all locations where automatic starting is provided. Where the motor is located in a constant ambient temperature, and the thermal device is located in an ambient temperature that regularly varies by more than minus 18 degrees F, an ambient temperature-compensated overload relay shall be provided.

### 2.15.5 Automatic Control Devices

#### 2.15.5.1 Direct Control

Automatic control devices (such as thermostats, float or pressure switches)

which control the starting and stopping of motors directly shall be designed for that purpose and have an adequate horsepower rating.

#### 2.15.5.2 Pilot-Relay Control

Where the automatic-control device does not have such a rating, a magnetic starter shall be used, with the automatic-control device actuating the pilot-control circuit.

#### 2.15.5.3 Manual/Automatic Selection

- a. Where combination manual and automatic control is specified and the automatic-control device operates the motor directly, a double-throw, three-position tumbler or rotary switch (marked MANUAL-OFF-AUTOMATIC) shall be provided for the manual control.
- b. Where combination manual and automatic control is specified and the automatic-control device actuates the pilot control circuit of a magnetic starter, the magnetic starter shall be provided with a three-position selector switch marked MANUAL-OFF-AUTOMATIC.

### 2.16 PANELBOARDS

Dead-front construction, NEMA PB 1 and UL 67.

### 2.17 RECEPTACLES

#### 2.17.1 Heavy Duty Grade

NEMA WD 1. Devices shall conform to all requirements for heavy duty receptacles.

#### 2.17.2 Ground Fault Interrupters

UL 943, Class A or B.

#### 2.17.3 NEMA Standard Receptacle Configurations

NEMA WD 6.

- a. 30-Ampere, 250 Volt

Two-pole, 3-wire grounding, non-locking: NEMA type 6-30R, locking: NEMA type L6-30R. Three-pole, 4-wire grounding, non-locking: NEMA type 15-30R, locking: NEMA type L15-30R.

### 2.18 Service Entrance Equipment

UL 869A.

### 2.19 SPLICE, CONDUCTOR

UL 486C.

### 2.20 SNAP SWITCHES

UL 20.

## 2.21 TAPES

### 2.21.1 Plastic Tape

UL 510.

### 2.21.2 Rubber Tape

UL 510.

## 2.22 WIRING DEVICES

NEMA WD 1 for wiring devices, and NEMA WD 6 for dimensional requirements of wiring devices.

### 2.22.1 DIMMER SWITCHES

UL20, NEMA WD/and NEMA WD6. Rotary on/off style with captive knob. Rated capacity at least 125% of connected load.

### 2.22.2 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

NEMA WD and NEMA WDG. Occupancy sensor shall include passive infrared (PIR) and ultrasonic sensing. Service shall operate by turning on lighting when both technologies detect motion. Detection by either technology will hold lighting on. Lighting will be switched off when neither technology senses motion within a user-specified time (15 seconds-15 minutes, adjustable). Occupancy sensor shall be ceiling-mounted, and shall be provided with lens pattern for most efficient coverage. The unit shall be suited for coverage of 500 square feet, minimum.

### 2.22.3 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

UL 508. Contactor shall be electrically operated, by a dual-acting, single-solenoid mechanism, inherently interlocked and mechanically held in both directions. Positive locking of contact positions shall not be dependent on gravity, hooks, latches, or semi-permanent magnets. Contactor shall be capable of operating many positions. Provisions shall be incorporated for manual operation during inspection and maintenance. Main contacts shall be double-break, continuous-duty rated 20 amperes to 600 Volts AC, and be marked for ballast lighting. Lighting contactors requiring derating when used in an enclosure shall not be acceptable. Remote control switches shall be provided with clamp-type, self-rising terminal plates for solderless connection of conductors. Contactor shall have enough poles for circuits to be controlled, plus at least (2) spaces. Two-wire type interface control module shall be supplied wired and mounted directly to contactor. Contactor shall be provided with a NEMA 1 enclosure.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 GROUNDING

Grounding shall be in conformance with NFPA 70, the contract drawings, and the following specifications.

#### 3.1.1 Ground Rods

The resistance to ground shall be measured using the fall-of-potential

method described in IEEE Std 81. The maximum resistance of a driven ground shall not exceed 25 ohms under normally dry conditions. In high-ground-resistance, UL listed chemically charged ground rods may be used. If the resultant resistance exceeds 5 ohms measured not less than 48 hours after rainfall, the Contracting Officer shall be notified immediately. Connections below grade shall be fusion welded. Connections above grade shall be fusion welded or shall use UL 467 approved connectors.

### 3.1.2 Grounding Conductors

A green equipment grounding conductor, sized in accordance with NFPA 70 shall be provided, regardless of the type of conduit. Equipment grounding bars shall be provided in all panelboards. The equipment grounding conductor shall be carried back to the service entrance grounding connection or separately derived grounding connection. All equipment grounding conductors, including metallic raceway systems used as such, shall be bonded or joined together in each wiring box or equipment enclosure. Metallic raceways and grounding conductors shall be checked to assure that they are wired or bonded into a common junction. Metallic boxes and enclosures, if used, shall also be bonded to these grounding conductors by an approved means per NFPA 70. When boxes for receptacles, switches, or other utilization devices are installed, any designated grounding terminal on these devices shall also be bonded to the equipment grounding conductor junction with a short jumper.

## 3.2 WIRING METHODS

Wiring shall conform to NFPA 70, the contract drawings, and the following specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, wiring shall consist of insulated conductors installed in rigid zinc-coated steel conduit, rigid plastic conduit, electrical metallic tubing, intermediate metal conduit, or flexible metallic conduit. Wire fill in conduits shall be based on NFPA 70 for the type of conduit and wire insulations specified.

### 3.2.1 Conduit and Tubing Systems

Conduit and tubing systems shall be installed as indicated. Conduit sizes shown are based on use of copper conductors with insulation types as described in paragraph WIRING METHODS. Minimum size of raceways shall be 3/4 inch. Only metal conduits will be permitted when conduits are required for shielding or other special purposes indicated, or when required by conformance to NFPA 70. Nonmetallic conduit and tubing may be used in damp, wet or corrosive locations when permitted by NFPA 70 and the conduit or tubing system is provided with appropriate boxes, covers, clamps, screws or other appropriate type of fittings. Electrical metallic tubing (EMT) may be installed only within buildings. EMT may be installed in concrete and grout in dry locations. EMT installed in concrete or grout shall be provided with concrete tight fittings. EMT shall not be installed in damp or wet locations, or the air space of exterior masonry cavity walls. Bushings, manufactured fittings or boxes providing equivalent means of protection shall be installed on the ends of all conduits and shall be of the insulating type, where required by NFPA 70. Only UL listed adapters shall be used to connect EMT to rigid metal conduit, cast boxes, and conduit bodies. Penetrations of above grade floor slabs, time-rated partitions and fire walls shall be firestopped in accordance with Section 07270 FIRESTOPPING. Except as otherwise specified, IMC may be used as an option for rigid steel conduit in areas as permitted by NFPA 70. Raceways shall not be installed under the firepits of boilers and furnaces and shall be kept 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues, steam pipes and

hot-water pipes. Raceways shall be concealed within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise shown. Raceways crossing structural expansion joints or seismic joints shall be provided with suitable expansion fittings or other suitable means to compensate for the building expansion and contraction and to provide for continuity of grounding.

#### 3.2.1.1 Pull Wires

A pull wire shall be inserted in each empty raceway in which wiring is to be installed if the raceway is more than 50 feet in length and contains more than the equivalent of two 90-degree bends, or where the raceway is more than 150 feet in length. The pull wire shall be of No. 14 AWG zinc-coated steel, or of plastic having not less than 200 pounds per square inch tensile strength. Not less than 10 inches of slack shall be left at each end of the pull wire.

#### 3.2.1.2 Conduit Stub-Ups

Where conduits are to be stubbed up through concrete floors, a short elbow shall be installed below grade to transition from the horizontal run of conduit to a vertical run. A conduit coupling fitting, threaded on the inside shall be installed, to allow terminating the conduit flush with the finished floor. Wiring shall be extended in rigid threaded conduit to equipment, except that where required, flexible conduit may be used 6 inches above the floor. Empty or spare conduit stub-ups shall be plugged flush with the finished floor with a threaded, recessed plug.

#### 3.2.1.3 Below Slab-on-Grade or in the Ground

Electrical wiring below slab-on-grade shall be protected by a conduit system. Conduit passing vertically through slabs-on-grade shall be rigid steel or IMC. Rigid steel or IMC conduits installed below slab-on-grade or in the earth shall be field wrapped with 0.010 inch thick pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlay, or shall have a factory-applied polyvinyl chloride, plastic resin, or epoxy coating system.

#### 3.2.1.4 Changes in Direction of Runs

Changes in direction of runs shall be made with symmetrical bends or cast-metal fittings. Field-made bends and offsets shall be made with an approved hickey or conduit-bending machine. Crushed or deformed raceways shall not be installed. Trapped raceways in damp and wet locations shall be avoided where possible. Care shall be taken to prevent the lodgment of plaster, dirt, or trash in raceways, boxes, fittings and equipment during the course of construction. Clogged raceways shall be cleared of obstructions or shall be replaced.

#### 3.2.1.5 Supports

Except where otherwise permitted by NFPA 70, conduits and tubing shall be securely and rigidly fastened in place at intervals of not more than 10 feet and within 3 feet of boxes, cabinets, and fittings, with approved pipe straps, wall brackets, conduit clamps, conduit hangers, threaded C-clamps, beam clamps, or ceiling trapeze. Loads and supports shall be coordinated with supporting structure to prevent damage or deformation to the structure. Loads shall not be applied to joist bridging. Attachment shall be by wood screws or screw-type nails to wood; by toggle bolts on hollow masonry units; by expansion bolts on concrete or brick; by machine screws, welded threaded studs, heat-treated or spring-steel-tension clamps

on steel work. Nail-type nylon anchors or threaded studs driven in by a powder charge and provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in lieu of expansion bolts or machine screws. Raceways or pipe straps shall not be welded to steel structures. Cutting the main reinforcing bars in reinforced concrete beams or joists shall be avoided when drilling holes for support anchors. Holes drilled for support anchors, but not used, shall be filled. In partitions of light steel construction, sheet-metal screws may be used. Raceways shall not be supported using wire or nylon ties. Raceways shall be independently supported from the structure. Upper raceways shall not be used as a means of support for lower raceways. Supporting means will not be shared between electrical raceways and mechanical piping or ducts. Cables and raceways shall not be supported by ceiling grids. Except where permitted by NFPA 70, wiring shall not be supported by ceiling support systems. Conduits shall be fastened to sheet-metal boxes and cabinets with two locknuts where required by NFPA 70, where insulating bushings are used, and where bushings cannot be brought into firm contact with the box; otherwise, a single locknut and bushing may be used. Threadless fittings for electrical metallic tubing shall be of a type approved for the conditions encountered. Additional support for horizontal runs is not required when EMT rests on steel stud cutouts.

#### 3.2.1.6 Exposed Raceways

Exposed raceways shall be installed parallel or perpendicular to walls, structural members, or intersections of vertical planes and ceilings. Raceways under raised floors and above accessible ceilings shall be considered as exposed installations in accordance with NFPA 70 definitions.

#### 3.2.1.7 Communications Raceways

Communications raceways indicated shall be installed in accordance with the previous requirements for conduit and tubing and with the additional requirements that no length of run shall exceed 50 feet for 3/4 inch sizes, and 100 feet for 1 inch or larger sizes, and shall not contain more than two 90-degrees bends or the equivalent. Additional pull or junction boxes shall be installed to comply with these limitations whether or not indicated. Inside radii of bends in conduits of 1 inch size or larger shall not be less than ten times the nominal diameter.

#### 3.2.2 Cables and Conductors

Installation shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 70.

##### 3.2.2.1 Sizing

Unless otherwise noted, all sizes are based on copper conductors and the insulation types indicated. Sizes shall be not less than indicated. Branch-circuit conductors shall be not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Conductors for branch circuits of 120 volts more than 100 feet long and of 277 volts more than 230 feet long, from panel to load center, shall be no smaller than No. 10 AWG. Class 1 remote control and signal circuit conductors shall be not less than No. 14 AWG. Class 2 remote control and signal circuit conductors shall be not less than No. 16 AWG. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits shall be not less than No. 22 AWG.

##### 3.2.2.2 Use of Aluminum Conductors in Lieu of Copper

Aluminum conductors shall not be used.

### 3.2.2.3 Cable Splicing

Splices shall be made in an accessible location. Crimping tools and dies shall be approved by the connector manufacturer for use with the type of connector and conductor.

- a. Copper Conductors, 600 Volt and Under: Splices in conductors No. 10 AWG and smaller diameter shall be made with an insulated, pressure-type connector. Splices in conductors No. 8 AWG and larger diameter shall be made with a solderless connector and insulated with tape or heat-shrink type insulating material equivalent to the conductor insulation.

### 3.2.2.4 Conductor Identification and Tagging

Power, control, and signal circuit conductor identification shall be provided within each enclosure where a tap, splice, or termination is made.

Where several feeders pass through a common pull box, the feeders shall be tagged to indicate clearly the electrical characteristics, circuit number, and panel designation. Phase conductors of low voltage power circuits shall be identified by color coding. Phase identification by a particular color shall be maintained continuously for the length of a circuit, including junctions.

- a. Color coding shall be provided for service, feeder, branch, and ground conductors. Color shall be green for grounding conductors and white for neutrals; except where neutrals of more than one system are installed in the same raceway or box, other neutral shall be white with colored (not green) stripe. The color coding for three-phase and single-phase low voltage systems shall be as follows:

120/208-volt, 3-phase: Black(A), red(B), and blue(C).

277/480-volt, 3-phase: Brown(A), orange(B), and yellow(C).

- b. Conductor phase and voltage identification shall be made by color-coded insulation for all conductors smaller than No. 6 AWG. For conductors No. 6 AWG and larger, identification shall be made by color-coded insulation, or conductors with black insulation may be furnished and identified by the use of half-lapped bands of colored electrical tape wrapped around the insulation for a minimum of 3 inches of length near the end, or other method as submitted by the Contractor and approved by the Contracting Officer.
- c. Control and signal circuit conductor identification shall be made by color-coded insulated conductors, plastic-coated self-sticking printed markers, permanently attached stamped metal foil markers, or equivalent means as approved. Control circuit terminals of equipment shall be properly identified. Terminal and conductor identification shall match that shown on approved detail drawings. Hand lettering or marking is not acceptable.

## 3.3 BOXES AND SUPPORTS

Boxes shall be provided in the wiring or raceway systems where required by NFPA 70 for pulling of wires, making connections, and mounting of devices



or fixtures. Pull boxes shall be furnished with screw-fastened covers. Indicated elevations are approximate. Unless otherwise indicated, boxes for wall switches shall be mounted 48 inches above finished floors. Switch and outlet boxes located on opposite sides of fire rated walls shall be separated by a minimum horizontal distance of 24 inches. The total combined area of all box openings in fire rated walls shall not exceed 100 square inches per 100 square feet. Maximum box areas for individual boxes in fire rated walls vary with the manufacturer and must not exceed the maximum specified for that box in UL-03. Only boxes listed in UL-03 shall be used in fire rated walls.

### 3.3.1 Box Applications

Each box shall have not less than the volume required by NFPA 70 for number of conductors enclosed in box. Boxes for metallic raceways, 4 by 4 inch nominal size and smaller, shall be of the cast-metal hub type when located in normally wet locations, when flush and surface mounted on outside of exterior surfaces, or when located in hazardous areas. Cast-metal boxes installed in wet locations and boxes installed flush with the outside of exterior surfaces shall be gasketed. Boxes for mounting lighting fixtures shall be not less than 4 inches square, or octagonal, except smaller boxes may be installed as required by fixture configuration, as approved. Cast-metal boxes with 3/32 inch wall thickness are acceptable. Large size boxes shall be NEMA 1 or as shown. Boxes in other locations shall be sheet steel except that nonmetallic boxes may be used with nonmetallic conduit, when permitted by NFPA 70. Boxes for use in masonry-block or tile walls shall be square-cornered, tile-type, or standard boxes having square-cornered, tile-type covers.

### 3.3.2 Brackets and Fasteners

Boxes and supports shall be fastened to wood with wood screws or screw-type nails of equal holding strength, with bolts and metal expansion shields on concrete or brick, with toggle bolts on hollow masonry units, and with machine screw or welded studs on steel work. Threaded studs driven in by powder charge and provided with lockwashers and nuts, or nail-type nylon anchors may be used in lieu of expansion shields, or machine screws. Penetration of more than 1-1/2 inches into reinforced-concrete beams or more than 3/4 inch into reinforced-concrete joists shall avoid cutting any main reinforcing steel. The use of brackets which depend on gypsum wallboard or plasterboard for primary support will not be permitted. In partitions of light steel construction, bar hangers with 1 inch long studs, mounted between metal wall studs or metal box mounting brackets shall be used to secure boxes to the building structure. When metal box mounting brackets are used, additional box support shall be provided on the side of the box opposite the brackets. This additional box support shall consist of a minimum 12 inch long section of wall stud, bracketed to the opposite side of the box and secured by two screws through the wallboard on each side of the stud. Metal screws may be used in lieu of the metal box mounting brackets.

### 3.3.3 Mounting in Walls, Ceilings, or Recessed Locations

In walls or ceilings of concrete, tile, or other non-combustible material, boxes shall be installed so that the edge of the box is not recessed more than 1/4 inch from the finished surface. Boxes mounted in combustible walls or ceiling material shall be mounted flush with the finished surface. The use of gypsum or plasterboard as a means of supporting boxes will not be permitted. Boxes installed for concealed wiring shall be provided with

suitable extension rings or plaster covers, as required. The bottom of boxes installed in masonry-block walls for concealed wiring shall be mounted flush with the top of a block to minimize cutting of the blocks, and boxes shall be located horizontally to avoid cutting webs of block. Separate boxes shall be provided for flush or recessed fixtures when required by the fixture terminal operating temperature, and fixtures shall be readily removable for access to the boxes unless ceiling access panels are provided.

#### 3.3.4 Installation in Overhead Spaces

In open overhead spaces, cast-metal boxes threaded to raceways need not be separately supported except where used for fixture support; cast-metal boxes having threadless connectors and sheet metal boxes shall be supported directly from the building structure or by bar hangers. Hangers shall not be fastened to or supported from joist bridging. Where bar hangers are used, the bar shall be attached to raceways on opposite sides of the box and the raceway shall be supported with an approved type fastener not more than 24 inches from the box.

#### 3.4 DEVICE PLATES

One-piece type device plates shall be provided for all outlets and fittings. Plates on unfinished walls and on fittings shall be of zinc-coated sheet steel, cast-metal, or impact resistant plastic having rounded or beveled edges. Plates on finished walls shall be of steel with baked enamel finish or impact-resistant plastic and shall be ivory. Screws shall be of metal with countersunk heads, in a color to match the finish of the plate. Plates shall be installed with all four edges in continuous contact with finished wall surfaces without the use of mats or similar devices. Plaster fillings will not be permitted. Plates shall be installed with an alignment tolerance of 1/16 inch. The use of sectional-type device plates will not be permitted. Plates installed in wet locations shall be gasketed and provided with a hinged, gasketed cover, unless otherwise specified.

#### 3.5 RECEPTACLES

##### 3.5.1 Single and Duplex, 20-ampere, 125 volt

Single and duplex receptacles shall be rated 20 amperes, 125 volts, two-pole, three-wire, grounding type with polarized parallel slots. Bodies shall be of ivory to match color of switch handles in the same room or to harmonize with the color of the respective wall, and supported by mounting strap having plaster ears. Contact arrangement shall be such that contact is made on two sides of an inserted blade. Receptacle shall be side- or back-wired with two screws per terminal. The third grounding pole shall be connected to the metal mounting yoke. Switched receptacles shall be the same as other receptacles specified except that the ungrounded pole of each suitable receptacle shall be provided with a separate terminal. Only the top receptacle of a duplex receptacle shall be wired for switching application. Receptacles with ground fault circuit interrupters shall have the current rating as indicated, and shall be UL Class A type unless otherwise shown. Ground fault circuit protection shall be provided as required by NFPA 70 and as indicated on the drawings.

##### 3.5.2 Weatherproof Applications

Weatherproof receptacles shall be suitable for the environment, damp or wet

as applicable, and the housings shall be labeled to identify the allowable use. Receptacles shall be marked in accordance with UL 514A for the type of use indicated; "Damp locations", "Wet Locations", "Wet Location Only When Cover Closed". Assemblies shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

#### 3.5.2.1 Damp Locations

Receptacles in damp locations shall be mounted in an outlet box with a gasketed, weatherproof, cast-metal cover plate (device plate, box cover) and a gasketed cap (hood, receptacle cover) over each receptacle opening. The cap shall be either a screw-on type permanently attached to the cover plate by a short length of bead chain or shall be a flap type attached to the cover with a spring loaded hinge.

#### 3.5.2.2 Wet Locations

Receptacles in wet locations shall be installed in an assembly rated for such use whether the plug is inserted or withdrawn, unless otherwise indicated. In a duplex installation, the receptacle cover shall be configured to shield the connections whether one or both receptacles are in use.

#### 3.5.3 Receptacles, 30-Ampere, 250-Volt

Receptacles, single, 30-ampere, 250-volt, shall be molded-plastic, three-pole, three-wire type, complete with appropriate mating cord-grip plug.

#### 3.5.4 Receptacles, 50-Ampere, 125/250-Volt

#### 3.5.5 Receptacles, 50-Ampere, 250-Volt

Receptacles, single, 50-ampere, 250-volt, shall be flush molded plastic, three-pole, three-wire type, complete with appropriate mating cord-grip plug.

### 3.6 WALL SWITCHES

Wall switches shall be of the totally enclosed tumbler type. The wall switch handle and switch plate color shall be ivory. Wiring terminals shall be of the screw type or of the solderless pressure type having suitable conductor-release arrangement. Not more than one switch shall be installed in a single-gang position. Switches shall be rated 20-ampere 120/277-volt for use on alternating current only. Dimming switches shall be solid-state flush mounted, sized for 125% of the connected loads.

### 3.7 SERVICE EQUIPMENT

Service-disconnecting means shall be of the enclosed molded-case circuit breaker type and the type indicated in paragraph PANELBOARDS with an external handle for manual operation. When service disconnecting means is a part of an assembly, the assembly shall be listed as suitable for service entrance equipment. Enclosures shall be sheet metal with hinged cover for surface mounting unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.8 PANELBOARDS

Circuit breakers and switches used as a motor disconnecting means shall be

capable of being locked in the open position. Door locks shall be keyed alike. Nameplates shall be as approved. Directories shall be typed to indicate loads served by each circuit and mounted in a holder behind a clear protective covering. Busses shall be copper.

### 3.8.1 Panelboards

Panelboards shall be circuit breaker equipped as indicated on the drawings.

## 3.9 FUSES

Equipment provided under this contract shall be provided with a complete set of properly rated fuses when the equipment manufacturer utilize fuses in the manufacture of the equipment, or if current-limiting fuses are required to be installed to limit the ampere-interrupting capacity of circuit breakers or equipment to less than the maximum available fault current at the location of the equipment to be installed. Fuses shall have a voltage rating of not less than the phase-to-phase circuit voltage, and shall have the time-current characteristics required for effective power system coordination. Time-delay and non-time-delay options shall be as shown.

### 3.9.1 Cartridge Fuses; Current-Limiting Type

Cartridge fuses, current-limiting type, Class RK1 and RK5 shall have tested interrupting capacity not less than 100,000 amperes. Fuse holders shall be the type that will reject all Class H fuses.

### 3.9.2 Continuous Current Ratings (600 Amperes and Smaller)

Service entrance and feeder circuit fuses (600 amperes and smaller) shall be Class RK5, current-limiting, time-delay with 200,000 amperes interrupting capacity.

## 3.10 UNDERGROUND SERVICE

Unless otherwise indicated, interior conduit systems shall be stubbed out 5 feet beyond the building wall and 2 feet below finished grade, for interface with the exterior service lateral conduits and exterior communications conduits. Outside conduit ends shall be bushed when used for direct burial service lateral conductors. Outside conduit ends shall be capped or plugged until connected to exterior conduit systems. Underground service lateral conductors will be extended to building service entrance and terminated.

## 3.11 MOTORS

Each motor shall conform to the hp and voltage ratings indicated, and shall have a service factor and other characteristics that are essential to the proper application and performance of the motors under conditions shown or specified. Three-phase motors for use on 3-phase 208-volt systems shall have a nameplate rating of 200 volts. Unless otherwise specified, all motors shall have open frames, and continuous-duty classification based on a 40 degree C ambient temperature reference. Polyphase motors shall be squirrel-cage type, having normal-starting-torque and low-starting-current characteristics, unless other characteristics are specified in other sections of these specifications or shown on contract drawings. The Contractor shall be responsible for selecting the actual horsepower

ratings and other motor requirements necessary for the applications indicated. When electrically driven equipment furnished under other sections of these specifications materially differs from the design, the Contractor shall make the necessary adjustments to the wiring, disconnect devices and branch-circuit protection to accommodate the equipment actually installed.

### 3.12 MOTOR CONTROL

Each motor or group of motors requiring a single control shall be provided under other sections of these specifications with a suitable controller and devices that will perform the functions as specified for the respective motors. Each motor of 1/8 hp or larger shall be provided with thermal-overload protection. Polyphase motors shall have overload protection in each ungrounded conductor. The overload-protection device shall be provided either integral with the motor or controller, or shall be mounted in a separate enclosure. Unless otherwise specified, the protective device shall be of the manually reset type. Single or double pole tumbler switches specifically designed for alternating-current operation only may be used as manual controllers for single-phase motors having a current rating not in excess of 80 percent of the switch rating. Automatic control devices such as thermostats, float or pressure switches may control the starting and stopping of motors directly, provided the devices used are designed for that purpose and have an adequate horsepower rating. When the automatic-control device does not have such a rating, a magnetic starter shall be used, with the automatic-control device actuating the pilot-control circuit. When combination manual and automatic control is specified and the automatic-control device operates the motor directly, a double-throw, three-position tumbler or rotary switch shall be provided for the manual control; when the automatic-control device actuates the pilot control circuit of a magnetic starter, the latter shall be provided with a three-position selector switch marked MANUAL-OFF-AUTOMATIC. Connections to the selector switch shall be such that only the normal automatic regulatory control devices will be bypassed when the switch is in the Manual position; all safety control devices, such as low- or high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor-overload protective devices, shall be connected in the motor-control circuit in both the Manual and the Automatic positions of the selector switch. Control circuit connections to any MANUAL-OFF-AUTOMATIC switch or to more than one automatic regulatory control device shall be made in accordance with wiring diagram approved by the Contracting Officer unless such diagram is included on the drawings. All controls shall be 120 volts or less unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.12.1 Contacts

Unless otherwise indicated, contacts in miscellaneous control devices such as float switches, pressure switches, and auxiliary relays shall have current and voltage ratings in accordance with NEMA ICS 2 for rating designation B300.

#### 3.12.2 Safety Controls

Safety controls for boilers shall be connected to a 2-wire, 120 volt grounded circuit supplied from the associated boiler-equipment circuit. Where the boiler circuit is more than 120 volts to ground, safety controls shall be energized through a two-winding transformer having its 120 volt secondary winding grounded. Overcurrent protection shall be provided in the ungrounded secondary conductor and shall be sized for the load

encountered.

### 3.13 MOTOR-DISCONNECT MEANS

Each motor shall be provided with a disconnecting means when required by NFPA 70 even though not indicated. For single-phase motors, a single or double pole toggle switch, rated only for alternating current, will be acceptable for capacities less than 30 amperes, provided the ampere rating of the switch is at least 125 percent of the motor rating. Switches shall disconnect all ungrounded conductors.

### 3.14 LAMPS AND LIGHTING FIXTURES

Ballasted fixtures shall have ballasts which are compatible with the specific type and rating of lamps indicated and shall comply with the applicable provisions of the publications referenced.

#### 3.14.1 Lamps

Lamps of the type, wattage, and voltage rating indicated shall be delivered to the project in the original cartons and installed in the fixtures just prior to the completion of the project.

##### 3.14.1.1 Incandescent

Incandescent lamps shall be for 125-volt operation unless otherwise indicated.

##### 3.14.1.2 Fluorescent

Fluorescent lamps for electronic ballasts shall be as indicated.

##### 3.14.1.3 High-Intensity-Discharge

High-intensity-discharge lamps shall be the high-pressure sodium type unless otherwise indicated, shown, or approved.

#### 3.14.2 Fixtures

Fixtures shall be as shown and shall conform to the following specifications and shall be as detailed on the drawings. Illustrations shown on the drawings are indicative of the general type desired and are not intended to restrict selection to fixtures of any particular manufacturer. Fixtures of similar designs and equivalent energy efficiency, light distribution and brightness characteristics, and of equal finish and quality will be acceptable if approved. In suspended acoustical ceilings with fluorescent fixtures, the fluorescent emergency light fixtures shall be furnished with self-contained battery packs.

##### 3.14.2.1 Accessories

Accessories such as straps, mounting plates, nipples, or brackets shall be provided for proper installation. Open type fluorescent fixtures with exposed lamps shall have a wire-basket type guard.

##### 3.14.2.2 Suspended Fixtures

Suspended fixtures shall be provided with swivel hangers in order to ensure a plumb installation. Pendants, rods, or chains 4 feet or longer excluding

fixture, shall be braced to limit swinging. Bracing shall be 3 directional, 120 degrees apart. Single unit suspended fluorescent fixtures shall have twin-stem hangers. Multiple unit or continuous-row fluorescent units shall have a tubing or stem for wiring at one point, and a tubing or rod suspension provided for each length of chassis including one at each end. Maximum distance between adjacent tubing or stems shall be 10 feet. Rods shall be of not less than 3/16 inch diameter. Flexible raceway shall be installed to each fixture from an overhead junction box. Fixture to fixture wiring installation is allowed only when fixtures are installed end to end in a continuous run.

#### 3.14.2.3 Ceiling Fixtures

Ceiling fixtures shall be coordinated with and suitable for installation in, on, or from the suspended ceiling provided under other sections of these specifications. Installation and support of fixtures shall be in accordance with the NFPA 70 and manufacturer's recommendations. Recessed fixtures shall have adjustable fittings to permit alignment with ceiling panels. Recessed fixtures installed in fire-resistive type of suspended ceiling construction shall have the same fire rating as the ceiling or shall be provided with fireproofing boxes having materials of the same fire rating as the ceiling panels, in conformance with UL-03. Surface-mounted fixtures shall be suitable for fastening to the structural support for ceiling panels.

#### 3.14.2.4 Sockets

Sockets of industrial, strip, and other open type fluorescent fixtures shall be of the type requiring a forced movement along the longitudinal axis of the lamp for insertion and removal of the lamp.

### 3.15 EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

All wiring not furnished and installed under other sections of the specifications for the connection of electrical equipment as indicated on the drawings shall be furnished and installed under this section of the specifications. Connections shall comply with the applicable requirements of paragraph WIRING METHODS. Flexible conduits 6 feet or less in length shall be provided to all electrical equipment subject to periodic removal, vibration, or movement and for all motors. All motors shall be provided with separate grounding conductors. Liquid-tight conduits shall be used in damp or wet locations.

#### 3.15.1 Motors and Motor Control

Motors and motor controls shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70, the manufacturer's recommendations, and as indicated. Wiring shall be extended to motors and motor controls and terminated.

#### 3.15.2 Installation of Government-Furnished Equipment

Wiring shall be extended to the equipment and terminated.

#### 3.15.3 Food Service Equipment Provided Under Other Sections

Wiring shall be extended to the equipment and terminated.

### 3.16 CIRCUIT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

The Contractor shall calibrate, adjust, set and test each new adjustable circuit protective device to ensure that they will function properly prior to the initial energization of the new power system under actual operating conditions.

### 3.17 PAINTING AND FINISHING

Field-applied paint on exposed surfaces shall be provided under Section 09900 PAINTING, GENERAL.

### 3.18 REPAIR OF EXISTING WORK

The work shall be carefully laid out in advance, and where cutting, channeling, chasing, or drilling of floors, walls, partitions, ceiling, or other surfaces is necessary for the proper installation, support, or anchorage of the conduit, raceways, or other electrical work, this work shall be carefully done, and any damage to building, piping, or equipment shall be repaired by skilled mechanics of the trades involved at no additional cost to the Government.

### 3.19 FIELD TESTING

Field testing shall be performed in the presence of the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer 10 days prior to conducting tests. The Contractor shall furnish all materials, labor, and equipment necessary to conduct field tests. The Contractor shall perform all tests and inspection recommended by the manufacturer unless specifically waived by the Contracting Officer. The Contractor shall maintain a written record of all tests which includes date, test performed, personnel involved, devices tested, serial number and name of test equipment, and test results. All field test reports will be signed and dated by the Contractor.

#### 3.19.1 Safety

The Contractor shall provide and use safety devices such as rubber gloves, protective barriers, and danger signs to protect and warn personnel in the test vicinity. The Contractor shall replace any devices or equipment which are damaged due to improper test procedures or handling.

#### 3.19.2 Ground-Resistance Tests

The resistance of each grounding electrode system shall be measured using the fall-of-potential method defined in IEEE Std 81. Soil resistivity in the area of the grid shall be measured concurrently with the grid measurements. Ground resistance measurements shall be made before the electrical distribution system is energized and shall be made in normally dry conditions not less than 48 hours after the last rainfall. Resistance measurements of separate grounding electrode systems shall be made before the systems are bonded together below grade. The combined resistance of separate systems may be used to meet the required resistance, but the specified number of electrodes must still be provided.

- a. Grounding electrode system - 25 ohms.

#### 3.19.3 Cable Tests

The Contractor shall be responsible for identifying all equipment and devices that could be damaged by application of the test voltage and



ensuring that they have been properly disconnected prior to performing insulation resistance testing. An insulation resistance test shall be performed on all low voltage cables after the cables are installed in their final configuration and prior to energization. The test voltage shall be 500 volts DC applied for one minute between each conductor and ground and between all possible combinations of conductors. The minimum value of resistance shall be:

$R \text{ in megohms} = (\text{rated voltage in kV} + 1) \times 1000 / (\text{length of cable in feet})$

Each cable failing this test shall be repaired or replaced. The repaired cable system shall then be retested until failures have been eliminated.

#### 3.19.3.1 Low Voltage Cable Tests

- a. Continuity test.
- b. Insulation resistance test.

#### 3.19.4 Motor Tests

- a. Phase rotation test to ensure proper directions.
- b. Operation and sequence of reduced voltage starters.
- c. High potential test on each winding to ground.
- d. Insulation resistance of each winding to ground.
- e. Vibration test.
- f. Dielectric absorption test on motor [and starter].

#### 3.20 OPERATING TESTS

After the installation is completed, and at such time as the Contracting Officer may direct, the Contractor shall conduct operating tests for approval. The equipment shall be demonstrated to operate in accordance with the specified requirements. An operating test report shall be submitted in accordance with paragraph FIELD TEST REPORTS.

#### 3.21 ACCEPTANCE

Final acceptance of the facility will not be given until the Contractor has successfully completed all tests and after all defects in installation, material or operation have been corrected.

-- End of Section --

## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 16 - ELECTRICAL

## SECTION 16721

## FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM

**11/91**

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.2.1 Standard Products
  - 1.2.2 Nameplates
  - 1.2.3 Keys and Locks
  - 1.2.4 Tags
  - 1.2.5 Verification of Dimensions
  - 1.2.6 Compliance
  - 1.2.7 Manufacturer's Services
- 1.3 SYSTEM DESIGN
  - 1.3.1 Operation
  - 1.3.2 Operational Features
  - 1.3.3 Alarm Functions
  - 1.3.4 Primary Power
  - 1.3.5 Battery Backup Power
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- 1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 CONTROL PANEL
  - 2.1.1 Visual Annunciators
  - 2.1.2 Cabinets
  - 2.1.3 Remote System Trouble Audible/Visual Appliance
  - 2.1.4 Circuit Connections
- 2.2 STORAGE BATTERIES
- 2.3 BATTERY CHARGER
- 2.4 MANUAL FIRE ALARM STATIONS
- 2.5 FIRE DETECTING DEVICES
  - 2.5.1 Heat Detectors
    - 2.5.1.1 Combination Fixed-Temperature and Rate-of-Rise Detectors
  - 2.5.2 Smoke Detectors
    - 2.5.2.2 Photoelectric Detectors
    - 2.5.2.4 Duct Detectors
- 2.6 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES
  - 2.6.2 Alarm Horns
  - 2.6.4 Visual Notification Appliances
  - 2.6.5 Combination Audible/Visual Notification Appliances
- 2.7 REMOTE ANNUNCIATION EQUIPMENT
  - 2.7.1 Remote Annunciator
- 2.8 FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM PERIPHERAL EQUIPMENT
  - 2.8.1 Ground Rods
  - 2.8.3 Conduit
  - 2.8.4 Wiring

2.8.5 Special Tools and Spare Parts

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Power Supply for the System

3.1.2 Wiring

3.1.3 Control Panel

3.1.4 Detectors

3.1.5 Notification Appliances

3.1.6 Annunciator Equipment

3.2 OVERVOLTAGE AND SURGE PROTECTION

3.3 GROUNDING

3.4 TESTING

3.4.1 Preliminary Tests

3.4.2 Acceptance Test

3.5 TRAINING

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 16721

FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM  
11/91

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41 (1991) Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (1993) National Electrical Code

NFPA 72 (1993) National Fire Alarm Code

NFPA 90A (1993) Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

## UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL-04 (1994) Fire Protection Equipment Directory

UL 6 (1993) Rigid Metal Conduit

UL 38 (1994; Rev Jan 1994) Manually Actuated Signaling Boxes for Use with Fire-Protective Signaling Systems

UL 268 (1989; Rev May 1989) Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems

UL 464 (1990) Audible Signal Appliances

UL 467 (1993) Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 521 (1993) Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems

UL 797 (1993) Electrical Metallic Tubing

UL 864 (1991; Rev thru May 1994) Control Units for Fire-Protective Signaling Systems

UL 1242 (1983; Rev thru Jul 1993) Intermediate Metal Conduit

## 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

### 1.2.1 Standard Products

Material and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products and shall be items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Equipment shall be supported by a service organization that can provide service within 24 hours.

### 1.2.2 Nameplates

Major components of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address, type or style, voltage and current rating, and catalog number on a noncorrosive and nonheat-sensitive plate which is securely attached to the equipment.

### 1.2.3 Keys and Locks

Locks shall be keyed alike.

### 1.2.4 Tags

Tags with stamped identification number shall be furnished for keys and locks.

### 1.2.5 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

### 1.2.6 Compliance

The fire detection and internal alarm system and the central reporting system shall be configured in accordance with NFPA 72. The equipment furnished shall be compatible and be UL listed or FM approved or approved or listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory in accordance with the applicable NFPA standards.

### 1.2.7 Manufacturer's Services

Services of a manufacturer's representative who is experienced in the installation, adjustment, testing, and operation of the equipment specified shall be provided. The representative shall supervise the installation, adjustment, and testing of the equipment.

## 1.3 SYSTEM DESIGN

### 1.3.1 Operation

The fire alarm and detection system shall be a complete, supervised fire alarm system. The system shall be activated into the alarm mode by actuation of any alarm initiating device. The system shall remain in the alarm mode until initiating device is reset and the fire alarm control panel is reset and restored to normal. Alarm initiating devices shall be connected to initiating device circuits (IDC), Style D, or to signal line circuits (SLC), Style 6, in accordance with NFPA 72. Alarm indicating appliances shall be connected to indicating appliance circuits (IAC), Style Z in accordance with NFPA 72. A two-loop conduit system shall be provided

so that if any one conduit and all conductors contained in that conduit are severed all IDC, IAC, or SLC on that circuit shall remain functional. A two-loop system is not applicable to the central fire alarm communication center from the local panels. All textual, audible, and visual appliances and systems shall comply with NFPA 72.

Addressable system shall be microcomputer (microprocessor or microcontroller) based with a minimum word size of eight bits.

- a. Sufficient memory shall be provided to perform as specified and as shown for addressable system.
- b. Individual identity of each addressable device shall be provided for the following conditions:
  - alarm
  - trouble
  - open
  - short
  - appliances missing/failed
  - remote detector - sensitivity adjustment from the panel for smoke detectors
- c. All addressable devices shall have the capability of individually being disabled or enabled from the panel.

#### 1.3.2 Operational Features

The system shall have the following operating features:

- a. Electrical supervision of alarm SLC.
- b. Electrical supervision of the primary power (ac) supply, battery voltage, placement of alarm zone module (card, PC board) within the control panel, and transmitter tripping circuit integrity.
- c. Trouble buzzer and trouble lamp (light emitting diode or neon light) to activate upon a single break, open, or ground fault condition which prevents the required normal operation of the system. The trouble signal shall also operate upon loss of primary power (ac) supply, low battery voltage, removal of alarm zone module (card, PC board), and disconnection of the circuit used for transmitting alarm signals off-premises. A trouble alarm silence switch shall be provided which will silence the trouble buzzer, but will not extinguish the trouble indicator lamp. After the system returns to normal operating conditions, the trouble buzzer shall again sound until the silencing switch returns to normal position, unless automatic trouble reset is provided.
- d. Transmitter disconnect switch to allow testing and maintenance of the system without activating the transmitter but shall provide a trouble signal when disconnected and a restoration signal when reconnected. One person test mode - Activating an initiating device in this mode will activate an alarm for a short period of time, then automatically reset the alarm, without activating the transmitter during the entire process.
- e. Evacuation alarm silencing switch or switches which, when activated, will silence alarm devices, but will not affect the

zone indicating lamp nor the operation of the transmitter. This switch shall be over-ridden upon activation of a subsequent alarm from an unalarmed zone and the alarm devices will be activated.

- f. Electrical supervision of circuits used for supervisory signal services. Supervision shall detect any open, short, or ground.
- g. Confirmation or verification modules used on smoke detection initiating circuits. The modules shall interrupt the transmission of an alarm signal to the system control panel for a factory set period. This interruption period shall be adjustable from 1 to 60 seconds and be factory set at 20 seconds. Immediately following the interruption period, a confirmation period shall be in effect during which time an alarm signal if present will be sent immediately to the control panel. All fire alarm devices other than smoke detectors shall be prohibited on circuits controlled by confirmation or verification modules.
- h. Zones for alarm SLC shall be arranged as indicated on the contract drawings.

#### 1.3.3 Alarm Functions

An alarm condition on a circuit shall automatically initiate the following functions:

- a. Transmission of a signal over the station radio fire reporting system. The signal shall be common for all zones.
- b. Visual indications of the alarmed zones on the fire alarm control panel annunciator.
- c. Continuous sounding of alarm notification appliances throughout the building.
- d. Deactivation of the air handling units throughout the building.
- e. Activation of sprinkler riser flow switch shall trip shunt-trip main breaker in Panel "LH".

#### 1.3.4 Primary Power

Operating power shall be provided as required by paragraph Power Supply for the System. Transfer from normal to emergency power or restoration from emergency to normal power shall be fully automatic and not cause transmission of a false alarm. Loss of ac power shall not prevent transmission of a signal via the fire reporting system upon operation of any initiating circuit.

#### 1.3.5 Battery Backup Power

Battery backup power shall be through use of rechargeable, sealed-type storage batteries and battery charger.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FI0" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

## SD-01 Data

## Battery; GA.

Substantiating battery calculations for supervisory and alarm power requirements. Ampere-hour requirements for each system component and each panel component, and the battery recharging period shall be included.

## Voltage Drop; GA.

Voltage drop calculations for signaling appliance circuits to indicate that sufficient voltage is available for proper appliance operation.

## Spare Parts; GA.

Spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified, not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Data shall include a complete list of parts and supplies with the current unit prices and source of supply and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced after 1 year of service.

## Qualifications; GA.

Qualifications, with verification of experience and license number, of a Registered Professional Engineer with at least 4 years of current experience in the design of the fire protection and detection systems. This engineer must perform the various specification items required by this section to be performed by a registered Professional Engineer.

## SD-04 Drawings

## Fire Alarm Reporting System; GA.

Detail drawings, signed by the Registered Professional Engineer, consisting of a complete list of equipment and material, including manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. Note that the contract drawings show layouts based on typical detectors. The contractor shall check the layout based on the actual detectors to be installed and make any necessary revisions in the detail drawings. The detail drawings shall also contain complete wiring and schematic diagrams for the equipment furnished, equipment layout, and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit.

Detailed point-to-point wiring diagram, signed by the Registered Professional Engineer, showing all points of connection. Diagram shall include connections between system devices, appliances, control panels, supervised devices, and all equipment that is activated or controlled by the panel.

## SD-06 Instructions

## Fire Alarm Reporting System; GA.

Six copies of operating instructions outlining step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, and shutdown. The instructions shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating



features. Six copies of maintenance instructions listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guide. The instructions shall include conduit layout, equipment layout and simplified wiring, and control diagrams of the system as installed. Instructions shall be approved prior to training.

Training; GA.

Lesson plans and training data, in manual format, for the training courses.

#### SD-08 Statements

Test Procedures; GA.

Detailed test procedures, signed by the Registered Professional Engineer, for the fire detection and alarm system 60 days prior to performing system tests.

#### SD-09 Reports

Testing; GA.

Test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, upon completion and testing of the installed system. Each test report shall document all readings, test results and indicate the final position of controls.

#### SD-13 Certificates

Equipment; GA.

Certified copies of current approvals or listings issued by UL, FM or other nationally recognized testing laboratory, showing compliance with specified NFPA standards.

Installer; GA.

The Contractor shall provide documentation demonstrating that its fire detection and alarm system installer has been regularly engaged in the installation of fire detection and alarm systems meeting NFPA standards for a minimum of three years immediately preceding commencement of this contract. Such documentation shall specifically include proof of satisfactory performance on at least three projects similar to that required by these specifications, including the names and telephone numbers of using agency points of contact for each of these projects. Documentation shall indicate the type of each system installed and include a written certificate that each system has performed satisfactorily in the manner specified for a period of not less than 12 months following completion. All such data shall be submitted 30 days prior to commencement of installation for approval of the Contracting Officer. Listing of the installer under "Protective Signaling Services - Local, Auxiliary, Remote Station Proprietary (UUJS)" of UL-04 shall be accepted as equivalent proof of compliance with the foregoing experience requirements.

### 1.5 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

All equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be stored with protection from the weather, humidity and temperature variation, dirt and dust, and any other contaminants.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONTROL PANEL

Control Panel shall comply with all the applicable requirements of UL 864. Panel shall be modular, installed in a surface mounted steel cabinet with hinged door and cylinder lock. Control panel shall be a clean, uncluttered, and orderly assembled panel containing all components and equipment required to provide the specified operating and supervisory functions of the system. The panel shall have prominent rigid plastic, phenolic or metal identification plates for all lamps, zones, controls, meters, fuses, and switches. Nameplates for fuses shall also include ampere rating. Separate alarm and trouble lamp shall be provided for each zone alarm located on exterior of cabinet door or be visible through the cabinet door. Control panel switches shall be within the locked cabinet. A suitable means shall be provided for testing the control panel visual indicating devices (meters or lamps). Meters and lamps shall be plainly visible when the cabinet door is closed. Signals shall be provided to indicate by zone any alarm, supervisory or trouble condition on the system.

Each SLC initiating circuit shall be powered and supervised so that a signal on one zone does not prevent the receipt of signals from other zones. Loss of power, including any or all batteries, shall not require the reloading of a program. Upon restoration of power, startup shall be automatic, and shall not require any manual operation. The loss of primary power or the sequence of applying primary or emergency power shall not affect the transmission of alarm, supervisory or trouble signals.

#### 2.1.1 Visual Annunciators

Visual annunciators shall be provided for each active zone and spare zone. 4 Spare zones shall be provided. Each lamp shall provide specific identification of the zone by means of a permanently attached rigid plastic, phenolic or metal sign with either raised or engraved letters. Zone identification shall consist of word description of the zone.

#### 2.1.2 Cabinets

Cabinets shall be provided with ample gutter space to allow proper clearance between the cabinet and live parts of the panel equipment. If more than one modular unit is required to form a control panel, the units shall be installed in a single cabinet large enough to accommodate all units. Cabinets shall have manufacturer's standard finish and color.

#### 2.1.3 Remote System Trouble Audible/Visual Appliance

Audible appliance shall have a minimum sound level output rating of 85 dBA at 10 feet and operate in conjunction with the panel's integral trouble signal. The audible device shall be silenced by the system trouble silence switch. A rigid plastic, phenolic or metal identification sign which reads "Fire Alarm System Trouble" shall be provided at the audible appliance. The visual appliance located with the audible appliance shall not be extinguished until the trouble has been cleared.

#### 2.1.4 Circuit Connections

Circuit conductors entering or leaving the panel shall be connected to screw-type terminals with each terminal marked for identification.

## 2.2 STORAGE BATTERIES

Storage Batteries shall be provided and shall be the sealed, lead-calcium type requiring no additional water. The batteries shall have ample capacity, with primary power disconnected, to operate the fire alarm system for a period of 48 hours. Following this period of operation via batteries, the batteries shall have ample capacity to operate all components of the system, including all alarm signaling devices in the total alarm mode for a minimum period of 15 minutes. Batteries shall be sized to deliver 50 percent more ampere/hours based on a 48 hour discharged rate than required for the calculated capacities. Batteries in the control panel shall be located at the bottom of the panel. Battery shall be provided with overcurrent protection in accordance with NFPA 72.

## 2.3 BATTERY CHARGER

Battery charger shall be completely automatic, with high/low charging rate, capable of restoring the batteries from full discharge to full charge within 12 hours. A separate ammeter shall be provided for indicating rate of charge. A separate voltmeter shall be provided to indicate the state of the battery charge. A pilot light indicating when batteries are manually placed on a high rate of charge shall be provided as part of the unit assembly if a high rate switch is provided. Charger shall be located in control panel or battery cabinet.

## 2.4 MANUAL FIRE ALARM STATIONS

Manual fire alarm stations shall conform to the applicable requirements of UL 38. Manual stations shall be connected into alarm-initiating circuits. Stations shall be installed on semi-flush mounted outlet boxes. Stations shall be single action type. Stations shall be finished in red, with raised letter operating instructions of contrasting color. Stations requiring the breaking of glass or plastic panels for operation are not acceptable. Stations employing glass rods are not acceptable. The use of a key or wrench shall be required to reset the station. Gravity or mercury switches are not acceptable. Switches and contacts shall be rated for the voltage and current upon which they operate. Stations shall have a separate screw terminal for each conductor. Surface mounted boxes shall be painted the same color as the fire alarm manual stations. Addressable pull stations shall be capable of being field programmed, shall latch upon operation and remain latched until manually reset.

## 2.5 FIRE DETECTING DEVICES

Fire detecting devices shall comply with the applicable requirements of NFPA 72, NFPA 90A, UL 268, and UL 521. The detectors shall be provided as indicated. Detector base shall have screw terminals for making connections. No solder connections will be allowed. Detectors shall be connected into alarm initiating circuits. Detectors located in concealed locations (above ceiling, etc.) shall have a remote visible indicator lamp. Installed devices shall conform to the classification of the area. Addressable fire detecting devices except flame detectors shall be dynamically supervised and uniquely identified in the control panel.

### 2.5.1 Heat Detectors

Heat detectors shall be designed for detection of fire by combination fixed temperature and rate-of-rise principle. Heat detectors shall be rated for a minimum of spacing (smooth-ceiling rated) in accordance with UL 521.

Detectors located in areas subject to moisture, exterior atmospheric conditions or hazardous locations as defined by NFPA 70, shall be types approved for such locations. Heat detectors located in attic spaces or similar concealed spaces below the roof shall be intermediate temperature rated.

#### 2.5.1.1 Combination Fixed-Temperature and Rate-of-Rise Detectors

Detectors shall be designed for semi-flush outlet box mounting and supported independently of wiring connections. Contacts shall be self-resetting after response to rate-of-rise principle. Under fixed temperature actuation, the detector shall have a permanent external indication which is readily visible. Detector units located in boiler rooms, showers, or other areas subject to abnormal temperature changes shall operate on fixed temperature principle only. Rating for fixed temperature portion shall be in temperature conditioned spaces.

#### 2.5.2 Smoke Detectors

Detectors shall be designed for detection of abnormal smoke densities. Smoke detectors shall be photoelectric type. Detectors shall contain a visible indicator lamp that shows when the unit is in alarm condition. Detectors shall not be adversely affected by vibration or pressure. Detectors shall be the plug-in type in which the detector base contains terminals for making all wiring connections. Detectors that are in concealed (above false ceilings, etc.) locations shall have a remote visible indicator lamp.

##### 2.5.2.2 Photoelectric Detectors

Detectors shall operate on a light scattering concept using an LED light source. Failure of the LED shall not cause an alarm condition. Detectors shall be factory set for sensitivity and shall require no field adjustments of any kind. Detectors shall have an obscuration rating between 1.9 and 2.4 percent per foot when tested in accordance with UL 268.

##### 2.5.2.4 Duct Detectors

Duct detectors are provided under this section and installed under Section 15951 Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning HVAC Control Systems.

#### 2.6 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

Audible appliances shall be heavy duty and conform to the applicable requirements of UL 464. Devices shall be connected into alarm indicating circuits and shall have a separate screw terminal for each conductor. Devices shall have manufacturer's standard finish and color.

##### 2.6.2 Alarm Horns

Horns shall be surface mounted, with the matching mounting back box recessed grill and vibrating type suitable for use in an electrically supervised circuit. Horns shall produce a minimum sound rating of at least 85 dBA at Horns used in exterior locations shall be specifically listed or approved for outdoor use and be provided with metal housing and protective grills.

##### 2.6.4 Visual Notification Appliances

Visual notification appliances shall have high intensity optic lens and

flash tubes. Strobes shall flash at approximately 1 flash per second and a minimum of 1 candela (8,000 peak candle power). Strobe shall be semi-flush mounted.

#### 2.6.5 Combination Audible/Visual Notification Appliances

Combination audible/visual notification appliances shall provide the same requirements as individual units except they shall mount as a unit in standard backboxes. All units shall be factory assembled. Any other audible indicating appliance employed in the fire alarm systems shall be approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

### 2.7 REMOTE ANNUNCIATION EQUIPMENT

#### 2.7.1 Remote Annunciator

Annunciator shall have relampable indicator lamps. The lamp (LED) for the proper zone shall light upon any alarm, supervisory or trouble condition on the fire alarm system. Annunciator lamps shall be extinguished only by operating the alarm reset switch on the control panel. Annunciator shall contain a lamp test switch, an audible trouble signal and a trouble silence switch to silence the audible alarm, but not extinguish the trouble lamp. Switches shall be located within a locked panel, and easily visible through a glass or plastic viewing plate. Panel door shall have a keyed lock identical to the lock on the control panel. Zone identification shall be by silk-screened or engraved labels and shall consist of word description of the zone. Annunciator shall be semi-flush mounted.

### 2.8 FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM PERIPHERAL EQUIPMENT

#### 2.8.1 Ground Rods

Ground rods shall be of copper clad steel conforming to UL 467 not less than in diameter by in length.

#### 2.8.3 Conduit

Conduit and fittings shall comply with UL 6, UL 1242 and UL 797.

#### 2.8.4 Wiring

Wiring for 120V ac power shall be No. 12 AWG minimum. Wiring for low voltage dc circuits shall be No. 14 AWG minimum. Power wiring (over 28 volts) and control wiring shall be isolated. All wiring shall conform to NFPA 70. System field wiring shall be solid copper and installed in metallic conduit or electrical metallic tubing, except rigid plastic conduit may be used under slab-on-grade. All conductors shall be color coded. Conductors used for the same functions shall be similarly color coded. Wiring code color shall remain uniform throughout the circuit. Pigtail or T-tap connections to alarm initiating, supervisory circuits, and alarm indicating circuits are prohibited. T-tapping using screw terminal blocks is allowed for addressable systems.

#### 2.8.5 Special Tools and Spare Parts

Special tools necessary for the maintenance of the equipment shall be furnished. Two spare fuses of each type and size required and five spare lamps and LED's of each type shall be furnished. Two percent of the total number of each different type of detector, but no less than two each, shall

be furnished.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

All work shall be installed as shown and in accordance with the manufacturer's diagrams and recommendations, unless otherwise specified. Protect smoke detectors with dust covers until the building has been thoroughly cleaned.]

##### 3.1.1 Power Supply for the System

A single dedicated circuit connection for supplying power to each building fire alarm system shall be provided. The primary power shall be supplied as shown on the drawings. The power supply shall be equipped with a locking mechanism and marked "FIRE ALARM CIRCUIT CONTROL".

##### 3.1.2 Wiring

Conduit size for wiring shall be in accordance with NFPA 70. Wiring for the fire alarm system shall not be installed in conduits, junction boxes, or outlet boxes with conductors of lighting and power systems. No more than one conductor shall be installed under any screw terminal. All circuit conductors entering or leaving any mounting box, outlet box enclosure or cabinet shall be connected to screw terminals with each terminal marked in accordance with the wiring diagram. Connections and splices shall be made using screw terminal blocks. The use of wire nut type connectors are prohibited in the system. Wiring within any control equipment shall be readily accessible without removing any component parts. The fire alarm equipment manufacturer's representative shall be present for the connection of wiring to the control panel.

##### 3.1.3 Control Panel

The control panel and its assorted components shall be mounted so that no part of the enclosing cabinet is less than 12 inches nor more than 78 inches above the finished floor. All manually operable controls shall be between 36 inches to 42 inches above the finished floor. Panel shall be installed to comply with the requirements of UL 864.

##### 3.1.4 Detectors

Detectors shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 72. Detectors shall be at least 12 inches from any part of any lighting fixture. Detectors shall be located at least 3 feet from diffusers of air handling systems. Each detector shall be provided with appropriate mounting hardware as required by its mounting location. Detectors which mount in free space shall be mounted directly to the end of the stubbed down rigid conduit drop. Conduit drops shall be firmly secured to minimize detector sway. Where length of conduit drop from ceiling or wall surface exceeds 3 feet, sway bracing shall be provided.

##### 3.1.5 Notification Appliances

Notification appliances shall be mounted 80 inches above finished floor or 6 inches below finished ceiling, whichever is lower. Paint notification appliance housing to match surrounding wall surfaces. Exterior appliances shall be painted dark brown.

### 3.1.6 Annunciator Equipment

Annunciator equipment provided shall be mounted where indicated.

## 3.2 OVERVOLTAGE AND SURGE PROTECTION

All equipment connected to alternating current circuits shall be protected from surges per IEEE C62.41 and NFPA 70. All cables and conductors which serve as communications links, except fiber optics, shall have surge protection circuits installed at each end. Fuses shall not be used for surge protection.

## 3.3 GROUNDING

Grounding shall be provided to building ground or ground rods shall be driven. Maximum impedance to ground shall be 5 ohms. Ground rods shall not protrude more than 6 inches above grade.

## 3.4 TESTING

The Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer 30 days before the preliminary and acceptance tests are to be conducted. The tests shall be performed in accordance with the approved test procedures in the presence of the Contracting Officer. The control panel manufacturer's representative shall be present to supervise all tests. The Contractor shall furnish all instruments and personnel required for the tests.

### 3.4.1 Preliminary Tests

Upon completion of the installation, the system shall be subjected to functional and operational performance tests including tests of each installed initiating and notification appliance. Tests shall include the meggering of all system conductors to determine that the system is free from grounded, shorted, or open circuits. The megger test shall be conducted prior to the installation of fire alarm equipment. If deficiencies are found, corrections shall be made and the system shall be retested to assure that it is functional.

### 3.4.2 Acceptance Test

Testing shall be in accordance with NFPA 72. The recommended tests in NFPA 72 shall be considered mandatory and shall verify that all previous deficiencies have been corrected. The test shall include the following:

- a. Test of each function of the control panel.
- b. Test of each circuit in both trouble and normal modes.
- c. Tests of alarm initiating devices in both normal and trouble conditions.
- d. Tests of each control circuit and device.
- e. Tests of each alarm notification appliance.
- f. Tests of the battery charger and batteries.
- g. Complete operational tests under emergency power supply.

- h. Visual inspection of all wiring connections.
- i. Opening the circuit at each alarm initiating device and notification appliance to test the wiring supervisory feature.
- j. Ground fault
- k. Short circuit faults
- l. Stray voltage
- m. Loop resistance

### 3.5 TRAINING

Training course shall be provided for the operations and maintenance staff.

The course shall be conducted in the building where the system is installed or as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period shall consist of 3 training days (8 hours per day) and shall start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests. The instructions shall cover all of the items contained in the operating and maintenance instructions.

-- End of Section --



## SECTION TABLE OF CONTENTS

## DIVISION 16 - ELECTRICAL

## SECTION 16722

## FIRE ALARM REPORTING SYSTEM, RADIO TYPE

06/91

## PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.1 REFERENCES
- 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS
  - 1.2.1 Standard Products
  - 1.2.2 Nameplates
  - 1.2.3 Tags
  - 1.2.4 Keys and Locks
  - 1.2.5 Verification of Dimensions
  - 1.2.6 Compliance
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- 1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE
- 1.5 SYSTEM OPERATION
- 1.6 ELECTRICAL SUPERVISION

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 RADIO FIRE ALARM TRANSMITTER (TRANSCIVER)
  - 2.1.1 Frequency Allocation
  - 2.1.2 Power Requirements
    - 2.1.2.1 Battery Power
    - 2.1.2.2 Battery Duration
    - 2.1.2.3 Battery Supervision
  - 2.1.3 Functional Requirements
    - 2.1.3.1 Interfacing Indicators and Controls
    - 2.1.3.2 Generation of Signals
    - 2.1.3.3 Power Output
    - 2.1.3.4 Memory
    - 2.1.3.6 Transmitter Identity Code
    - 2.1.3.7 Message Designations
  - 2.1.4 Transmitter Housings
    - 2.1.4.1 Lock
    - 2.1.4.2 Mounting
    - 2.1.4.3 Operating Panel
  - 2.1.5 Environmental Operating Requirements
  - 2.1.6 Painting
- 2.2 RADIO TRANSMITTER INTERFACE DEVICE
  - 2.2.1 Enclosure
  - 2.2.3 Access
  - 2.2.4 Mounting
  - 2.2.5 Inputs/Outputs
- 2.4 FIRE ALARM SYSTEM PERIPHERAL EQUIPMENT
  - 2.4.3 Conduit
  - 2.4.4 Ground Rods
  - 2.4.5 Power Supply
  - 2.4.6 Wiring

2.4.7 Special Tools and Spare Parts

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

3.1.1 Power Supply for the System

3.1.2 Wiring

3.2 OVERVOLTAGE AND SURGE PROTECTION

3.3 GROUNDING

3.4 TESTING

3.4.1 Performance Testing

3.4.2 Acceptance Test

3.4.3 Training

-- End of Section Table of Contents --

## SECTION 16722

FIRE ALARM REPORTING SYSTEM, RADIO TYPE  
**06/91**

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.1 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to in the text by basic designation only.

## CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS (CFR)

47 CFR 15 Radio Frequency Devices

## INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS ENGINEERS (IEEE)

IEEE C62.41 (1991) Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC  
Power Circuits

## NATIONAL ELECTRICAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (NEMA)

NEMA ICS 1 (1993) Industrial Controls and Systems

## NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA)

NFPA 70 (1993) National Electrical Code

NFPA 72 (1993) National Fire Alarm Code

## UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES (UL)

UL 6 (1993) Rigid Metal Conduit

UL 467 (1993) Grounding and Bonding Equipment

UL 797 (1993) Electrical Metallic Tubing

UL 1242 (1983; Rev thru Jul 1993) Intermediate  
Metal Conduit

## 1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

## 1.2.1 Standard Products

Material and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products and shall essentially duplicate items that have been in satisfactory use for at least 2 years prior to bid opening. Equipment shall be supported by a service organization that can provide service within 24 hours.

## 1.2.2 Nameplates

Major components of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address,

type or style, voltage and current rating, and catalog number on a noncorrosive and nonheat-sensitive plate which is securely attached to the equipment.

#### 1.2.3 Tags

Tags with stamped identification numbers shall be furnished for keys and locks.

#### 1.2.4 Keys and Locks

Locks shall be keyed alike.

#### 1.2.5 Verification of Dimensions

The Contractor shall become familiar with all details of the work, verify all dimensions in the field, and shall advise the Contracting Officer of any discrepancy before performing the work.

#### 1.2.6 Compliance

The central reporting system shall comply with NFPA 72. The equipment furnished shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories, or Factory Mutual Engineering and Research, or be approved or listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

Government approval is required for submittals with a "GA" designation; submittals having an "FI0" designation are for information only. The following shall be submitted in accordance with Section 01330 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES:

#### SD-01 Data

Battery; GA.

Substantiating battery calculations for supervisory and alarm power requirements. Ampere-hour requirements for each system component, each panel component and the battery recharging period shall be included.

Spare Parts; GA.

Spare parts data for each different item of material and equipment specified, after approval of detail drawings, and not later than 2 months prior to the date of beneficial occupancy. Data shall include a complete list of parts and supplies with the current unit prices and source of supply and a list of the parts recommended by the manufacturer to be replaced after 1 year of service.

Qualifications; GA.

Qualifications, with verification of experience and license number, of a Registered Professional Engineer with at least 4 years of current experience in the design of fire protection and detection systems. This engineer must perform the various specification items required by this section to be performed by a Registered Professional Engineer.

#### SD-04 Drawings

#### Fire Alarm Reporting System; GA.

Detail drawings, signed by the Registered Professional Engineer, consisting of a complete list of equipment and material, including manufacturer's descriptive and technical literature, catalog cuts, and installation instructions. Note that the contract drawings show layouts based on typical detectors. The contractor shall check the layout based on the actual detectors to be installed and make any necessary revisions in the detail drawings. Detail drawings shall also contain complete wiring and schematic diagrams for the equipment furnished, equipment layout, and any other details required to demonstrate that the system has been coordinated and will properly function as a unit.

#### Wiring Diagrams; GA.

Detail point-to-point wiring diagram, signed by the Registered Professional Engineer, showing all points of connection. Diagram shall include connections between system devices, appliances, control panels, supervised devices, and all equipment that is activated or controlled by the panel.

#### SD-06 Instructions

#### Fire Alarm Reporting System; GA.

Six complete copies of operating instructions outlining step-by-step procedures required for system startup, operation, and shutdown. The instructions shall include the manufacturer's name, model number, service manual, parts list, and brief description of all equipment and their basic operating features. Six copies of maintenance instructions listing routine maintenance procedures, possible breakdowns and repairs, and troubleshooting guide. The instructions shall include conduit layout, equipment layout and simplified wiring, and control diagrams of the system as installed. Instructions shall be approved prior to training.

#### Training; GA.

Training course for the operations and maintenance staff. The course shall be conducted in the building where the system is installed or as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period shall consist of 3 training days (8 hours per day) and shall start after the system is functionally completed but prior to final acceptance tests. The instructions shall cover all of the items contained in the operating and maintenance instructions.

#### SD-08 Statements

#### Test Procedures; GA.

Detailed test procedures for the fire alarm reporting system 60 days prior to performing system tests. The test procedures shall be signed by the Registered Professional Engineer.

#### SD-09 Reports

#### Testing; GA.

Test reports in booklet form showing all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria, upon completion and

testing of the installed system. Each test report shall document all readings, test results and indicate the final position of controls.

#### SD-13 Certificates

Equipment; GA.

Certified copies of current applicable approvals or listings issued by UL, FM or other nationally recognized testing laboratory showing compliance with applicable NFPA standards.

### 1.4 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

All equipment delivered and placed in storage shall be protected from the weather, humidity and temperature variations, dirt, dust, and other contaminants.

### 1.5 SYSTEM OPERATION

The radio system shall report alarms to the radio fire alarm monitoring base station. The system shall be a completely supervised radio type fire alarm reporting system. The system shall indicate the area of alarm. The radio communication link shall be supervised and operated in accordance with NFPA 72.

### 1.6 ELECTRICAL SUPERVISION

Electrical supervision shall be provided for all circuits and for all positions of interface panel control switches.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RADIO FIRE ALARM TRANSMITTER (TRANSCIVER)

Radio Fire Alarm Transmitter (Transceiver) shall be compatible with the Radio Fire Alarm Monitoring Base Station (Monaco D500). It shall be all solid state and comply with all applicable portions of 47 CFR 15 governing type acceptance. All transmitters of a common configuration shall be interchangeable with the other devices furnished by the manufacturer. Each transmitter and interface device shall be the manufacturer's current commercial product completely assembled, wired, tested at the factory, and delivered ready for installation and operation.

#### 2.1.1 Frequency Allocation

The transmitters shall operate on a frequency of 138.125 MHz.

#### 2.1.2 Power Requirements

Transmitters shall be powered by a combination of locally available 120 Vac, and sealed nickel-cadium type batteries requiring no additional water. In the event of loss of 120 Vac power, the transmitter shall automatically switch to battery operation. The switchover shall be accomplished with no interruption of protective service, without adversely affecting the battery-powered capabilities, and shall cause the transmission of a trouble message in no less than 10 seconds. Upon restoration of ac power, transfer back to normal ac power supply shall be automatic and the battery shall be recharged. The converter/battery charger shall be installed within the transmitter housing. Power supply transient filtering shall be provided.

#### 2.1.2.1 Battery Power

The battery package shall be capable of supplying all the power requirements for a given transmitter.

#### 2.1.2.2 Battery Duration

Radio fire alarm transmitter standby battery capacity shall provide sufficient power to operate the transmitter in a normal standby status for a minimum of 60 hours and shall be capable of transmitting alarms during that period. The capacity for battery-only powered transmitters shall be 6 months before recharging is necessary.

#### 2.1.2.3 Battery Supervision

Each radio fire alarm transmitter shall constantly monitor and supervise its own battery powered supply. A low-battery condition shall be reported when battery voltage falls below 85 percent of the rated voltage.

#### 2.1.3 Functional Requirements

##### 2.1.3.1 Interfacing Indicators and Controls

Transmitters shall incorporate the provisions for auxiliary interconnection to existing interior alarm systems.

##### 2.1.3.2 Generation of Signals

Each transmitter shall be a standard design which allows the immediate transmission of all initiated signals.

##### 2.1.3.3 Power Output

The radio frequency (RF) power output of each transmitter shall be sufficient for reliable alarm reporting. The minimum RF power output shall be 1 watt.

##### 2.1.3.4 Memory

Transmitters shall have memory capability. Multiple, simultaneous alarms shall not result in the loss of any messages. All such messages shall be stored until they are transmitted.

##### 2.1.3.6 Transmitter Identity Code

Each transmitter shall transmit a distinct identity code number as part of all signals emanating from the transmitter.

##### 2.1.3.7 Message Designations

Each transmitter shall allow as a minimum no less than ten distinct and individually identifiable message designations as to the types or causes of transmitter actuation.

- a. Master Message: Master messages shall be transmitted upon automatic actuation of the transmitter. The building and zone causing actuation shall be individually identified as part of this transmission. The transmitter shall be capable of identifying and

transmitting a minimum of 16 master (zone) messages.

- b. Test Message: This message shall be capable of both manual and automatic actuation. When a transceiver method is employed, it shall provide for automatic interrogation at preselected periods or continuous automatic interrogation in accordance with the governing standard. Additionally, transceiver systems shall provide for selective interrogation at times determined by the user. Testing the automatic test actuation will occur a minimum of once in each 24-hour period, at an optionally preselected time. Stability of the electronic actuating device shall be plus or minus 1 minute per month within the temperature range stipulated for system operation. Actuation of the "Test" message designation, regardless of initiating means, shall cause no less than one complete message to be sent.
- c. Tamper Message Designation: This message shall be automatically transmitted when a tamper switch is tripped in the transmitter housing.
- d. Trouble Message Designation: This message shall be automatically transmitted in the event of a failure in excess of 1 minute of the main operating power source of the transmitter.

#### 2.1.4 Transmitter Housings

The housings on transmitters shall be fabricated from corrosion-resistant cast metal or suitable substitute which has the physical strength sufficient to ward off physical damage normally expected to be received by vandalism. The housing shall be sealed against the entry of moisture, dust, dirt, insects, and other foreign objects. Exterior housings shall be NEMA 4X.

##### 2.1.4.1 Lock

Internal components shall be protected from vandalism by a tamper-proof lock on the transmitter housing. The housing shall allow access to all internal components for testing, servicing, and replacement at the installation site.

##### 2.1.4.2 Mounting

Transmitter housings shall be designed for universal mounting on walls. Mounting shall utilize either lag bolts, anchor bolts, stainless steel banding, mounting brackets, or a shackle/bolt combination, as applicable to the specific installation.

##### 2.1.4.3 Operating Panel

Each publicly accessible transmitter shall have an operating panel that incorporates a dedicated signal initiating device (pull hook or push button) clearly identified for the initiation of "FIRE" signals. The device shall be protected with a conventional spring-loaded, "fast-action" break-glass, or similar pull-type door that allows observation of the actuation device when in the closed position. The door shall be fabricated and finished in a manner consistent with that required of the main housing.

#### 2.1.5 Environmental Operating Requirements



The transmitter shall be designed for reliable outside operation in an ambient temperature range of minus to Transmitters shall be corrosion-resistant and designed for reliable operation under adverse climatic conditions including winds, ice, rain, and snow storms.

#### 2.1.6 Painting

Radio fire alarm transmitter and interface housings shall be factory painted. The finish color shall be fire engine red. All painted surfaces damaged during installation shall be repainted to match existing paint.

### 2.2 RADIO TRANSMITTER INTERFACE DEVICE

The interface device shall provide a means of converting whatever signals are available from the local control equipment into a form that is compatible with the transmitter inputs while still maintaining electrical supervision of the entire system. Interface devices shall be utilized whenever direct connection between local control equipment and the transmitter is not possible. Interface devices shall be completely assembled, wired, tested at the factory, and delivered ready for installation and operation.

#### 2.2.1 Enclosure

When furnished as an independent self-contained device, the interface device shall be incorporated into an enclosure conforming to NEMA ICS 1 or other national standard as required by its location.

#### 2.2.3 Access

Switches and any other controls shall not be accessible without the use of a key. Access to controls shall be by unlocking and opening a panel or door.

#### 2.2.4 Mounting

Interface housings shall be designed for universal mounting on walls. Mounting shall utilize either lag bolts, anchor bolts, stainless steel banding, mounting brackets, or a shackle/bolt combination, as applicable to the specific installation.

#### 2.2.5 Inputs/Outputs

Each interface panel shall provide as a minimum the number of alarm circuit inputs and outputs as indicated. Each input circuit shall be arranged so that the alarm signals shall override the trouble signals.

### 2.4 FIRE ALARM SYSTEM PERIPHERAL EQUIPMENT

#### 2.4.3 Conduit

Conduit and fittings shall comply with UL 6, UL 1242, and UL 797.

#### 2.4.4 Ground Rods

Ground rods shall be of copper-clad steel conforming to UL 467 not less than in diameter by in length.

#### 2.4.5 Power Supply

The operating power for the system shall be single phase taken from the building electric service as specified in paragraph Power Supply for the System. Emergency backup power shall be provided by sealed nickel-calcium type batteries requiring no additional water. The charging system shall recharge fully discharged batteries within 12 hours and maintain the batteries in the fully charged state. The battery shall have the capacity to operate the system for not less than 48 hours under maximum normal load with the power supply to the charger disconnected.

#### 2.4.6 Wiring

Wiring shall be in accordance with NFPA 70 and as indicated. All station wiring shall be color coded.

#### 2.4.7 Special Tools and Spare Parts

Special tools necessary for the maintenance of the equipment shall be furnished. One spare set of fuses of each type and size required and five spare lamps of each type shall be furnished.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

All work shall be installed as shown and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, unless otherwise specified. All necessary interconnections, services, and adjustments required for a complete and operational system shall be provided. Electrical work shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

##### 3.1.1 Power Supply for the System

A single dedicated branch-circuit connection for supplying power to the fire alarm system shall be provided. The backup power supply shall be automatically energized upon failure of the normal power supply.

##### 3.1.2 Wiring

Wiring for systems shall be installed in rigid conduit, intermediate metallic conduit, or electric metallic tubing. The conductors for the fire alarm system shall not be installed in conduits, junction boxes, or outlet boxes with conductors of lighting and power systems. The sum of the cross-sectional areas of individual conductors shall not exceed 40 percent of the interior cross-sectional area of the conduit. Conduit shall comply with NFPA 70. Ample gutter space to accommodate necessary wiring shall be provided.

#### 3.2 OVERVOLTAGE AND SURGE PROTECTION

All equipment connected to alternating current circuits shall be protected from surges per IEEE C62.41 and NFPA 70. All cables and conductors which serve as communications links, except fiber optics, shall have surge protection circuits installed at each end. Fuses shall not be used for surge protection.

#### 3.3 GROUNDING

Ground rods shall not protrude more than 6 inches above grade.

Noncurrent-carrying metallic parts associated with radio fire alarm equipment shall have a maximum resistance to solid "earth" ground not to exceed 5 ohms.

### 3.4 TESTING

The Contractor shall notify the Contracting Officer 30 days before the performance and acceptance tests are to be conducted. The tests shall be performed in the presence of the Contracting Officer under the supervision of the fire alarm system manufacturer's qualified representative. The Contractor shall furnish all instruments and personnel required for the tests.

#### 3.4.1 Performance Testing

Upon completion of the installation, the system shall be subjected to a complete functional and operational performance test by the Contractor. Test shall determine that the system is free from grounded, shorted, or open circuits. When all corrections have been made, the system shall be retested to assure that it is functional. Copies of performance test reports shall be submitted in accordance with paragraph SUBMITTALS.

#### 3.4.2 Acceptance Test

The testing shall be in accordance with NFPA 72. The recommended tests in NFPA 72 shall be considered mandatory and shall verify that all previous deficiencies have been corrected. The tests shall include the following:

- a. Tests to indicate there are no grounded, shorted, or open circuits.
- b. Tests of each radio fire alarm transmitter/receiver/transceiver/repeater.
- c. Tests of radio fire alarm monitoring base station for all required functions.
- d. Tests of normal and emergency power supplies.

#### 3.4.3 Training

The Contractor shall conduct training course for operating staff in the building where the system is installed as designated by the Contracting Officer. The training period shall consist of 1 training day training days, 8 hours per day and shall start after the system is functionally completed but prior to the final acceptance tests. The field instructions shall cover all of the items contained in the approved operating and maintenance instructions.

-- End of Section --